ASSESSMENT OF THE EQUIVALENT LEVEL OF SAFETY

REQUIREMENTS FOR SMALL UNMANNED AERIAL VEHICLES

by

© Jonathan D. Stevenson, B.Eng., M.Eng.

A Doctoral Thesis submitted to the

School of Graduate Studies

In partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of

Doctor of Philosophy

Faculty of Engineering and Applied Science

Memorial University of Newfoundland

June 2015

St. John's   Newfoundland and Labrador

ABSTRACT

The research described in this thesis was a concentrated effort to assess the Equivalent Level of Safety (ELOS) of small Unmanned Aerial Vehicles (UAVs), in terms of the requirements needed for the small UAV to be considered at least as safe as equivalent manned aircraft operating in the same airspace. However, the concept of ELOS is often quoted without any scientific basis, or without proof that manned aircraft themselves could be considered safe. This is especially true when the recognized limitations of the see-and-avoid principle is considered, which has led to tragic consequences over the past several decades. The primary contribution of this research is an initial attempt to establish quantifiable standards related to the ELOS of small UAVs in non-segregated airspace. A secondary contribution is the development of an improved method for automatically testing Detect, Sense and Avoid (DSA) systems through the use of two UAVs flying a synchronized aerial maneuver algorithm.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

List of Symbols, Nomenclature or Abbreviations

ACAS Automatic (Autonomous) Collision Avoidance System

ADS-B Automatically Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast

AGL Above Ground Level (altitude above ground)

AIS Automatic Identification System

AMA Academy of Model Aeronautics

APN Anti-Proportional Navigation (avoidance GNC method)

ASL Above Sea Level (altitude above sea level)

ATC Air Traffic Control

AVO Autonomous (or Aerial) Vehicle Operator

BLOS Beyond Line-Of-Sight (range)

CARs	Canadian Aviation Regulation(s)
Cd	Candela
CD	Drag coefficient
CG	Center of Gravity
CL	Lift Coefficient
Cm	Moment Coefficient
CONOPS	Concept of Operations
DGPS	Differential Global Positioning System
DSA	Detect, Sense and Avoid
eLOS	Electronic Line-of-Sight
ELOS	Equivalent Level of Safety
ELS	Estimated Level of Safety
EP	External Pilot (also Manual Pilot)
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration (US)
FG	FlightGear
FOR	Field of Regard
FOV	Field of View
FPV	First Person View
FS	Flight Simulator
ft	Feet
GA	General Aviation (typical small private aircraft, e.g. Cessna C172)
GCS	Ground Control Station

GNC	Guidance Navigation and Control
GPS	Global Positioning System
HALE	High Altitude Long Endurance (UAV)
hrs	Hours
HUD	Heads-Up Display
Ixx	Mass moment of inertia (about X body axis, others Iyy, Izz, etc.)
IFR	Instrument Flight Rules
LOS	Line-of-Sight
ISR	Intelligence Surveillance Reconnaissance
kts	Knots (1 nautical mile/hour)
km	Kilometer (1000 m)
LALE	Low-Altitude Long-Endurance (UAV)
MAC	Mid-air Collision
MAAC	Model Aeronautics Association of Canada
MALE	Medium-Altitude Long Endurance (UAV)
m	Meter (SI base unit)
mi	Statute Mile (i.e. 1 mi = 5280 ft = 1.6093 km)
NMAC	Near Mid-Air Collision (i.e. near miss)
n.mi	Nautical Mile (1 n.mi = 6076.1 ft = 1.852 km)
NORDO	No Radio Operation (i.e. Aircraft without radios)
NOTAM	Notice to Airmen
OSD	On-screen Display

PAL	Provincial Aerospace Limited
PN	Proportional Navigation (GNC method)
RAVEN	Remote Aerial Vehicles for ENvironment monitoring
R/C	Radio Controlled (also RC)
RF	Radio Frequency
SFOC	Special Flight Operation Certificate
SI	System International (i.e. metric units)
SP	Simple Pursuit (GNC method)
TC	Transport Canada
TCAS	Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System
UAS	Uninhabited Aerial System
UAV	Unmanned Aerial Vehicle
USAF	United States Air Force
USN	United States Navy
VFR	Visual Flight Rules
VMC	Visual Meteorological (weather) Conditions
VP	Virtual Piloting
VR	Virtual Reality
WF	Waypoint Following (navigation)
WP	Waypoint (also WPT)

Note on units: The primary units used in this thesis will be System International (SI) units. However, it must be recognized that aviation regulations in North America use U.S. standard units (i.e. feet, miles, nautical miles or knots), and these are also the standard units used by the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO). These units will therefore be used when quoting such regulations, with the SI equivalent given when appropriate.

List of Appendices

Appendix A - Project RAVEN
Appendix B - Aerosonde Specifications
Appendix C - Canadian Aviation Regulations
Appendix D - GiantStik Specifications
Appendix E - Autopilot Model
Appendix F – Ethics Approval Materials

Chapter 1 Introduction

1.1 The Motivation for Unmanned Aerial Vehicles

1.1.1 The Original Military Role

The Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV) continues to play an ever-expanding role in aviation and is expected to take on more roles traditionally done by manned aircraft in coming years. The UAV has a long history dating back to World War Two, though originally this was primarily for military purposes. The earliest use was as a target-practice drone (Botzum, 1985). One of the successful early examples was the Radioplane OQ-3 as shown in Figure 1-1. This was used as a targeting drone to train anti-aircraft gunners in the U.S. during the war. Norma Jeane Baker (i.e. later to become Marilyn Monroe) was discovered in 1945 while working at the Radioplane munitions factory that assembled this small radio-controlled UAV (Conover, 1981).
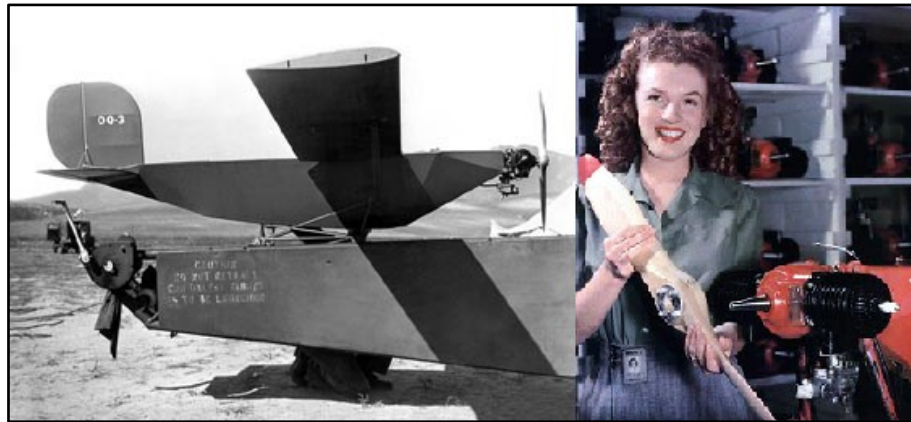
Figure 1-1: The first mass-produced UAV, the Radioplane OQ-3 (left) (Botzum, 1985). Norma Jeane at Radioplane Factory in 1945 (right) (Conover, 1981)

After the war, the UAV continued to be used as targeting drones, but also found new roles as a decoy (i.e. for probing air defenses) and also for aerial reconnaissance. An example of one of the more successful of these was the Ryan Firebee, as shown in Figure 1-2, which was used during the Vietnam War. The improved supersonic-capable Ryan Teledyne Firebee II was also developed and used by the United States Air Force (USAF) until very recently. This UAV remains one of the longest-servicing airframes in the USAF, and saw action as a chaff-corridor dispenser in the opening days of the Iraq War in 2003 (Tarantola, 2013).

Figure 1-2: Hercules-Launched Ryan Firebee used in Vietnam (USN, Public Domain) (left), and Ryan Teledyne Firebee II Recon UAV using a rocket-assisted launch in 1982 (right). (USAF, Public Domain)

In more recent years the UAV has found an increasingly direct military role, ranging from reconnaissance work to active target spotting for the U.S. Battleships, as done by the Pioneer UAV in the first Gulf War in 1991. Most recently, UAVs have been armed and now can provide a remote ground strike capability. The most famous example of this is the armed Predator MQ-1 (Figure 1-3) which has earned the UAV the dubious

name of "drone"[1], a term popularized by the media since the use of the phrase "drone war" to describe the armed Predators used in the Middle East (Bergen & Tiedemann, 2009). This term now appears to apply to all UAVs.

Figure 1-3: General Atomics MQ-1 Predator (USAF, Public Domain)

1.1.2 Expansion to Non-Military Roles

The UAV has also been proposed for many non-military purposes. The UAV is ideal for the "three D" missions, namely ones that are dull, dirty and dangerous for reasons that will be explained below. Examples of proposed non-military missions for the UAV include:

1. Weather monitoring
2. Off-shore environmental patrols
3. Fishery Patrols
4. Ice patrols
5. Border patrols
6. Wild-life surveys
7. Forest fire monitoring
8. Aerial photo surveys

---

[1] Until recently, Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV) was the more commonly used term. In-spite of the popularity of the newer "drone" name, this thesis will continue to use "UAV".

9. Pipeline surveys
10. Traffic monitoring
11. Communication relays
12. Law Enforcement assistance to police (Levy, 2011)
13. Package deliveries proposed by Amazon (Handwerk, 2013)
14. Food delivery such as the "TacoCopter" (Gilbert, 2012)

Project RAVEN is an example of a proposed use of the Low Altitude Long Endurance (LALE) class of UAV for the Intelligence Surveillance Reconnaissance (ISR) missions over the North Atlantic areas off-shore from Eastern Canada (i.e. items 2, 3 and 4 in the previous list). Details on this project are given in Appendix A, which outlines the proposed Concept of Operations (CONOPS) for the RAVEN Project at Memorial in the mid-2000s. The primary idea was to use small UAVs to augment what is now done by Provincial Aerospace Limited (PAL) using manned aircraft like the Beechcraft KingAir. In this and similar roles requiring close ground inspections, the LALE form of the UAV is preferred, for reasons which will be elaborated on in the next sections. While there is no rigorous rule of what defines low-level flight, for the LALE UAV this is certainly less than 5000 feet (1500m), and more commonly less than 1000 feet (300m).

1.1.3 The Utility of UAVs

Since their inception in the 1940s, the UAV has been used in roles considered too dangerous or impractical for manned aircraft. The common traits of most operational UAVs make them ideal for these sorts of missions:

1. DULL – the UAV, having no human pilot or crew to get fatigued, is noted for having extreme endurance capabilities rivalling the longest-range civilian airliners or strategic bombers. As an example, a routine mission for the Aerosonde is over 8 hours, and with an extended fuel tank it can fly for in excess of 24 hours

(Detailed specs for the Aerosonde Mk4.2 can be found in Appendix B). Meanwhile, the maximum endurance of a Beechcraft KingAir in the ISR role is typically around 4-5 hours at low altitudes (Frawley, 1997; Rudkin, 2007). This extreme endurance makes the UAV ideal for roles requiring it to loiter for hours on end, or to cover very large distances, both of which will exceed the endurance limit of any human crew.

2. DIRTY – the UAV is also well suited to fly into situations where the use of a manned aircraft is impractical or unwise. An early military example was the use of radio-controlled unmanned aircraft to fly through radioactive fallout clouds during early nuclear weapons testing in the late 1940s and early 1950s (U.S. Department of Defense, 2005). A more recent civilian example is forest fire monitoring where low visibility (smoke) concerns may make the equivalent use of a manned aircraft too risky, especially at night. Meanwhile the UAV, properly equipped with Infrared (IR) night vision and flying by autopilot using GPS waypoints, can operate over forest fires for a full 24 hour period (InsideGNSS , 2013).

3. DANGEROUS – since the UAV has no human crew on board, it may be considered "expendable" when compared with manned aircraft. This was clearly the case when it was used as a targeting drone in 1940s or to probe enemy anti-aircraft defences. A more recent civilian example is the use of the Aerosonde UAV to fly into the eye of a hurricane. While it is true that the same mission can be accomplished by manned aircraft, the use of the Aerosonde has found increasing acceptance due to the obvious lowered risk to crew and airframe plus the huge cost difference. Even though the Aerosonde is typically sacrificed on these missions, the cost of an Aerosonde ($100k) is only a fraction the multi-million dollar price tag of an equivalent Manned Aircraft, and no human lives are lost. The Aerosonde can also be tasked to stay inside the hurricane for a much longer duration, and at much lower altitudes then would be considered safe for an equivalent manned aircraft operation (NOAA, 2005).

Cost reduction is a major incentive driving the increased use of UAVs. The cost of a typical small to medium sized UAVs is a fraction of the cost of an equivalent manned surveillance aircraft. Even the relatively costly Predator with an estimated unit cost of approximately $4M USD is a fraction of the cost of a P-3 Orion at $36M USD (U.S.Navy, 2009) or a C-130 Hercules at $67.3M USD (U.S. Department of Defense, 2013). Several Predators can be bought and used for the price of just one of these manned aircraft, a point that has not been lost on frugal USAF accountants (U.S. Department of Defense, 2010). Additional mission costs for the equivalent manned aircraft can rapidly mount when fuel, crew costs and airframe maintenance are factored into the cost-benefit analysis. Meanwhile, if done properly a much smaller UAV crew (typically 3-4 people) is all that is needed to mount the same mission.

1.1.4 Classification of UAVs

While there is sometimes what seems to be a bewildering variety of UAVs in operation, attempts have been made to classify them to permit the reasonable establishment of rules and regulations. Regulators such as Transport Canada (TC) and the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) recognize that, like manned aircraft, a different set of rules may be appropriate depending on the size, speed and operational mission of each UAV. A variety of proposed UAV classifications have been proposed, although the most useful guidelines are a combination of a set of proposed standards developed by the European UVS group (VanBlyenburgh, 2001) and those of the U.S. military services (U.S. Department of Defense, 2005). Long-range UAVs are currently classified into these groups:

1. **<u>High Altitude, Long Endurance (HALE)</u>** – very large UAVs with persistent (24 hr+) with maximum altitudes of about 20,000 m (e.g. RQ-4 GlobalHawk).

2. **<u>Medium Altitude, Long Endurance (MALE)</u>** - flies for at least 8 hrs, at altitudes between 5,000-20,000 ft, though these may go lower if required. (e.g. MQ-1 Predator).

3. **<u>Low Altitude, Long Endurance (LALE)</u>** – flies at least 8 hrs (many up to 24 hrs) at altitudes typically under 5000 ft, and most times under 1000 ft (300 m). (e.g. AAI Shadow200, AAI Aerosonde and Boeing ScanEagle).

UAVs are also classified by size, usually according to maximum takeoff weight (MTOW). There is some debate over the precise boundary lines between these, depending on which military service is asked. The accepted classifications as of 2008 were (Bento, 2008):

1. Micro (under 10 lbs)
2. Small/Mini (under 25 kg)[2]
3. Tactical (25 kg – 1000 lbs)
4. Medium (over 1000 lbs)
5. Heavy (over 10,000 lbs)

The LALE class of UAVs are typically of small to tactical size. Typical examples are shown in Figure 1-4, including the AAI Shadow 200, Maryland Aerospace VectorP, AAI Aerosonde and the Boeing ScanEagle.

---

[2] The definition for small UAV varies from 20 kg to 35 kg depending on country/regulator. In this thesis the current Transport Canada limit of 25 kg will be assumed (TC TP15263, 2014).

Figure 1-4: Typical LALE UAVs - Clockwise from Upper Left: AAI Shadow200 (Unmanned Systems Technology, 2012), VectorP (Maryland Aerospace, 2015), AAI Aerosonde Mk1 (Courtesy of Aerosonde/AAI), and Boeing/Insitu ScanEagle (Unmanned Systems Technology, 2012)

1.1.5 The Role for Small LALE UAVs

The LALE UAV is considered ideal for low-altitude surveillance missions, including the ISR offshore missions and land-based missions such as wild-life or pipeline surveys. The primary reason is this class of UAV has high endurance capability. Flight durations of over 24 hours are possible. Since the typical flight speed is around 100 km/hr this implies a range of at least 2400 km. Another ideal feature is they are small enough to be launched without difficulty from practically anywhere, especially if a catapult is used, and may also be recovered on relatively modest runways or even grass fields. The LALE type of UAV has also been designed for low altitude flight while still retaining its 24+ hr endurance. This is a unique feature and not one typically shared by most manned aircraft, whose performance usually suffer at lower altitudes. The accuracy of the Global Positioning System (GPS) based autopilots found on these UAVs is such that low-level terrain-following flight profiles are possible. The LALE UAV can follow

these flight plans for hours on end without fatigue or impaired pilot judgment causing problems. The same cannot be said for an equivalent manned aircraft which is forced to fly at very low altitudes (i.e. 500ft/150m AGL or less) for hours.

1.2 The Challenges and Limitations of UAVs

While there is great interest in expanding the use of UAVs in many non-military roles, this has been prevented due to a number of deficiencies, both real and imagined, which have been attributed to UAVs. The most serious is that the UAV, lacking a human pilot on board, is considered less safe than manned aircraft. This apparent lack of an Equivalent Level of Safety (ELOS) as manned aircraft is used as a reason to restrict their operation. This attitude dates back to the Chicago Convention Article 8 (Chicago, December 7, 1944), which states (ICAO, 2011):

"No aircraft capable of being flown without a pilot shall be flown without a pilot over the territory of a contracting State without special authorization by that State and in accordance with the terms of such authorization…."

In Canada, this means a Special Flight Operation Certificate (SFOC) must be obtained for every UAV operation in Canada (TC SI-623-001, 2014)[3]. This effectively prevents the routine use of UAVs for most of the civilian missions proposed.

The specific limitations which appear to be the source of doubts regarding the safety of the UAV in civilian airspace are detailed in the following sections.

---

[3] There have been very recent developments in both TC and FAA regulations which are a hopeful sign that a balanced approach to UAV regulations is being followed. In Canada, very recent guidelines have been announced which grants a limited exemption to several of the CARs related to airworthiness and the lack of a pilot onboard. Two classes of exemptions apply to very small UAVs below 2 kg, and to the small UAVs under 25 kg being considered in this thesis. Provided these are flown below 500 ft AGL and within visual line of sight at all times, the SFOC requirements have been simplified (TC CAR Exempt., 2014).

1.2.1   **Lack of Pilot See and Avoid Capability**

Since UAVs do not have a pilot on board, the inherent ability implied in the aviation regulations of the pilot to "see and avoid" other aircraft is absent (FAA AC-90-48-C, 1983; Henderson, 2010). Of course, the effectiveness of the human "see and avoid" capability may be questioned (Hobbs, 1991). This perceived deficiency of UAVs is at the heart of most claims that they are inherently less safe than manned aircraft.

1.2.2   **Inadequate Anti-Collision Technologies**

The development of appropriate regulations regarding the use of standard anti-collision equipment on civilian UAVs is very much a work in progress in Canada (UAV Working Group , 2007), the US (Lacher, Maroney, & Zeitlin, 2007) and the rest of the world (ICAO, 2011). A detailed discussion will be left for later chapters, although it may be summarized as follows: simply adopting current standards for manned aircraft, for example requiring the universal installation of a transponder, navigation and anti-collision lighting may not be as straight-forward on small UAVs.

Current lighting systems for General Aviation (GA) aircraft such as the Cessna C172 (35 ft wingspan) may be difficult to fit on the much smaller UAVs like the Aerosonde Mk4.2. (10 ft wingspan), nor make sense from a geometric point of view (i.e. light pattern distribution). There is also the problem of power requirements. It is possible that lighting systems based on ultra-bright LEDs could solve this problem. However, there are currently no regulations within Canada which define appropriate standards for vehicles smaller then home-built aircraft such as the Murphy Rebel, considered to be in the "Ultra Light" class at 1650 lb, 30 ft wingspan (Murphy Aircraft, 2008).

There is also confusion over the need for a transponder. In Canada, the legal requirement is that a transponder is needed only if an aircraft will fly into Controlled Airspace. The rules for U.S. Airspace are similar (MacDonald & Peppler, 2000). Generally speaking this is airspace above a certain altitude or within an Air Traffic Control (ATC) control zone. LALE UAVs are normally used for missions at very low altitudes and in remote locations far from major population centers. Unless the mission requires them to launch and recover at a major airport, they are unlikely to fly into controlled airspace.

As a result of this uncertainty regarding lights and transponder requirements, the general response by small UAV airframe manufacturers is to simply omit them. The customer then assumes the responsibility to make any necessary modifications according to local regulations. This is the case with the Aerosonde Mk4.2, the VectorP and the TBM UAV1. All are supplied without lights or a transponder. Our own experience is that in the absence of regulations for small UAVs, the regulator will make rulings on a case-by-case basis and typically err on the side of stricter requirements than for manned aircraft.

1.2.3 No Detect, Sense and Avoid System

Most current UAVs are essentially "blind" during autonomous flight and have no awareness of other potential airborne or ground-based collision hazards. This situation will persist unless some form of autonomous Detect, Sense and Avoid (DSA) system is provided. At present a system suitable for use in the smaller LALE class of UAVs is unavailable (Davis, 2006). This poses a serious risk and concern, and is a major limiting

11

factor to UAVs gaining general acceptance by aviation regulatory bodies and amongst pilots (Kirkby, 2006).

Without a reliable DSA capability that provides an ELOS as manned aircraft, small UAVs will be regarded as a threat to flight safety. Flight operations for UAVs in Canada are currently only allowed through advanced application and approval of an SFOC (TC SI-623-001, 2014). There are restrictions limiting operational times (i.e. typically these are daytime visual weather conditions), their ability to fly in controlled airspace and to fly Beyond Line of Sight (BLOS). These restrictions are contrary to the type of routine operations in non-segregated airspace implied by the proposed missions for small LALE UAVs.

1.2.4 Limited BLOS Situational Awareness

Most UAVs, especially the smaller LALE class, have limited Beyond Line of Sight (BLOS) situational awareness capabilities. This could be considered an element of the DSA problem but what we are mainly talking about here is the awareness of the Autonomous Vehicle Operator (AVO) whose job it is to control and monitor the UAV at the Ground Control Station (GCS). Most commercial GCS software packages used with small UAVs do an excellent job of showing what the UAV is doing, assuming a good telemetry link is maintained. The GCS usually shows a plan view in the form of a 2D map with the current waypoints, UAV location and some track history displayed. An example is shown in Figure 1-5, in this case the Mission Planner GCS used in conjunction with the ArduPilot (3D Robotics, 2014). In this annotated example provided by 3D Robotics, the key elements of the display are detailed. Similar displays are present in the

Horizon GCS used with the MicroPilot and the Cloud Cap GCS used with the Piccollo II autopilot as installed on the Aerosonde.

Figure 1-5: APM Mission Planner GCS Display with Annotations (courtesy of 3D Robotics)

Only those UAV(s) under the direct command of the local GCS are typically shown in current commercial GCS software suites. The AVO is usually unaware of any other entities which are not under his direct control. This could include other UAVs, ground or terrain obstacles, or manned aircraft which might also be in the vicinity. Attempts have been made to augment the situation using some other means such as Automatically Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast (ADS-B) and this is an active research area. However, this information is usually on a separate display, not integrated into the GCS and thus very difficult to use for precise coordination, especially at BLOS ranges.

Unless these different data streams are fused together into a single, cohesive situation display at the GCS, the overall situational awareness will be very limited.

1.2.5   Unique Challenges for the Small LALE

While the small LALE type of UAV is an ideal candidate for the ISR missions, they have a number of unique challenges in addition to those already discussed.

1.2.5.1 <u>Low visibility</u>

The small LALE UAV is typically an airframe with a wingspan of around 10 ft (3m) and very narrow fuselage under 1 ft (0.3m) diameter. The forward cross-sectional area, optimized for low drag and endurance unfortunately has the side-effect of creating an airframe that is very small and difficult to see at normal aviation sighting distances. The small UAV is essentially invisible to other aircraft without some form of visual enhancements.

1.2.5.2 <u>Limited Payload</u>

The small LALE UAV, typically with a maximum takeoff weight of under 15 kg (30 lbs), has a very limited payload, typically in the 5-7 kg (10-15 lb) range, including fuel.   This limits what can be carried by the UAV, especially in terms of anti-collision and detection equipment.   For example, there is no known radar system light or small enough that would fit on existing small UAVs. This is the primary reason why no system has yet been developed that would fit on the small UAV and provide the required DSA capabilities (Ellis, Investigation of Emerging Technologies and Regulations for UAV 'Sense and Avoid' Capability, 2006).

1.2.5.3 **Manual Control Methods**

      Current TC regulations require that even in the case of fully automatic UAV flight, there exist a manual override capability throughout the flight, equivalent to the implied Pilot-in-Command capabilities on manned aircraft. This requirement for a human "Safety Pilot" is expected to remain in the regulations for many years to come (TC SI-623-001, 2014). Unfortunately, the current Radio Control (R/C) manual pilot method used by most small UAVs is not suitable for several reasons.

      The most obvious problem is that manual R/C control methods restrict control to a very limited visual range from the airfield, perhaps 0.5 km maximum. This is contrary to the nature of the long range missions that the LALE UAV is most suited to perform. It is possible to augment this method somewhat by switching to remote operation of the UAV using a forward-looking video camera, also called the First Person View (FPV). This is a commonly employed technique with larger military UAVs like the Predator (USAF, 2010). We have demonstrated a similar capability on the Aerosonde Mk4.2 using much smaller and lighter analog video transmission equipment. However this mode is only possible within electronic Line-of-Sight (eLOS) conditions, meaning the range in which a high speed video and telemetry link is possible, which is typically a maximum of 20 km range. Note that the precise real-time operation of a UAV will be hampered if not impossible if satellites are used, due to increased data link latency and/or bandwidth limitations (Clough, 2005).

      Another problem is personnel availability and skill set. It is incorrect to assume that any manned aircraft pilot can successfully fly a small UAV remotely, especially if the

R/C mode is used. The nature of R/C control, where you are viewing the aircraft externally (as opposed to from within the cockpit), requires a different skill set than with manned aircraft. Common problems include over-control and pilot disorientation due to "control reversal" caused when the aircraft is facing the R/C pilot. Another problem, experienced by this author personally, is in rapidly determining the aircraft orientation when the small aircraft is far away or under rapidly changing or difficult lighting conditions (e.g. sunlight glare or airplane silhouetting). A FPV video might alleviate most of these pilot disorientation effects, but there is still the issue of over-control. This is especially true for the smaller LALE class of UAV, where the flight dynamics are similar to the larger acrobatic gas-powered R/C hobby aircraft. The control of these model aircraft requires extremely gentle control inputs and fast reflexes. It is a skill that takes years to develop and one which some may never master. This creates a serious personnel training paradigm (Williams, 2004).

Another concern with manual piloting is the requirement for the LALE UAVs to fly in less-than-ideal weather conditions, for example if used in the ISR role in the North Atlantic maritime environment. Current manual piloting practice will restrict flight operations to relatively benign weather conditions. There are limits on crosswinds and visibility, which on small airframes is even more restrictive than the rules for the smallest General Aviation (GA) aircraft. The manual pilot is simply not fast enough to control a small UAV safely in adverse wind conditions, and completely incapable of piloting a vehicle in poor visibility conditions. Without remedy, this is a major restriction to operational use of small UAVs for realistic maritime conditions.

1.3   Problem statement

This research project has attempted to assess the current risk imposed by the small UAV in order to determine its current Estimated Level of Safety (ELS). By comparing this with manned aircraft we may determine if it is possible to improve the UAV, using novel technologies or operational methods to give is an ELOS as manned aircraft operating in the same airspace.

1.3.1   Risk Assessment

The addition of the small UAV to the same airspace where manned aircraft will also fly (i.e. non-segregated airspace) does create a number of additional risks.   The real physical risks are:

1. **Ground Collision Risk** – This is the risk the UAV poses to people or property on the ground due to the UAV crashing or colliding with the ground. This could be due to equipment failures, environmental or operational errors which cause the UAV to strike the ground in either an un-controlled crash or controlled flight into ground obstacles. Environmental factors could include the onset of poor weather which may lead to equipment failure if not properly designed-for in the airframe. Bird-strikes are another source of damage. There is a need to improve the take-off and landing phases, especially for over-loaded small UAVs, to reduce the incidence of airframe losses at these critical stages.   Proper planning for emergency landing procedures due to in-flight damage (i.e. from bad weather or bird-strikes) is also required.

2. **Mid-Air Collision Risk** - This is the additional risk of an air-to-air collision due to the addition of the UAV into the airspace. This is directly associated with presence (or lack) of anti-collision technologies, including DSA, on the small UAV.

There are also perceived threats or risks due to UAV operations, both real and imagined, which limit their acceptability and ability to gain approval to be used in many of the civilian mission roles. Some of these may be difficult to correct but we must be aware of them:

1. Fear of UAVs as being an invisible, non-compliant user of the airspace, especially amongst pilots (Kirkby, 2006).

2. Public fear of the UAV as "drones" in the sense of the Predator usage by the U.S. to conduct targeted killings in the Middle East. The negative publicity of this recent use of "drones" has tainted the public perception of all UAVs. (Bergen & Tiedemann, 2009; Haven, 2011) There have also been recent concerns over privacy especially with the surge in the popularity of the small hobby drones (Brown, 2014).

3. Limited reliability data (for civilian UAVs) due to their very recent history, especially when compare with equivalent manned aircraft which now has many decades of statistic data to validate their safety. This is a major source of the generally conservative stance being taken by aviation regulators worldwide regarding UAV airworthiness.

1.3.2   Definition of Equivalent Level of Safety

This research project has concentrated on one of the more difficult aspects of the UAV safety problem, and the subject of much debate within the UAV industry and amongst government aviation regulators – the concept of "Equivalent Level of Safety" (ELOS). It is interesting that the concept of ELOS is used without much quantification of what it means. All would agree that the basic interpretation is essentially that the UAV must be at least as safe as manned aircraft in the same airspace (NATO Naval Armaments

Group, 2007). Unfortunately, this is usually where agreement ends, since the definition of manned aircraft safety is itself open to some debate (Hobbs, 1991).
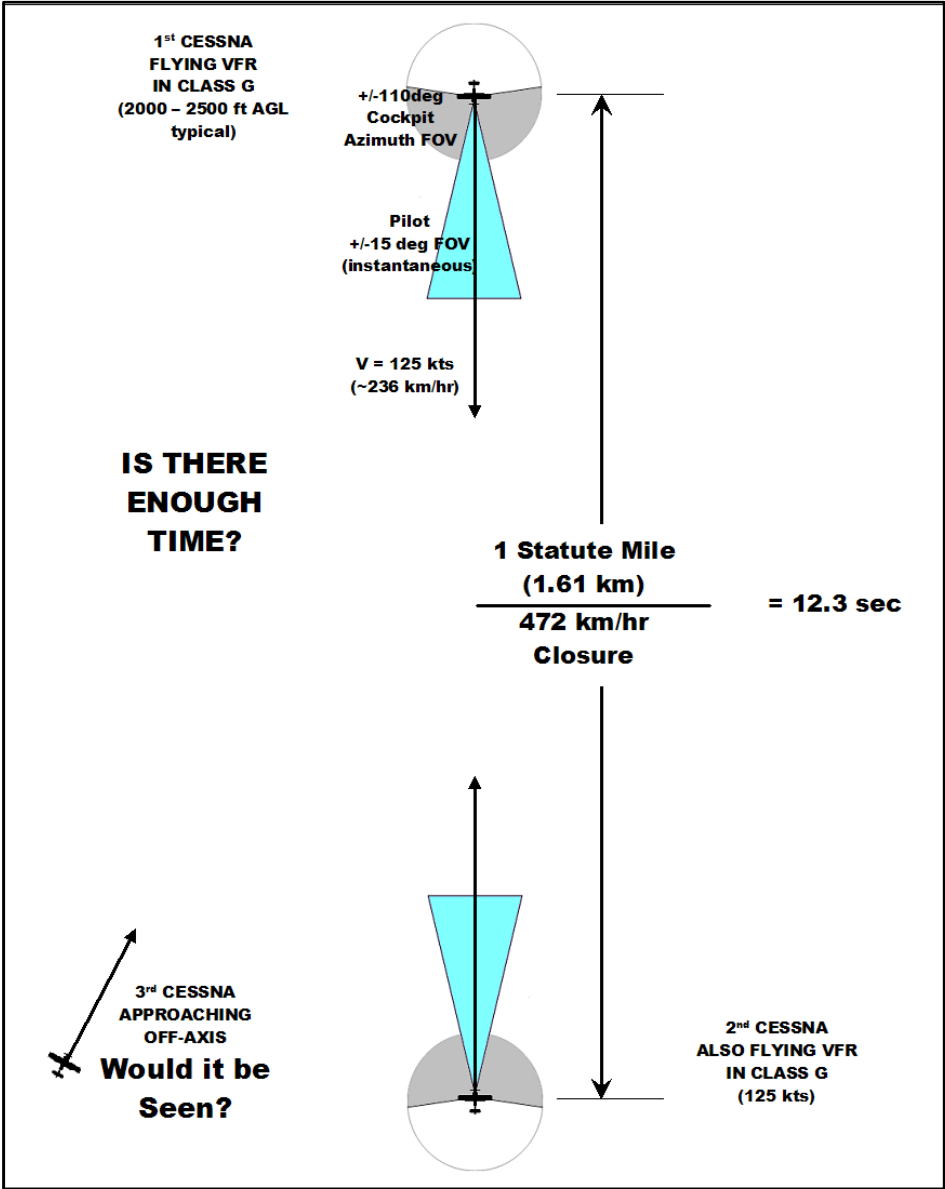
Figure 1-6: Limitations of Manned Aviation "See and Avoid"

To illustrate, consider the case presented in Figure 1-6, of two GA aircraft (e.g. Cessna C172s) flying under Visual Flight Rules (VFR) in uncontrolled airspace. Assume

that they are flying at typical cruising speed (125 kts = 236 km/hr) and altitude (2500ft/760m). Since they are in uncontrolled airspace, neither would need a transponder nor would be equipped with a Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System (TCAS). Under current Canadian airspace regulations, the minimum visibility requirement in this situation is 1 statute mile (1.6 km) (TC CARs, Part 6, Section 602.114 through 602.117, 2014). Suppose that these aircraft are on a head-on collision course. Closure speed will be in excess of 472 km/hr. Time to impact is a little over 12 seconds. This is not a lot of time to detect each other and conduct an effective avoidance maneuver. It is debatable whether a human pilot, especially if distracted with other matters such as scanning the cockpit, would even be able to resolve the narrow head-on silhouette of a Cessna at 1 mile range. The situation is worse if the other aircraft (or both aircraft) are approaching each other "off axis" as illustrated by the third aircraft in lower left corner of the figure.

The use of anti-collision strobes would enhance visibility and might increase the minimum sighting distances. However, anti-collision light use is generally reserved for situations of poor visibility (i.e. night or poor weather). During daylight VFR it is unlikely that either aircraft would have their anti-collision lights turned on. The bottom line in this example is that even though both aircraft are being operated in accordance with current aviation regulations, there is still a high probability that a collision could occur. Sadly, there have been several mid-air collision accidents both in Canada and the U.S. involving GA and small helicopters which illustrate this point, including one recently in Saskatchewan in 2012 (TSB Report A12C0053, 2012). It is interesting that the last airliner versus airliner mid-air collision in North America occurred in 1965. However, incidents involving GA versus GA have been occurring regularly since that

20

time. There have also been several incidents where a GA aircraft collided with a commercial airliner, perhaps the most infamous being the 1986 Aero-Mexico mid-air collision over Cerritos, which resulted in catastrophic casualties including many on the ground (NTSB/AAR-87/07, 1987). In all of these incidents, the NTSB accident report invariably reaches the same conclusion: that pilot error, and the inherent limitations of the "see and avoid" principle in manned aircraft were to blame.

The limitations of the "see and avoid" principle in manned aircraft have been documented by many researchers and known for many years (Graham & Orr, 1970). These limitations were summarized in an Australian Report in 1991 (Hobbs, 1991). The recognition of these limitations was the main incentive towards the research and development of automatic collision avoidance systems in the late 1960s to 1980s, and the reason why we have the TCAS system as standard equipment on all commercial air traffic today. The Aero-Mexico mid-air collision in particular, and its similarity to another incident near San Diego in 1978 was what finally spurred action by the FAA to make TCAS mandatory by 1993 (FAA AC-120-55-A, 1993). This has clearly made civilian airline transportation quite safe, but the situation with smaller GA aircraft remains essentially unchanged, as the accident in Saskatchewan in 2012 demonstrates.

1.3.3 Summary of the Detect Sense and Avoid Problem

Table 1-1 summarizes the combinations inherent in the DSA problem, assuming Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC) exist. The first quadrant (1) represents the situation with manned aircraft, where every pilot is responsible to maintain vigilance for

other aircraft and provide the collision avoidance capability. The limitations of the "see and avoid" principle does cast some doubt on the overall safety of this situation.

Table 1-1: Summary of the DSA Problem for Small UAVs in VMC

	Intruder Type	
Aircraft Type	Manned	UAV
Manned	(1) Manned VFR Flight	(2) Can the UAV be seen and avoided?
UAV	(3) Can we see and avoid manned aircraft?	(4) Cooperative UAVs

Quadrant four (4) represents the other extreme where multiple UAVs in the same airspace must see and avoid each other. This is technologically the easiest situation to remedy. There are GPS-based systems which can cooperatively broadcast position information to other similarly-equipped air vehicles and coordinate avoidance maneuvers, such as ADS-B (Contarino, 2009). Provided all UAVs in the area use such a system, implementation of an autonomous DSA system becomes fairly straightforward.

Quadrants two (2) and three (3) represent the challenge for small UAVs, and the focus of research in the DSA field. In the case of quadrant 2, this is the concern of whether the UAV represents a collision (obstacle) hazard to manned aircraft. Small UAVs are more difficult to see then the smallest manned aircraft. Quadrant 3 represents the problem in the other direction (i.e. "Can the UAV see and avoid manned aircraft?") and defines the basic problem of DSA, especially if both cooperative and un-cooperative aircraft must be considered. The UAV must be able to sense intruding vehicles and other

collision hazards in the airspace, and possess some autonomous collision avoidance capability. However, at present there are no DSA systems recognized by any aviation regulatory body as providing a small UAV with an equivalent level of safety as that of manned aircraft (Ellis, Investigation of Emerging Technologies and Regulations for UAV 'Sense and Avoid' Capability, 2006).

1.4 **Thesis Outline**

This first chapter has provided an introduction to the topic of small UAV safety. The motivation driving the use of UAVs, and specifically the small LALE class of UAV, has been presented along with a summary of the challenges which currently limit their acceptability and use in civilian airspace. The research in this thesis attempts to assess the current level of safety of the small UAV. Ways to mitigate the real or perceived risks posed by the small UAV will be explored in the following chapters, which are organized as follows.

In Chapter 2 a qualitative measure of the perceived risks associated with UAVs is presented. This is followed by a quantitative estimate of the real risks that the UAV poses, primarily in terms of the threat to the ground (i.e. Ground Impact risk) and other aircraft (Mid-Air Collision risk). This allows an assessment to be made of the ELS of the small UAV.

Chapter 3 presents research into methods to reduce the ground impact risk by improving the controllability and situational awareness while operating small UAVs. This research includes the use of Virtual Reality technologies to fly small UAVs using FPV techniques, and possible long-range enhanced control methods. Reductions in the

mid-air collision risk may also be possible, especially when enhancements to AVO situational awareness are considered.

Chapter 4 addresses the air-to-air risk pertaining to small UAV visibility, starting with theoretical calculations of the limits to detection range by human pilots. The chapter presents results from a series of night time and day time visibility experiments using lights, and the results of field testing of other visibility enhancement technologies. This research primarily concerns the "can the UAV be seen?" concern noted in Quadrant 2 of the DSA summary given in Table 1-1, its effect on the mid-air collision risk, and possible ways to mitigate this risk.

Chapter 5 presents research into 4D simulation and a theoretical discussion of various 4D maneuvers and possible avoidance methods. This addresses the mid-air collision risk implied in Quadrants 2 and 3 of Table 1-1. However, it should be recognized that the development of a reliable and autonomous DSA capability that addresses the concerns of manned aviation will involve a multiple-step approach, including:

1. Theoretical analysis;
2. Simulation of DSA scenarios;
3. Field testing, including data collection, using UAV versus UAV techniques; and,
4. Field testing involving manned aircraft.

This is a very large subject area, so by necessity this thesis has focused on the first two steps. In addition to an accurate 4D simulation environment, a novel method to test DSA strategies and a very promising collision avoidance method are introduced. This lays a

strong foundation for the field testing implied in Step 3. It is hoped that the methods presented might be used during live UAV field testing in the near future, and provide validation, experience and confidence in the proposed DSA methods. The experience and confidence gained during Step 3 are essential before contemplating the live testing involving manned aircraft as implied in Step 4.

Chapter 6 is the conclusion of this thesis. It summarizes the risk assessments from previous chapters and the potential improvements possible by adopting the mitigation strategies presented in this thesis. A minimum set of requirements for a DSA system suitable for small UAVs is presented. The chapter provides the summary of the current situation related to UAV safety, and in particular very recent developments in this area. The thesis concludes with some recommendations for follow-on research topics.

Chapter 2 Assessing the Risks Posed by UAVs

In this chapter we will discuss both the perception and the reality of the risk posed by the UAV, and in particular the small UAV[4]. An attempt will be made to determine the real threat level posed by the small UAV in a quantitative manner, especially in terms of the Ground Impact and Mid-Air Collision risks. The other "political" concerns will also be discussed. Only when an objective comparison is made with manned aviation can we determine whether or not the small UAV has an ELOS as manned aircraft. With this knowledge we will be in a much better position to assess if the small UAV meets, exceeds or falls short of the safety expectations imposed on it. From this analysis we will then be able to determine where efforts should be focused so that the safety of the UAV may be improved. In the following discussions, several different aviation regulations will be mentioned. Excerpts from the Canadian Aviation Regulations (CARs) applicable to this safety discussion are provided in Appendix C.

2.1 The Requirements for UAV Integration

Even though Unmanned Aerial Vehicles are recognized to be a very effective tool for many civilian missions, their acceptance by aviation regulators is prevented by the perception that they are not mature enough to be properly integrated into the busy national airspace systems of most countries. Specifically, there are many regulatory restrictions

---

[4] It should be recognized that the UAV must be considered as a system – including not just the obvious airframe but also the avionics, GCS and operational procedures. In the following discussions, while much of the risk assessment focuses on the obvious airframe hardware, mention will also be made of other potential sources of problems, especially operational concerns. And while software-induced failures will not be described in detail, they will be considered as being included in the overall reliability estimates for typical small UAVs.

which prevent the routine operation of UAVs. Routine operations are essential for UAVs to be both cost-effective and an advantage over equivalent manned operations.

There are active efforts to determine what must be done to permit this to happen. Very recently, the U.S. Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) presented its updated roadmap for the integration of Unmanned Aircraft Systems (UAS)[5] in the National Airspace System (NAS). The forward from FAA Administrator Michael Huerta sets the tone (Federal Aviation Administration, 2013):

"This roadmap outlines the actions and considerations needed to enable UAS integration into the NAS. The roadmap also aligns proposed FAA actions with Congressional mandates from the FAA Modernization and Reform Act of 2012. This plan also provides goals, metrics, and target dates for the FAA and its government and industry partners to use in planning key activities for UAS integration."

The FAA roadmap provides detailed information on what is deemed necessary to allow all this integration to happen. The following excerpt in the FAA roadmap, taken from the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) circular for UAS summarizes the requirements very well (ICAO, 2011):

"A number of Civil Aviation Authorities (CAA) have adopted the policy that UAS must meet the equivalent levels of safety as manned aircraft… In general, UAS should be operated in accordance with the rules governing the flight of manned aircraft and meet

---

[5] The FAA uses the more generic term Unmanned (or Uninhabited) Aircraft System (UAS), to define the UAV as being a system which includes not only the airframe but also the ground-based control systems and operators. However this thesis will continue to use the more generic acronym UAV.

equipment requirements applicable to the class of airspace within which they intend to operate…To safely integrate UAS in non-segregated airspace, the UAS must act and respond as manned aircraft do. Air Traffic, Airspace and Airport standards should not be significantly changed. The UAS must be able to comply with existing provisions to the greatest extent possible."

Thus the basic definition of ELOS may is summarized as this: the UAV must possess the same inherent safety as manned aircraft, and operate in a similar manner, to be allowed to operate freely in non-segregated airspace. Another significant FAA statement relates to the need for the UAV to mature significantly in terms of airworthiness:

"Except for some special cases, such as small UAS[6] with very limited operational range, all UAS will require design and airworthiness certification to fly civil operations in the NAS."

In Canada, Transport Canada (TC) set up a UAV Working Group in the mid-2000s to make recommendations for changes required to the Canadian Air Regulations (CARs) to allow UAVs to operate in segregated and non-segregated airspace. Consensus among the UAV Working Group members was that the growth area in UAV operation will be in the small class of UAVs. These aircraft are extremely capable, having a service ceiling of 6,000 m, flight duration exceeding 24 hours and an operating range of many

---

6 The small UAS being mentioned here is equivalent to modified R/C aircraft equipped with an autopilot, typically flown within 1 km of its landing area.

thousand kilometers. An example is the Aerosonde Mk4.2 UAV, detailed in Appendix B. This class of UAV was deemed problematic since their small size and light weight precludes the use of existing off-the-shelf systems such as TCAS. A report was generated with regulations to follow after technical and legal review (TC UAV Working Group, 2007). It was hoped this would eliminate the regulation bottleneck preventing routine UAV operations in Canada. As recently as two years ago, the development of CARs specifically for UAVs had stalled. However, the recent surge in "drone" usage has revived efforts by regulators to define appropriate UAV regulations. An updated SFOC staff instruction was issued by TC only this past November (TC SI-623-001, 2014). TC still considers each UAV application on a case-by-case basis, requiring an SFOC for each and every UAV mission, although exemptions are possible for very small UAVs operated solely within visual line of sight (TC CAR Exempt., 2014).

Internationally, there have been attempts since 2005 by various international organizations to develop standards and regulations regarding the operation of UAVs, and the requirements for DSA technologies. The absence of a viable DSA technology which may be used by civilian UAVs was considered as the main obstacle (Ellis, Investigation of Emerging Technologies and Regulations for UAV 'Sense and Avoid' Capability, 2006). The most comprehensive of these were the European Eurocontrol (2006), the American ASTM-F2411-04 Committee, and the NATO Joint Capability Group on Unmanned Aerial Vehicles. The Eurocontrol committee focused on specifications for military operational air traffic and some recommendations have been adopted selectively for GA traffic (Eurocontrol, 2006). The ASTM committee focused on performance-based

standards, but the recommended certification procedures involve costly flight tests and simulation runs due to the combinatory nature of the required test scenarios. The NATO Group generated a comprehensive set of requirements for collision avoidance and general operating rules applicable to UAVs over 150 kg, with the goal of establishing a set of international standards applicable amongst its member countries (NATO Naval Armaments Group, 2007).

As of this writing, there still remains to be seen a definitive set of regulations applicable to UAV integration. It would appear that many are taking a "wait and see" attitude, likely hoping for some breakthrough in DSA technology or the FAA taking a leadership role and spearheading the establishment of such regulations (Murfin, 2013).

2.2   Perceived and Assumed Risks

There are a number of perceived and assumed risks associated with the operation of an UAV that we have encountered during our initial flight test of several small UAV systems, including the Aerosonde UAV.   The fear of these perceived risks hamper the acceptance of UAVs and the practical aspects of flight operations have dampened the initial enthusiasm and assumptions of lowered operational costs.

2.2.1   Risk to the Crew

While the airborne operation of the UAV does not pose any threat to a crew on-board the aircraft, there is a small risk to the operators on the ground, particularly during the launch and recovery stages.   This is particularly true when manual R/C flying techniques are used.   The threat of injury to a member of the ground crew increases with

crew size, so it is incumbent on the UAV operator to limit the number of personnel at the airfield. It is also important to minimize (or eliminate altogether) any non-involved spectators who may be interested in watching the UAV operation. The danger is the small UAV resembles a large R/C aircraft and thus both the operator and bystanders can become complacent about the risk. As an example, the Aerosonde UAV lands at a very high speed, approximately 80-90 km/hr and has a set of very narrow wings similar to propeller blades. During the final stage of landing the Aerosonde is an unpowered glider approach, meaning it will be coming in to land somewhere after the commitment time when engine power is cut, and has limited maneuvering options. If this UAV were to hit someone standing beside the runway, it would most certainly injure them badly, perhaps fatally.

This is an issue which the R/C hobby has had to deal with in recent years especially after several incidents in Europe and Canada where spectators were injured (or killed) while watching R/C flying events (MTI Hungary, 13 May 2006). Adopting a minimum safe distance from spectators, similar to existing R/C air field guidelines in the Model Aeronautics Association of Canada (MAAC) or the Academy of Model Aeronautics (AMA) would also be wise to prevent any incidents involving spectators (MAAC, 2014).

For the ground crew, this risk is easy to reduce simply by adopting prudent safety practices at the airfield. In the case of the Aerosonde, requiring that all personnel take cover (e.g. going inside the GCS van or another vehicle) during the launch and recovery stages of the mission would be sufficient to eliminate this threat.

2.2.2   **High Operational Costs**

During initial UAV operations, especially by people accustomed to manned aviation, there is a tendency to apply manned aviation practices to the small UAV. This is particularly true in terms of the number of people in the cockpit, number of sensor operators, maintenance personnel and so forth. Whereas most small UAV vendors quote crews of 2-3 required to operate them, this author has personally witnessed the growth of the Aerosonde UAV crew to as much as a dozen people at a given time. This mode of operation might be necessary during the initial training stages, but must transition to a leaner operating model very quickly, or the economic case for using the UAV will be defeated. The high initial training and start-up costs with our Aerosonde UAV operations was a major reason why this portion of the project to stall.

The operation of the small UAV should be possible with only three people: a manual (safety pilot) who also performs much of the maintenance duties, the AVO who will monitor and control the autopilot portion of the mission, and a mission supervisor whose responsibility would be to ensure the SFOC rules are being observed and is prepared to communicate with other airspace operators using an Air-band radio.

2.2.3   **Financial Risk due to Attrition**

Another hurdle to UAV acceptance is the fear of losing the aircraft, and the associated financial cost. In 2006 we had been warned by the Aerosonde UAV vendor to expect some attrition in our UAV fleet, especially as flight hours increased. This is an admission that though a very thorough flight checkout procedure preceded every

Aerosonde mission, there were still real concerns over the reliability of the airframe, especially in terms of the radio link between the UAV and the GCS, and with the engine. We experienced the loss of two airframes, and both incidents were associated with a loss-link between the manual pilot and airframe. Recently, the Aerosonde UAV power-plant underwent a thorough re-evaluation after concerns over its reliability surfaced with increasing utilization with the U.S. military (Rosenberg, 2013). This problem is common in civil aviation, especially with novel systems or engines. It is only once an airframe starts to accumulate a high number of hours that quality problems will surface, and the outcome of reliability estimates (a routine task performed for engines and sub-systems) are validated. The Aerosonde powerplant problems were solved after a major manned aircraft engine manufacturer (Lycoming) stepped in and applied civil aviation methods (Hemmerdinger, 2013).

Especially at the initial stages of small UAV operations, the loss of airframes due to flight mishaps will have a direct impact on the operating costs of the program, and will also have the practical effect of decreasing the availability of aircraft to perform missions. Both concerns are seen to be major drivers behind the "fear factor" preventing the use of the small UAV for the risky LALE missions for which it was designed to perform.

Based on our own experience, before embarking on a program using commercially available small UAVs, the attrition cost due to loss of airframes must be considered and planned for, and then monitored carefully as the project progresses. This is important later when there may be a need to prove the reliability of the system (e.g. when applying for an SFOC). It is wise to assume the loss of an airframe as occurring at a particular rate.

The best source of information in these situations is to contact another user of the same UAV, one who has used it for enough hours to permit a realistic assessment of its operational reliability.

2.2.4   The Doctrine of Zero-Tolerance

Until small UAVs improve in terms of quality and reliability, it is a foregone conclusion that they will crash.   This is where their operation runs afoul of the doctrine of zero-tolerance to incidents or accidents which exists (for good reason) in manned aviation.   Aircraft operators accustomed to this doctrine follow a similar conservative stance built-in to manned aviation culture.   This is a good thing for manned aviation, but unfortunately is counter to one of the main reasons to use UAVs – that they may be considered expendable and used for very risky missions where a crash may very likely be the final outcome.   It is true that to maintain the cost benefit of using UAVs, it is still prudent to prevent needless airframe losses during routine operations, for example during takeoff and landing where most of the serious incidents typically occur.

What must be realized is that the civilian UAV is a relative newcomer to aviation, perhaps having only 15 years' experience. Manned aviation is now over a century old but it too experienced much of the same growing pains, crashes, blunders and tragedies, especially in the early years.   The key point is that manned aviation learned from these early mistakes and experiences, steadily improving the technology and operational techniques used. The net result is that modern air travel is statistically the safest form of transportation today (ICAO, 2013).

For the UAV to gain acceptance, especially with regulators, it must be allowed to fly with increasing frequency to allow operators to gain the knowledge and experience needed to improve them and make them safer. **The fear of crashing must be replaced with a prudent acceptance of failure**. Until the small UAV matures and reliability improves, UAVs must be designed and operated with the assumption that it may crash at any moment. Operational procedures and the airframes must be designed with this in mind, always with the aim to minimize the risk, especially to people or property on the ground, and also to mitigate the effects of a crash. Only once a given small UAV has been flying for a large number of hours (i.e. 10,000+ hrs) without serious incidents will this perceived risk be reduced.

2.2.5 Public Fear of UAVs

Public fear of the UAV was not a major concern when civilian UAV operations were first contemplated in the early 2000s. However, recent negative publicity, especially the controversy over the use of the Predator-B as a hunter-killer asset in the Middle East has not helped the case for the UAV (Bergen & Tiedemann, 2009). There seems to be a growing public perception that the "drone" is to be feared, either as a direct threat to life, or as an invasion of privacy for some of its proposed surveillance roles.

Unfortunately there is not much we can do (technically) to dispel this perception, apart from ensuring that our operations do not create any threats to people on the ground or other aircraft. Public education into the advantages of the civilian UAV is also needed to combat the negative perception of the evil "drone". This is a critical time. In a recent

article in the AUVSI journal (Haven, 2011), the danger to the future of the UAV industry was compared to that of the nuclear industry, which is essentially gone in North America due to poor public perception coupled with the unfortunate timing of several nuclear accidents. The same thing could happen with UAVs in the current negative political environment.

Once UAVs are operating and providing reliable services, as package delivery systems for Amazon, assistance to fire or police emergencies, or as friendly traffic alert systems in the sky for motorists, public acceptance of the presence of the small UAV in civilian areas should improve. The one thing that can be done in the meantime is to strive to improve the reliability of the small UAV to prevent any incidents, and to design operations to minimize any risk the UAV may pose to the general public.

2.2.6 Motivation for Improved Reliability

Much of the perceived risks (fears) associated with UAVs, and in particular the small UAV, may be reduced or eliminated through improved reliability of the airframe and the overall UAV system. Improving the reliability of the airframe should help reduce airframe attrition rates and drive down costs associated with operations due to lost aircraft. Overall improved quality of the airframe should also reduce the excessive amount of maintenance that is currently needed on some small UAVs to maintain even a modest level of reliability. Improved reliability of the overall UAV system will likewise reduce the number of incidents and help improve the public perception of the UAV as a safe user of the air space above their heads. Aviation regulators and other manned aircraft

operators alike will also improve their perception of the risk the UAV poses, and allow it greater operational freedom.

2.2.7 The Motivation for UAV Control Enhancement Research

Another area of improvement is in the area of operations, specifically how the small UAV is controlled during take-off and landings. It is proposed that much of the current safety concerns of small UAV operations, in particular the safety of the ground crew and airframe, may be alleviated if a different mode of operation is used. The manual R/C method of flying these UAVs may not be the most effective nor safest method. The use of Automated Take-off and Landing (ATOL) technologies could have a beneficial impact, reducing incident rates of crashes during these critical flight phases. This would also help alleviate much of the stress currently encountered with R/C pilots, especially when they are forced to fly small UAVs at close to their operational limits and in challenging weather conditions. An effective ATOL capability could allow UAV operations in poor (i.e. non-VMC) weather conditions, equivalent to the use of the Instrumented Landing System (ILS) by manned aircraft flying under Instrument Fight Rules (IFR).

Even if a full ATOL method is not yet available, it is proposed that the use of alternative control methods such as FPV flying techniques may be a safer approach, particularly during the landing stage. Eliminating the need to have a manual pilot standing on the side of a runway, especially during the landing of the faster small UAVs like the Aerosonde, should be considered. An alternative method whereby the pilot sits

inside the GCS and pilots the UAV using true remote control and FPV mode may be more effective especially in less than ideal weather conditions. However, before deciding on the precise nature of such a FPV/GCS pilot console, research is needed to determine the most effective format. This is the primary motivation for much of the research discussed in Chapter 3.

2.3　Physical Risks from UAVs

It is ironic that the UAV, originally used to eliminate the risk to human crews for dangerous military operations, should now be considered as increasing the risk to humans when used in a civilian role.   However, it is true that the UAV does pose some real threats when operated over inhabited areas and within civilian airspace. The two primary risks are:

1. The hazard to people or property on the ground (i.e. from the UAV crashing); and,
2. The Mid-Air Collision (MAC) hazard to other aircraft;

We introduce the concept of Estimated Level of Safety (ELS) at this point, which is the statistical probability that the risk might occur. To permit comparison with manned aviation statistics these values are usually quoted as a rate in terms of a number of fatalities per flight hour. There are also some statistics such as Near Mid-Air Collision (NMAC) statistics which relate to incidents/hours. In the quantitative analysis that is

resented in this chapter, these incident rates will be carefully differentiated from accident statistics[7].

2.3.1 Ground Impact Risk

The primary risk to people or property on the ground is due to the UAV crashing or otherwise colliding with terrestrial objects (e.g. buildings, towers, bridges, etc.). There is also a small threat from falling debris due to in-flight mechanical failures. The later risk is usually included in the overall crash risk. On most small UAVs, the shedding of parts is likely going to be a precursor to an immediate crash in any case. Ways to estimate these risks have been done by others (King, Bertapelle, & Moses, 2005). One of the most thorough treatments is summarized in an MIT report from 2005 (Weibel & Hansman, 2005). A concise formulation for the ground risk was developed, as shown below:

$$ELS_{ground} = \frac{1}{MTBF} \times A_{\exp} \times \rho \times P_{pen} \times (1 - P_{mit}) \qquad \textbf{(2-1)}$$

Where:

ELS_{ground} = number of fatal occurrences per flight hour. The target goal is to match manned aviation practice. The most stringent of these is that of commercial airline safety, which is typically quoted as 1×10^{-7} fatalities per hour of operation (NATO Naval Armaments Group, 2007).

---

[7] There has been a very recent trend to report both MAC and NMAC rates as incidents/hr within the UAV sense and avoid community, with the nominal NMAC target rate estimated as 1/10 of the equivalent MAC rate (Cook, Brooks, Cole, Hackenberg, & Raska, 2014). It should be recognized that even a single MAC with a large airliner could potentially involve multiple fatalities. This may be the reason why a more stringent targeted ELS of 2×10^{-9} has been proposed (FAA Sense and Avoid Workshop, 2013). However, for the initial ELS estimates in this thesis, and to permit a comparison with Canadian MAC and NMAC statistics, the original definitions as given above will be used.

MTBF = Mean Time Between Failures (hours), a measure of the reliability of the UAV system, with failure meaning either mechanical or procedural breakdowns (i.e. including mission planning, software programming, etc.) which cause the UAV to crash.

A_{exp} = the "area of exposure" created by the crashing UAV. This may be estimated as an area related to the wingspan, multiplied by the damage path created as the aircraft crashes.

ρ = the population density over which the UAV is flying.

P_{pen} = the probability that debris from the UAV crash "penetrates" whatever shelter (cars, buildings, houses, etc.) may be protecting people in the area. For example, in a heavily built-up area like a city, a large portion of the people will be protected in this manner. The mass and construction of the UAV must also be considered when estimating this factor.

P_{mit} = the proportion of accidents for which mitigation prevents the occurrence of a ground fatality. To be conservative we would assume this to be 0 (i.e. no mitigation). But the UAV might use some form of contingency system (e.g. emergency parachute, manual emergency landing) that could reduce or eliminate the harmful effects of a crash.

The risk model represented by equation (2-1) may be used to calculate the ELS_{ground} for a UAV of a certainly size operating over an area of a particular population density, while using conservative estimates for the remaining terms. Alternatively, we might calculate what the minimum reliability (MTBF) of the UAV would have to be to meet a particular ELS target value. The MIT analysis did this for five different UAV sizes using population density information for the U.S. to calculate the reliability required to reach a target ELS of 1×10^{-7} fatalities per hour of operation. Assuming reasonable estimates for A_{exp} based on the UAV size and weight, it was found that for much of the continental US (98% of the area) a MTBF of about 1000 hrs is adequate for mini to small UAVs. It is interesting that only 100 hrs MTBF was adequate for the lowest-density areas

such as Alaska, which is very similar to the scenario in Labrador. When over-flight of urban areas such as Boston or New York were considered, MTBFs of over 10^4 hrs and as high as 10^6 were estimated as being required to maintain the above target ELS.

2.3.2 Mid-Air Collision Risk

It has been noted by several UAV researchers that collision avoidance safety in the U.S. national airspace (and by extension Canadian Airspace, as TC regulations mirror most of the FAA regulations) is provided by a multi-layered set of regulations, aviation practices and pilot training which form several "layers of defense" against a mid-air collision (McCalmont, et al., 2007; Contarino, 2009). This is illustrated in schematic form in Figure 2-1.
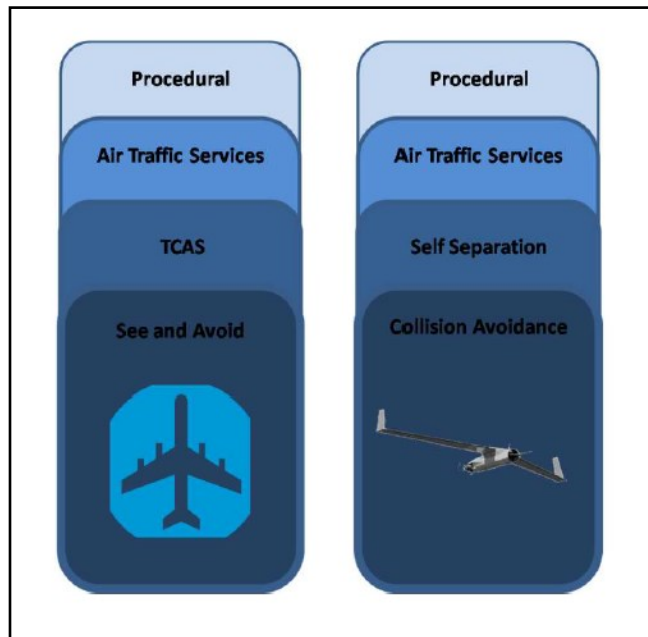
Figure 2-1: Multi-Layered Mid-Air Collision Defenses for Manned (left) and Unmanned Aircraft (right) (Contarino, 2009)

In decreasing range from a particular aircraft these are:

1. **Procedural Rules** (e.g. the use of assigned East-West cruising altitudes) which if followed strictly should provide an inherent level of safety by ensuring at least 500 ft separation vertically for opposing traffic;

2. **Air Traffic Services (ATC)**, which with uniform application, radar coverage and transponder use, should guarantee some minimum traffic separation, especially in controlled airspace;

3. **TCAS**, which offers an emergency back-up in the event that for whatever reason, traffic separation minima have been compromised; and,

4. **Pilot "See and Avoid":**, which provides an independent ability for target detection and (emergency) maneuvering, in the event that the above three levels of safety have somehow failed, and an aircraft threatens to come closer than 500 ft.

And for the special case of when an UAV is involved we can also add:

5. **UAV Detect-Sense-and-Avoid**, which if designed and implemented properly might give the UAV an inherent capability to maintain good traffic separation (i.e. "self-separation" as well providing a back-up sense and avoid capability, even if there is a failure of all manned collision avoidance defenses above.

This multi-layer defense strategy is of course related to the DSA situation for the UAV that was presented in Chapter 1 (i.e. see Table 1-1). Once the first three layers have

failed, the remaining risk to the manned aircraft from UAVs is two-fold. First, there is the collision threat caused by the UAV to the manned aircraft (i.e. can the pilot see and avoid the UAV?). And then there is the opposite risk (i.e. can the UAV see and avoid the manned aircraft?). For a mid-air collision to take place there needs to be a breakdown of all of these factors. Taken together these may be used to estimate the Probability of a Mid-Air Collision (P_{MAC}) as follows (NATO Naval Armaments Group, 2007):

$$P_{MAC} = P_{enc} \times P_{SepLoss} \times P_{UAVfail} \times P_{ACfail} \qquad (2\text{-}2)$$

Where:

P_{enc} = the probability that two aircraft will encounter each other on a potential collision course (i.e. at the same altitude and heading to the same interception point). This is related to the air traffic density, and is very much affected by geography, especially how close an aircraft is to a controlled airspace zone, where air traffic density may increase dramatically (i.e. at an airport or close to an aerial route).

$P_{SepLoss}$ = the probability that a separation loss can occur. In controlled airspace, assuming good ATC coverage and the use of transponders and TCAS, this should be low. However, in un-controlled remote areas (G class) and in the absence of any transponder use this would increase.

$P_{UAVfail}$ = the probability that the UAV system fails to detect the other aircraft and/or fails to maneuver or respond to the threat of collision (i.e. failure in Quadrant 3 of Table 1-1).

P_{ACfail} = the probability that the manned aircraft fails to detect and avoid the UAV (i.e. failure in Quadrant 2 of Table 1-1).

In the context of UAV collision avoidance, there is not much that can be done to influence the first two terms of the P_{MAC} product, apart from altering where and how the

UAV is flown. The UAV operator cannot control the actions of the other aircraft, nor dictate the equipment (radios, transponders) they might be using. The presence of non-cooperative aircraft such as GA aircraft in remote G class airspace, potentially operating at low altitudes and without transponders, does create a collision risk. The only saving factor may be that the density of such air traffic is usually very low, especially in remote areas such as is common in the Newfoundland wilderness or offshore. An estimate will be made shortly of precisely what this risk is.

However, the UAV operator may be able to influence the last two terms in the P_{MAC} equation. The probability that the UAV fails to detect and avoid the manned aircraft ($P_{UAVfail}$) would be reduced if a DSA system is installed. The last term of the equation (P_{ACfail}) might also be improved through simple enhancements to the UAV which improve the chances that it is detectable by manned aircraft at sufficient range to permit an avoidance maneuver if necessary.

2.4 Calculating the Estimated Level of Safety (ELS)

An attempt will be made here to quantify the physical risks (i.e. ELS $_{ground}$ and P_{MAC}) to allow us to assess the current level of safety. This will establish the "base value" for the current situation with small UAVs.

2.4.1 Ground Impact Estimated Level of Safety (ELSground)

The risk that a UAV poses to the ground will depend strongly on its reliability (i.e. the MTBF) and the population density over which the UAV will fly. The size of the UAV ground impact area of effect must also be considered. The Aerosonde UAV will be used

as the example in these estimates. The damage area exposed by it crashing may be approximated as a strip 3m wide multiplied by the length of the terminal path that the UAV cuts through the ground terrain. This author has personally witnessed two crashes of the Aerosonde, in particular one incident where the UAV crashed deep into nearby woods. The damage footprint was examined the following day and was a swath of small trees cut down in a zone about 33m (100ft) long before the aircraft finally came to rest. The area affected by a second crash on a runway was similar (i.e. about a 33m (100ft) long debris field). Therefore, we will estimate A_{exp} as 3 x 33 or 99 m^2. A range of population densities will next be considered. Based on the most recent census data (2011) these densities may be calculated for several hypothetical regions where the Aerosonde UAV might fly, as shown in Table 2-1.

Table 2-1: Typical Population Densities (2011 Census Data)

Region Description	Population (2011 Census)	Area (km^2)	Density (/km^2)
Labrador	26,728	269,135	0.1
Nfld+Labrador	514,536	370,510	1.4
Newfoundland	487,808	101,376	4.8
Minus Metro StJ	290,842	100,572	2.9
St.John's (city)	106,172	446	238.1
St.John's(metro)	196,966	804	245.0
Toronto (metro)	5,583,064	7,125	783.6
Toronto (city)	2,615,060	630	4150.9

These densities cover a wide range of situations, from the extremely low density in the Labrador wilderness to the very high density in downtown Toronto (StatsCan, 2014). It is interesting that unlike Toronto, the population density in the Metro St. John's

area is actually higher than that of the city center. No doubt this is due to significant areas of sub-urban "sprawl" now included in the St. John's Metropolitan zone (City of St. John's, 2013).

The penetration factor (P_{pen}) will vary for each type of terrain. In wilderness areas, apart from the trees, there will be very little "cover" to protect a person who happens to be in the wrong place at the wrong time. Therefore for such areas a value of 0.75 will be assumed (i.e. 25% damage absorbed by the trees). At the other extreme, buildings and cars will protect a large percentage of people in concentrated urban areas. The construction and velocity of the Aerosonde UAV is such it would not penetrate such cover, but anyone outside would still be exposed. Therefore a conservative factor of 0.25 will be used. In the sub-urban zones an average value of 0.5 will be assumed. Finally, for the Aerosonde UAV no mitigation methods are used that would prevent or reduce the damage from a crash. Therefore $P_{mit} = 0$ will be used in these initial estimates.

By assuming a range of Mean-to-Between-Failures (MTBF) we can estimate ELS_{ground} across a range of population densities. Given the order of magnitude nature of these factors, the easiest way to view the results is in the form of a log-log chart as shown in Figure 2-2. Assuming a target ELS as stated before (i.e. 1e-7 as indicated in the figure), we can determine the minimum reliability (MTBF) required by the UAV to fly over areas of varying population densities.
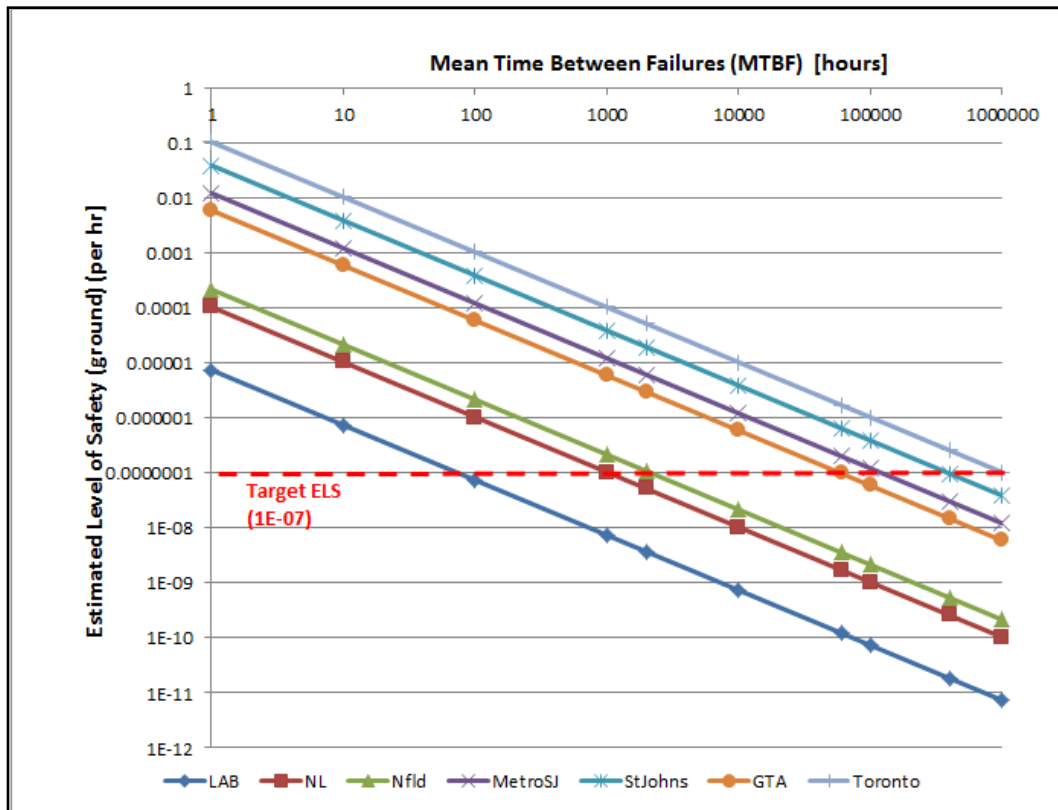
Figure 2-2: Estimated Ground Impact Risk for Small UAV

We find that in remote areas like Labrador, an MTBF of only 100 hours is sufficient. Meanwhile, an MTBF of at least 2000 hours is needed to maintain the same safety level over the wilderness areas on the island portion of Newfoundland (i.e. 'Nfld' in the chart legend). If UAV operation is contemplated over residential or urban areas the MTBF requirement increases to levels similar to manned aviation components, i.e. 100,000 hours (sub-urban) to 1,000,000 hours (urban).

It is informative if we compare these estimates with available manned aviation statistics. Both FAA and TC collect such statistics and regularly publish them for public

use. For the immediate subject, we wish to know how many casualties to "uninvolved" persons (i.e. not passengers or aviation workers at the airport) have occurred on the ground. An excellent summary of U.S. NTSB ground casualty data was done in the MIT safety analysis (Weibel & Hansman, 2005, pp. fig. 16-17). These are repeated here as Figure 2-3 and Figure 2-4 which present the total number of such fatalities for commercial air transport and general aviation aircraft from 1983-1999.
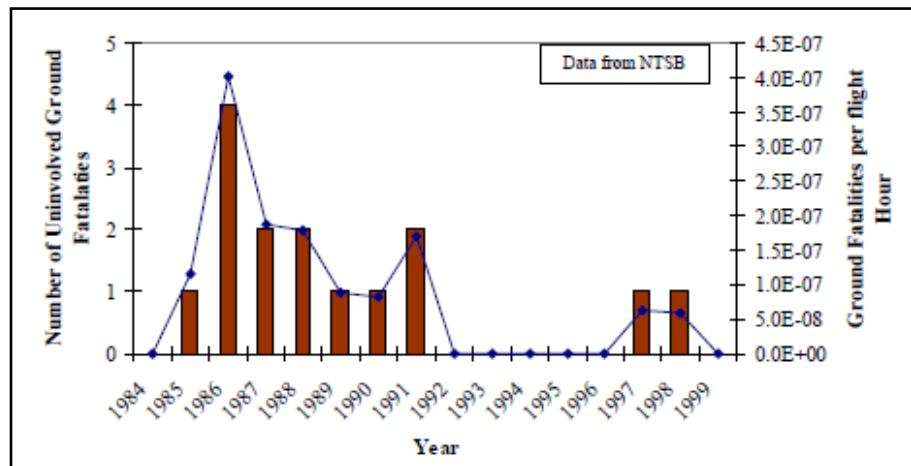
Figure 2-3: Ground Fatalities in the U.S. due to Commercial Air Transport Accidents (courtesy of MIT authors)
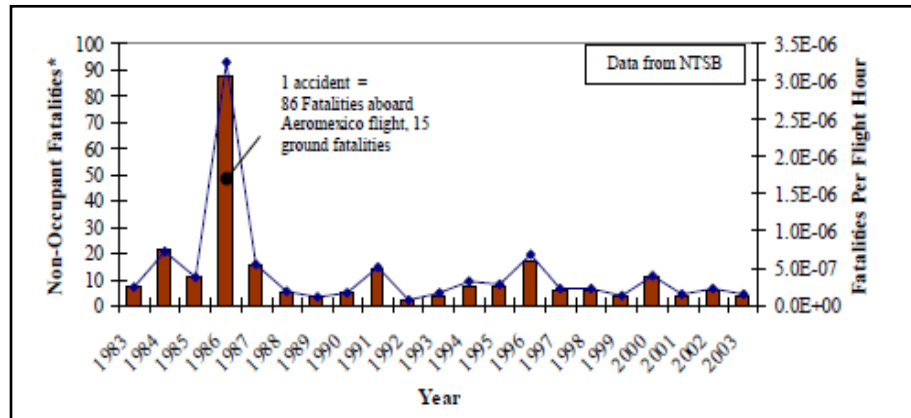
Figure 2-4: Ground Fatalities in the U.S. due to General Aviation Accidents (courtesy of MIT authors)

For the case of commercial airliner accidents there have been 1-4 fatalities per year, with many years having none. Note that the infamous 1986 Aero-Mexico mid-air accident, which resulted in 15 ground fatalities, has been classified here as a GA accident. The average Commercial Transport ground fatality rate is on the order of 1e-7 (i.e. 1 fatality per 10^7 hours). For General Aviation the average ground fatalities was higher at about 15 per year for an accident rate of 5e-7 (i.e. 5 fatalities per 10^7 hours). Equivalent data for Canada indicates very rare cases of ground fatalities. For example, using the 2012 data, there was only one fatality versus 4,278,000 hours of flight time, giving an accident rate of 2.3e-7 (i.e. 2.3 deaths per 10^7 hours). In the majority of recent years there have been none (TSB, 2012).

Therefore we can conclude that commercial air traffic poses a very low risk to people on the ground. General aviation accident rates are about five times worse. Therefore, the small UAV with an MTBF of 100 hrs and flying in the most remote wilderness conditions (e.g. Labrador) is actually about twice safer than the manned accident risk in Canada, or five times safer than the situation in the U.S regarding GA aircraft. However, the reliability of small UAVs is not sufficient at present to claim the same safety level if we choose to fly in more dense areas (e.g. including island portion of Newfoundland). This is despite claims of MTBF as high as 2000 hrs for some UAVs (King, Bertapelle, & Moses, 2005). Our experience flying the Aerosonde suggests a value of at most 150 hrs is more realistic for current small UAVs.

2.4.2 Mid-air Collision Risk

The estimated safety for small UAVs with respect to the mid-air collision risk will be calculated using equation 2-2. We will calculate the situation with small UAVs as they are currently being flown, assuming reasonable values for each of the terms in this equation. To provide realistic estimates the current situation in Newfoundland will be analyzed. This is the region where we have the most experience operating small UAVs like the Aerosonde or VectorP.

Since no-one has demonstrated the use of a certified DSA capability, we must be conservative about the probability that the UAV could detect and respond to a collision threat. $P_{UAVfail}$ will probably be 1.0 (i.e. 100% chance that UAV will fail to see and avoid the other aircraft) in the current situation. For the manned aircraft, there will be a low probability (<15%)[8] that a pilot would be able to see the Aerosonde UAV at the minimum visibility range required for current VFR rules in low altitude G class airspace (i.e. 1 mi), and even this chance may be ideal. We will give the manned aircraft the benefit of the doubt and use $P_{ACfail} = 0.85$ meaning that 85% of the time the manned aircraft will fail to see the UAV in time to respond effectively to the collision threat.

The remaining two terms, P_{enc} x $P_{sepLoss}$, will require some investigation to estimate. These may be interpreted as the "background" threat posed in the airspace environment where the UAV will fly. The first term (P_{enc}) is related to the traffic density

---

[8] In Chapter 4 we will calculate the minimum theoretical sighting distances and probabilities. However this figure agrees with a similar human factors analysis of minimum sighting distances and probabilities conducted as part of the 1986 Aero-Mexico mid-air investigation (NTSB/AAR-87/07, 1987).

in the airspace, i.e. what is the probability that two aircraft will actually arrive in the same airspace at the same time? The second term ($P_{sepLoss}$) represents the chance that once both aircraft happen to be in the same airspace, loss of separation has occurred due to a failure of many factors (i.e. ATC, TCAS or ADS-B type technologies). For these initial estimates we will assume a conservative value $P_{sepLoss} = 0.5$ if the UAV is flown in controlled airspace, but 1.0 in uncontrolled, remote areas. i.e. we will take a 0.5 credit while in controlled airspace (near the airfield) that either the GCS or ATC may be able to assist in preventing a separation loss incident involving a manned aircraft in about half of such situations. In uncontrolled airspace we will assume no such capability.

The traffic density will be estimated using real-world statistics and data for the number of aircraft that may be operating in different airspace areas. The most recent data describing aircraft registered in Canada unfortunately gives only the total for the entire Atlantic Region as 1544 (TC Aircraft Reg., 2014). However, the majority of these appear to be private types, whose number should roughly scale with population. Using recent census data for the Atlantic Provinces and applying the same population ratios, the number of aircraft in each of the Atlantic Provinces may be estimated as shown in Table 2-2 and Table 2-3.

Table 2-2: Population Ratios for Atlantic Region (StatsCan, 2014)

Province	Population	As Percent
NS	921727	40%
NB	751171	32%
NL	514536	22%
PEI	140204	6%
Total	2327638	100%

Table 2-3: Registered Aircraft in Atlantic Canada (TC Aircraft Reg., 2014)

Aircraft Type	Atlantic	NS	NB	NL	PEI
Private	1122	444	362	248	68
Commercial	404	160	130	89	24
Gov/State	18	7	6	4	1
Totals	1544	611	498	341	93
Aircraft Size	Atlantic	NS	NB	NL	PEI
Under 12500	1332	527	430	294	80
Over 12500	212	84	68	47	13
Totals	1544	611	498	341	93

For Newfoundland we therefore estimate a total of 341 aircraft. The majority of these (248) are small private aircraft (e.g. GA type). The aircraft size data is important since 12,500 kg is the dividing line between whether it is mandatory for an aircraft to use TCAS in Canada. For the 341 aircraft estimated to be in Newfoundland, only 47 will definitely have TCAS and this represents the co-operative traffic present. The majority (294) will likely not have TCAS and this represents the non-cooperative traffic that may be encountered.

To estimate the traffic density, we next consider the class of airspace being flown in. Since LALE UAV operations will be limited to low altitudes, we can ignore the high-altitude class A and B airspace. Given the nature of their proposed mission, the majority of the small LALE UAV flying will take place in Class G airspace. However, assuming we may have to fly near or in/out of airports we should consider the situation of

controlled airspace. It is worth noting that statistically, the majority of mid-air collisions have occurred near airports (i.e. in controlled airspace) involving aircraft in the traffic circuit (TSB, 2012). Class C would represent a situation where we must fly near a major airport such as St. John's or Gander. Class D will apply if we must operate near a smaller airport like Deer Lake. We may therefore calculate the total volumes represented by these three airspace categories, and based on the traffic density in each, the probability that the UAV would encounter another aircraft.

(a) **Traffic Density in Uncontrolled (G Class) Airspace**

For the Class G case, the total Volume (V) of the airspace will be considered as the wilderness area of Newfoundland (i.e. the Newfoundland island area less Metro areas as shown in Table 2-1) multiplied by an average altitude (h) of 2200ft (670m) AGL, which is likely the highest altitude a LALE UAV would use in Class G airspace. To estimate the number of aircraft that would be flying at any given moment (i.e. the rate/hour) we must assume an average utilization rate for these aircraft. Since the majority will be private GA (i.e. amateur/hobbyist aircraft) we shall assume a low usage rate, likely a few hours every week, or about 8 hr/month. Therefore at any given hour there would be 341x8 / (24x30) or about 4 low-altitude aircraft airborne somewhere over the island. The traffic density is therefore very low. To calculate the P_{enc}, we next consider the exposure caused by the UAV flying for one hour. The UAV will sweep out a volume as it flies, the diameter of which may be chosen to represent either a collision (MAC) or a near-miss (NMAC) threat zone. This situation is illustrated in Figure 2-5.
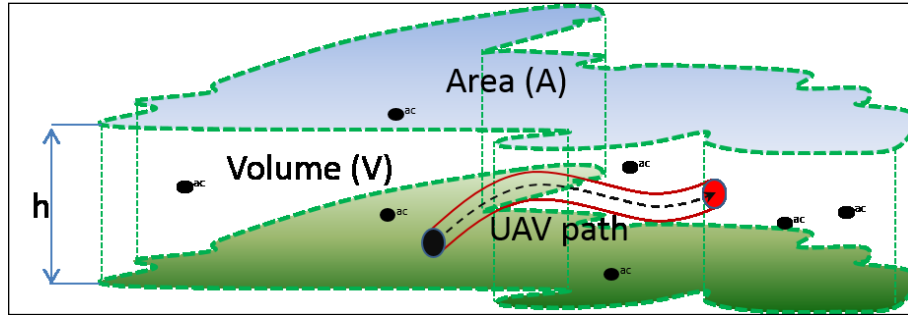
Figure 2-5: UAV Traveling in Uncontrolled G Class Airspace over Newfoundland

For collisions, we will assume a threat area 30ft/10m wide (i.e. wingspan of a typical GA aircraft). For the case of near-miss incidents a threat zone with 500ft/150m radius is more appropriate. The P_{enc} in G class airspace may then be calculated as:

$$P_{enc} = \frac{n}{V_{class}} \times Vtrans \qquad (2\text{-}3)$$

Where:

n   = number of aircraft in the air per hour

V_{class} = volume of the airspace zone

V_{trans} = the volume "swept" by the UAV as is travels through the airspace each hour.

The estimate for the P_{enc} will be calculated for both the MAC and NMAC case, to permit comparisons with equivalent manned aviation statistics.

(b)   Traffic Density in Controlled (Class C/D) Airspace

We next estimate P_{enc} in the controlled airspace zones. The majority of the NL-registered aircraft used to calculate the G class traffic density represent only the aircraft which fly locally. This does not include the regular inter-provincial or international air

traffic which represents the majority of traffic in the control zones of major airports such as St. John's. To calculate these traffic densities, we must consider the traffic in/out of the airport control zone. Fortunately these statistics are regularly collected and available for public use. The most useful data available gives the total number of aircraft movements in and out of the major airports for each month. Recent data is presented in Table 2-4 for a sample of several east coast Canadian airports (TC TP-141, 2013).

Table 2-4: Airport Traffic during December 2013

Types	DeerLake	Gander	St.John's	Halifax	Montreal
Itinerant	1,216	1,307	3109	6,109	17,363
Local	28	822	90	250	68
Total	1244	2129	3199	6359	17431
Moves/hr	1.7	2.9	4.3	8.5	23.4

With the exception of Gander, the "Itinerant" traffic represents the majority of the traffic. This is the regular commercial traffic in and out of the airport. The "Local" traffic represents aircraft that use the airfield as their base of operation. These would include local pleasure flights (i.e. GA), search and rescue, flight training, and surveillance missions such as the PAL offshore surveys. Gander has a flight training school and thus an abnormally high number of local traffic versus commercial traffic. These numbers are for the entire month. We can estimate the "hourly" rate by dividing by the total hours in December (i.e. 24 x 31days), and arrive at the rates shown in the last row. Note that the

estimate for St. John's agrees with our own experience on Bell Island which is located near one of the major runway approach/departure paths.

We next consider the sizes of the control zones. For St. John's (Class C) this is a cylindrical volume (V) with a radius (R) of 7 n.mi (13km) and height (h) of 3000ft/1000m AGL. For Deer Lake (Class D) the zone has a radius of 5 n.mi (9.2km). The geometry of these zones are illustrated in Figure 2-6.
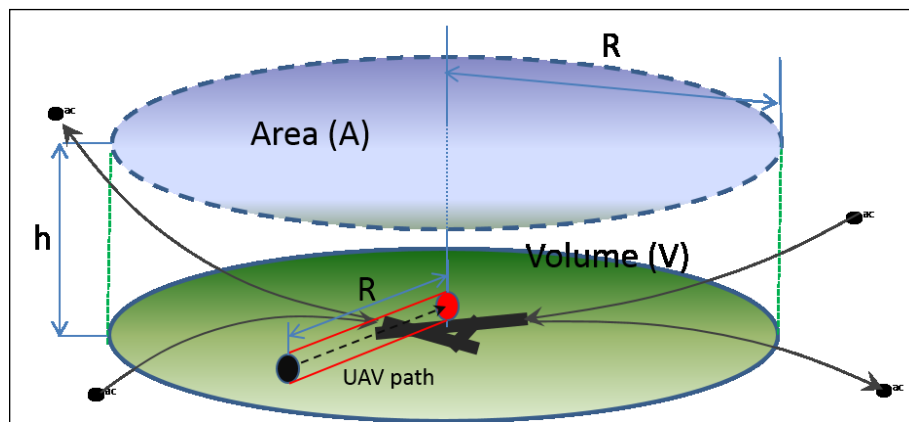
Figure 2-6: UAV Transit into Control Zone near Airport

Using the traffic movement information from Table 2-4, we can estimate the number of aircraft that would be airborne at any moment by noting that each movement will only be for a short time (i.e. for a 7 n.mi radius zone, and assuming 200 kts average speed, aircraft is only present for 0.035 hrs).   We should therefore calculate the P_{enc} using a modified form of equation (2-3) as follows:

$$Penc = \frac{n \times t_{zone}}{V_{class}} \times Vtrans \qquad (2\text{-}4)$$

Here t_{zone} represents the time it takes for the aircraft to either arrive or depart the zone. The UAV will be considered to sweep a V_{trans} that is simply the radial distance from the edge of the zone to the airport, as shown in Figure 2-6.

(c)   Overall Estimates of Mid-Air Collision and Near-Miss Risks

The mid-air collision (MAC) and near-miss (NMAC) probabilities may now be calculated taking into account the estimated P_{enc} values for Class G, C and D airspace and including the other factors used in equation 2-2. These are summarized in Table 2-5. For comparison, mid-air collision (MAC) and near-collision/separation incident (NMAC) rates from recent Canadian aviation statistics are shown (TSB, 2012). Note that in the case of MAC, these statistics are fatalities/hour, while the NMAC data are incidents/hour. The calculated UAV probability values in both cases are always incidents/hour, as the number of occupants in the manned aircraft have not been considered.

Table 2-5: Estimated Mid-Air Collision Risks in Canadian Airspace

Airspace Type	P_{enc} (MAC)	P_{enc} (NMAC)	$P_{sepLoss}$	P_{ACfail}	$P_{UAVfail}$	P_{MAC}	P_{NMAC}	MAC Rate (2012)	NMAC Rate (2012)
C Class	2.65E-07	7.37E-05	0.50	0.85	1.00	1.13E-07	3.13E-05	1.17E-06	2.36E-05
D Class	1.03E-07	2.86E-05	0.50	0.85	1.00	4.38E-08	1.22E-05		
G Class	3.76E-07	1.04E-04	1.00	0.85	1.00	3.20E-07	8.88E-05		

A comparison of the estimated mid-air collision risks against manned aviation safety statistics permits the ELS of the small UAV to be assessed. For the case of near-

miss (NMAC) risk (i.e. loss of separation) the UAV poses a higher risk than manned aviation in Class C and G airspace. The risk in Class D is estimated to be about half that of than manned aviation in Canada. The risk in Class C is slight higher (1.3 times). The risk is about 3.8 times higher for Class G. The lack of any sort of mitigation factors to prevent traffic conflicts has a detrimental effect on the NMAC safety level, especially in uncontrolled airspace.

A similar comparison of the P_{MAC} rates against statistical data shows that in all three airspace situations analyzed, the UAV rate is actually better than the most recent Canadian manned aviation statistics. However, except for the situation in Class D, the calculated ELS and statistical results are worse than the target ELS goal of 1e-7. Indeed, the most recent published Canadian P_{MAC} rate is almost twelve times worse than this target, due to one particularly costly incident in Saskatchewan in 2012 (TSB Report A12C0053, 2012).

2.5   Summary: The Current Level of Safety (ELS)

The current estimated levels of safety for the small UAV may now be summarized as follows[9]:

2.5.1   Ground Risk

1. Assuming current small UAVs like the Aerosonde can claim an MTBF of 100-150 hours, it may be considered as safer (or better) than GA aircraft operating in remote wilderness conditions (e.g. Labrador). The calculated ELS is actually

---

[9] The material in this Chapter plus a discussion of the effects of various mitigation strategies is the subject of a recent Journal of Unmanned Vehicle System article prepared by the author and his supervisors (Stevenson, O'Young, & Rolland, 2015).

two times safer than the equivalent GA accident risk, assuming the worst case Canadian data from 2012.

2. The same UAV would have to demonstrate at least 2000 hours MTBF to maintain equivalent safety levels as manned aircraft while flying over more densely populated rural areas (e.g. island portion of NL). It is doubtful that any current small UAVs can claim this level of reliability.

3. The small UAV cannot operate over sub-urban or urban areas and claim to be as safe as even the most basic GA manned aircraft with the current level of reliability.

2.5.2 Mid-Air Collision Risk

1. In uncontrolled Class G airspace, the small UAV appears to have a NMAC rate that is about 3.8 times worse than equivalent Canadian statistics. The MAC rate is better than the most recent (2012) Canadian statistics, but this rate is 3.2 time worse than the target ELS of 1×10^{-7}.

2. In controlled Class C airspace, the small UAV appears to have a slightly higher NMAC risk (1.3 times) versus manned aircraft. The mid-air (MAC) risk is lower than the most recent Canadian MAC data, and comparable to the target ELS.

3. The small UAV does not appear to present an increased collision risk in Class D airspace, assuming the low traffic concentration used (~2 aircraft/hour) is true.

2.5.3 Where the Small UAV Needs to Improve

It must be the goal of any improvements to the safety of small UAVs to not simply match manned aviation accident rates, but to exceed them. In order to do this, a number of deficiencies identified with the small UAV must be corrected. The most serious ones which have the strongest impact are summarized below:

1. **Poor Situational Awareness** - the small UAV has poor situational awareness, especially when they are operated at BLOS ranges. The lack of a viable DSA capability remains the main hurdle preventing integration of the small UAV into non-segregated airspace. Some means must be found to improve the awareness of the UAV and also the awareness of the AVO at the GCS.

2. **Poor Visibility** – the small UAV is essentially invisible to other air space users. Some means of enhancing its visibility must be found. Note that "visibility" here includes detectability under both visual (VFR) and instrumentation (IFR) flight conditions.

3. **Poor Reliability** - the low quality common in many small UAVs must be addressed, as these have a direct effect on the need for repairs, excessive maintenance, and generally results in poor reliability. Only once this is improved will the small UAV have the demonstrated reliability that would allow greater freedom to operate over higher density populated areas. Note that an improvement in reliability would also have the most impact on many of the Perceived Risks associated with small UAVs in the current political climate.

4. **Manual Operations** – the previous deficiencies affect the real physical risks calculated. However, Manual Operations (Control) must be considered as another source of lowered reliability of the small UAV, and a great concern to operators and regulators, especially in terms of financial and crew risk. The excessive use of manual R/C piloting methods increases the risk of a landing or take-off mishap, especially for the higher-performance small UAVs. A paradigm shift is required to operate these airframes using higher levels of automation and improved control methods, especially if the small UAV is to be used in expanded roles and in all weather conditions.

2.5.4 Mitigation Strategies

It is clear that developing a viable DSA system remains a major goal for civilian UAV operations. There are hopeful signs that a limited capability may be possible in the

near future based on ADS-B transponders. However, even before this DSA capability is realized, there may be methods we could use now to improve the safety of the small UAV. Research into these mitigation strategies will be discussed in the following chapters of this thesis.

1. **Improving Control** - It is proposed that novel methods can be used to improve the reliability and controllability of the small UAV, especially during take-off and landings. A novel Beyond Line of Sight (BLOS) control method using a synthetic environment approach may also be possible. Chapter 3 will focus on these subjects.

2. **Improving Visibility** – a number of techniques used in manned aviation may be applicable to the small UAV. Chapter 4 will focus on how these may be applicable (or not). The potential methods include using transponders to improve IFR visibility and anti-collision lights for VFR visibility. Giving the UAV some form of air-to-air radio (communication) capability will also be explored.

3. **Improved Avoidance Methods** – an improved avoidance method will be proposed as the "reaction" portion of a hypothetical DSA capability. A simulation method and initial work into a promising collision avoidance method based on an Anti-Proportional Navigation guidance law will be detailed in Chapter 5.

Chapter 3   UAV Control and Situational Awareness

Since 2005 this author has been involved in researching technologies and operational methods with the aim to improve the reliability and safety of small UAVs when under manual control. This chapter will provide a summary of the results from these efforts. Improvements may be possible in terms of improved control accuracy and enhanced situational awareness, resulting in improved safety. The primary objective is to mitigate the Ground Impact risk. Improved situational awareness may also reduce some of the Mid-Air collision risk from UAV operations.

3.1   Introduction to UAV Control Methods

If we survey the current situation with UAVs ranging from the small UAV up to the larger military types, we find that similar control methods are common throughout. The most common methods, grouped into Autonomous or Manual Control modes are:

1. Autonomous Control:

    a. GPS-based Autopilot (AP) control using waypoints to define a flight plan;
    b. Inertial, airspeed and pressure sensors used for attitude, airspeed and altitude control (i.e. inner-loop airframe control); and,
    c. Automatic Take-off and Landing (ATOL) capabilities offered by some autopilots, using D-GPS and high-resolution altimeter sensors and/or external ATOL system installed at airfield.

2. Manual Control:
    a. Radio Control (R/C) Aircraft methods by an External Pilot (EP) using un-aided third person visual view of the remote UAV, very common with small UAVs;

b. A Flight Console, similar to a dual-pilot cockpit, using a forward fixed camera view to allow a Manual Pilot (MP) to fly the UAV as in a simulator. This mode is especially popular with military UAVs like the Predator; and,

c. Virtual Reality (VR) methods employing various forms of FPV flying. This is becoming increasingly popular in the R/C hobby as an alternative to the traditional remote third-person view.

While it is true that some autopilots provide a capability to conduct Automatic Takeoff and Landings (ATOL) it is the experience of our research team as well as the majority of small UAV operators in North America, that manual control methods are more common with small UAVs. This is in spite of the fact that a careful review of available UAV accident reports reveals that the majority of UAV accidents occur during take-off and landing, especially by UAVs which rely on a manual pilot to accomplish these tasks (Williams, 2004). In the EP-dependant systems takeoff and especially landing errors account for a majority (68% to 78%) of the accidents. For the other UAVs the causes for accidents appeared to be more or less evenly split between equipment failures and air crew procedural errors. There were human-factor relate problems noted due to GCS display designs especially with the Predator GCS at that time (Williams, 2004). This later finding is very interesting when the crash of a Predator-B in Nogales, Arizona is considered; as that incident was primarily caused by a controls settings error that was traced to the GCS design (NTSB/CHI06MA121, 2006).

In our experience, the reason why ATOL is avoided in small UAVs is the difficulty in obtaining a reliable control system especially with small airframes, given the limited accuracy of most low-cost autopilots, which results in poor-quality (and at times

hazardous) automated landings. In most cases, it is deemed much easier and safer to have a highly-skilled EP conduct the takeoffs and landings. A similar reluctance to use ATOL is evident in larger military UAVs such as the Predator. The Predator requires that a highly-trained UAV pilot conduct the landings and takeoff at a forward GCS, before passing off autonomous control to a remote GCS which might be located on the other side of the world (Hodges, 2009). This concept of operations (CONOPS) is still the normal mode for operational Predators, despite recent demonstrations of enhanced ATOL capabilities (ASDNews, 2012).

Therefore, for a typical small UAV, the mission will most likely progress through these flight stages:

1. Takeoff (Manual Control)
2. Transition to Automatic Control
3. Autonomous Flight (AP in control)
4. Transition back to Manual Control
5. Landing

The External Pilot (EP) will conduct the take-off manually and climb to a pre-selected altitude and establish a stable loiter circuit over the launch site (Stage 1). Once airborne and at a stable altitude and flight condition, control will be switched to autonomous control (Stage 2). Once stable AP control is confirmed (though with the EP vigilant and prepared to regain manual control should there be a problem), the UAV will now fly its mission relying on an on-board autopilot (AP), with supervisory control by an AVO located at the Ground Control Station (Stage 3). At the conclusion of the mission,

the UAV will fly to its recovery airbase, and once in visual range and ready to land, control will be switched back to manual control (Stage 4). The EP will now resume control of the UAV and land it manually (Stage 5).

It should be noted that even if a fully-autonomous UAV control capability were provided (i.e. including ATOL) there will still be a requirement for a manual "safety pilot" according to current and proposed UAV operating guidelines. There is the requirement that a competent UAV pilot shall be available and ready to assume control of the aircraft during all stages of flight, especially in the event of a failure in the autopilot or if an unsafe situation develops. All SFOCs obtained to date by this research team have required the presence of such a "safety pilot" for each and every UAV that is airborne (TC SI-623-001, 2014). Similar rules and regulations are under development in both the U.S. (FAA, 2008) and Europe (European Commission, 2009).

It must also be recognized that providing a manual override capability at all stages of UAV operations is a challenge, especially when operations at Beyond Line of Sight (BLOS) ranges or in non-visual flying conditions are considered. For example, if basic R/C methods employing unassisted third-person flying techniques are used, effective manual control is limited to at most 1 km and only under benign daytime visual weather conditions. Manual override control at BLOS ranges or in non-visual conditions is currently not possible using standard manual UAV control methods now employed by most small UAVs. This lack of a viable BLOS manual control method is cited as one of the major limitations to the legal operational range of small UAVs in the current regulatory environment, the other being the lack of a reliable DSA system (Ellis,

Investigation of Emerging Technologies and Regulations for UAV 'Sense and Avoid' Capability, 2006).

It is clear that some form of enhancement is needed to provide an effective manual control of the small UAV at all expected operational ranges. The suitability of the basic manual R/C flying method (i.e. using a remote un-assisted third person view) has also been questioned in terms of the human factors problems (Williams, 2004). These will be elaborated on in the next section.

Research efforts have been expended to investigate these problems and to find possible solutions, including:

1. Experiments using Virtual Reality (VR) to pilot small UAVs using FPV during the critical landing stage of flight;
2. Extended range video links to allow manual override control beyond normal visual range; and,
3. The proposed use of a synthetic environment as a visual enhancement at BLOS ranges or otherwise when high speed good quality video is not available.

The remainder of this chapter will present the results of these efforts, beginning with an analysis of the control problem of manually flying the UAV.

3.2 Analysis of UAV Control Methods

In this section, a theoretical analysis will be made of the control situation involved with flying a small UAV under manual control. In the following section the terms External Pilot, Manual Pilot or R/C Pilot are used interchangeably to mean the same thing: a human pilot flying the UAV using remote manual control methods.

3.2.1 Summary of the Manual Control Situation

When we consider the problem of how a manual pilot flies a small UAV remotely, we might consider the situation as shown in Figure 3-1.
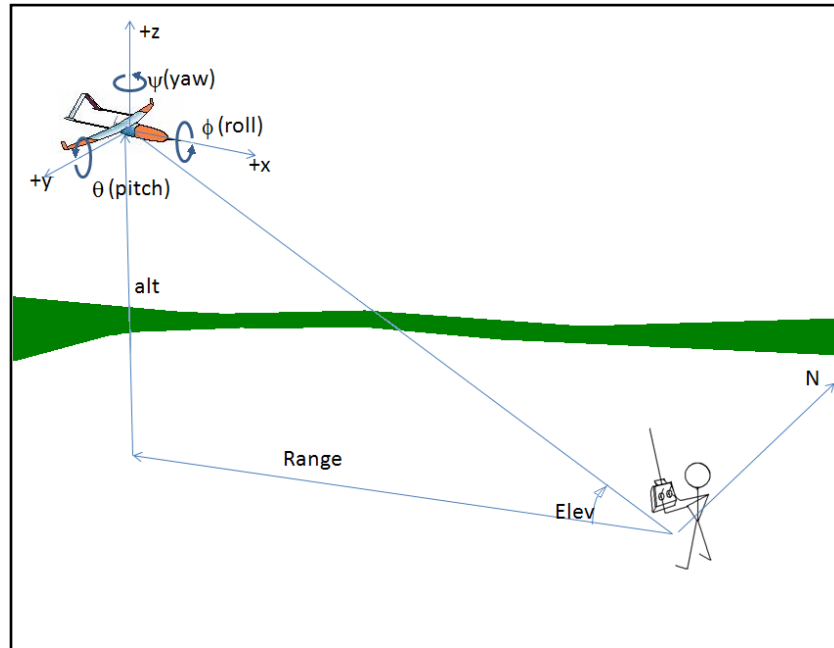
Figure 3-1: UAV Manual Pilot Control Situation

The manual pilot must control the three principle position angles of the aircraft (i.e. roll, pitch and yaw) using the flight controls at his disposal to manipulate the ailerons, elevator, and rudder respectively, plus throttle to maintain altitude and airspeed. At the same time he must also control the position of the aircraft in 3-D space, in terms of its horizontal position (X/Y), altitude (Z), heading and velocity. The R/C pilot must manage in excess of 8 variables (6-DOF + 2) in real time from a remote vantage point. These must be quickly assessed through spatial references, depth perception and other

visual cues. Mathematically we could formulate this control problem as follows. The primary state of the UAV in flight (i.e. Altitude, Heading and Speed) is a function of the 6-DOF attitude of the vehicle:

$$\begin{pmatrix} Altitude \\ Heading \\ Speed \end{pmatrix} = fn \begin{pmatrix} \phi \\ \theta \\ \psi \\ X \\ Y \\ Z \end{pmatrix} \qquad (3\text{-}1)$$

Where,

ϕ, θ, ψ = Euler angles (roll, pitch and yaw)

X, Y, Z = position of aircraft (CG) in fixed-earth coordinates

These 6-DOF positions are themselves just instantaneous positions. They are functions of the rates of each of these variables. These are what the pilot must manipulate using the four controls at his disposal (ailerons, elevator, pitch and throttle). The remote control of the aircraft therefore is an indirect relationship:

$$\begin{pmatrix} aileron \\ elevator \\ rudder \\ throttle \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \\ u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} \phi \\ \theta \\ \psi \\ X \\ Y \\ Z \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} Heading \\ Altitude \\ Speed \end{pmatrix} \qquad (3\text{-}2)$$

Where,

u, v, w = linear velocities along each of the X, Y, and Z axes

p, q, r = angular rates for each Euler angle (roll, pitch, yaw)

This control must be accomplished in real-time, quickly yet smoothly, to maintain good positive control of the UAV. If we add the extra problem of spatial disorientation caused by the aircraft being in a strange attitude (e.g. upside down, pointing straight up, etc.), or the control reversal phenomenon when the aircraft is flying towards you, the difficulty of the manual pilot problem becomes clear. More than a few R/C aircraft have been destroyed by this control reversal phenomenon, especially due to incorrect rudder or aileron control inputs. There is also the problem of what happens if the aircraft flies too far away, too high, or in difficult lighting conditions (e.g. into bright sun, silhouetted against clouds, etc.). This can make it difficult if not impossible to determine the UAV's orientation, which in turn leads to incorrect control inputs and the risk of going out of control.

3.2.2 First Person versus Third Person View

If the manual pilot switches from an external third person view to FPV several things happen. The control of the pitch, roll and yaw of the aircraft are now directly connected to the pilot's forward view. In a sense, the aircraft becomes an extension of his or her body. The need to do the rapid assessment of orientation using an external view is eliminated altogether. The pilot can now focus on the key parameters of flight which any full-sized pilot must master – maintaining heading, altitude and airspeed. The control of pitch, roll and yaw become more or less instinctual. The control problem is reduced by at least three variables, and perhaps as much as six. The pilot also does not need to figure

what each individual component of the 6-DOF position assuming the FPV provides an accurate indication of the poise of the aircraft (i.e. through a good artificial horizon and forward video display). What is more important is to maintain heading, altitude, and speed - and from these the XYZ position follows.

An analogy may be the arguably easier task of driving a car. With the removal of the need to manage the third axis (i.e. up/down), the task of driving becomes one of steering the vehicle in the right direction and managing the speed properly.   But, as anyone who has ever tried to drive one of those small R/C cars can attest, this task becomes much more difficult when we are forced to use a third person remote view. If real vehicles were as difficult to drive as the R/C car experience would suggest, cars should be leaving the sides of roads every 200-300 m along their intended journey! Clearly, being inside the vehicle with a good forward view appears to simplify the manual control problem and improves accuracy.

A summary of the human factors problems associated with using remote third-person R/C control of a small UAV is provided in Table 3-1.   As noted this is a combination of the conclusions determined in previous reports (Williams, 2004) and the analysis by this author (Stevenson, O'Young, & Rolland, 2015).

Table 3-1: Human Factor Problems with Manual R/C Control Methods

Human Factor Problem	Source
Control reversal/disorientation	Williams/Stevenson
Visual problems (bad lighting/aircraft orientation)	Stevenson
Limited range (< 500m)	Stevenson
Limited to VMC conditions	Williams/Stevenson
Airframe dynamics too fast	Stevenson
Training Problem (limited external pilot skillset availability)	Williams/Stevenson

The incorporation of the FPV view should improve the controllability of the airframe. However, it must be recognized this benefit only applies if the manual pilot is already familiar with manned flight, and knows the basics of good airmanship.   Of course the dynamics of the small UAV and any control delays must also be considered, as will be discussed in the next section.

3.2.3   The Problem of Control Delays

The problem of flying a small UAV using manual methods is closely linked to the dynamics of the airframe being controlled and any control delays that are imposed. If these delays or the aircraft dynamics become extreme, accurate manual control becomes difficult if not impossible. An analysis can be done to quantify the sources of delay that contribute to the control lapse rate situation during remote manual piloting.   Three different methods for manually piloting are shown schematically in Figure 3-2, with annotations showing the sources of the delays.
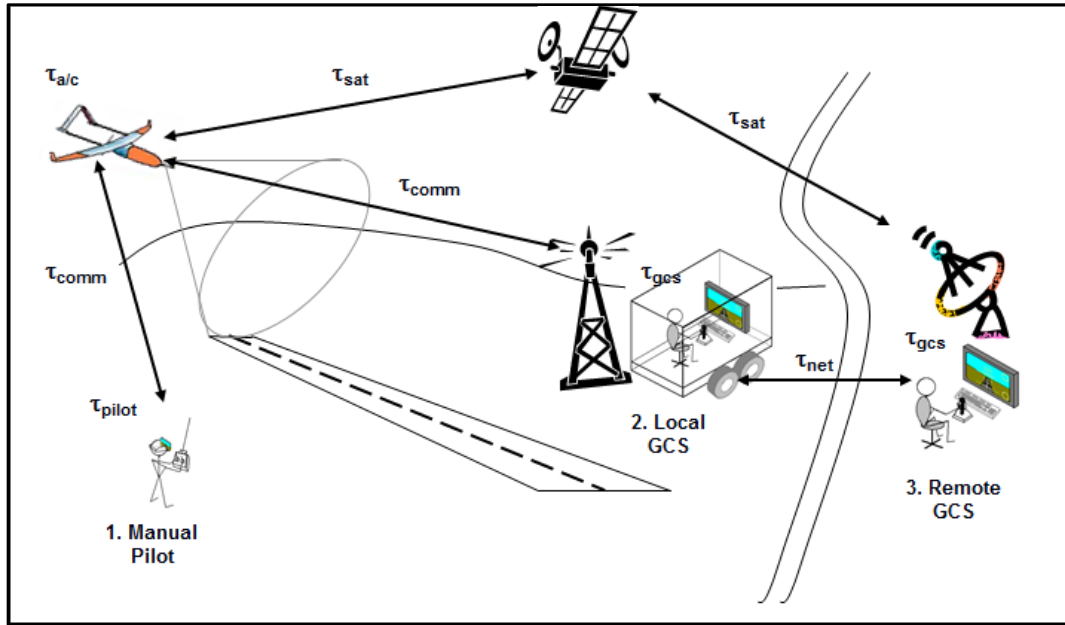
Figure 3-2: Sources of Control Delay during Manual Piloting

The total control lag will vary considerably depending on the form of remote manual control used. Taking a simple view, the total lag will be the sum of all of the sub-element delays. In the worst case scenario, it would be:

$$\tau_{delay} = \tau_{pilot} + \tau_{a/c} + \tau_{comm} + \tau_{gcs} \qquad (3\text{-}3)$$

Where each term is described below:

a) $\underline{\tau_{pilot}}$ **= Human Operator (pilot) Reaction Time**

A major contributor to the manual control lag is the reaction time of the pilot. Typical human reaction times to simple stimuli have been measured and range from 150 to 300 ms, with 250 ms being typical for alert operators. Age, environmental conditions

(e.g. light level), fatigue and general situational awareness are factors in determining the reaction time of a specific person.   Highly trained individuals such as athletes and pilots can condition themselves to improve this reaction time, although consistently the best reaction time is on average 180 ms (McCormick, 1970).   Note that these are reaction times to expected events (e.g. such as during normal closed-loop control of an aircraft). Reactions to unplanned or unexpected events can be much slower. The average reaction time in this situation is commonly quoted in the literature as 750 ms (e.g. this is typically used for estimating automobile stopping distances). However, this figure has been called into question by some, as it is also based on clinical testing. In independent tests of drivers in realistic situations, reaction times of up to 2 seconds were measured for entirely unexpected and unplanned events (Lerner, 1993). Given the relatively predicable nature of R/C control, a value of 250 ms will be assumed for normal closed-loop control of a small UAV.

b) τa/c = Response Lag of the Airframe (i.e. especially roll or pitch rates)

This term is dominated by the aerodynamics of the airframe and also the avionics response rates (i.e. servos and flight surfaces). For the size of vehicle being considered here, the dynamic response of the avionics/servos are very fast for hand-flown UAVs, typically about 20 Hz, equivalent to a lag time of about 5 ms (Barnard, 2007).

c) τcomm = Communication Lag (Video and Telemetry)

This is the combination of processing delays in the communication hardware plus the physics involved in radio frequency (RF) signal transmission (i.e. speed of light

propagation) in both the send and receive directions. The magnitude of this total delay varies considerably depending on the form of control being used. For the case of a Manual Pilot (1) standing by the runway, or a Virtual Pilot sitting at a local GCS (2), the major source would be delays in the video/data feeds, perhaps due to hardware limitations in the RF link, or any delays in sending the manual control inputs back to the UAV. The total RF signal transmission path itself is insignificant (i.e. less than 2 km round trip), resulting in total transmission delays of under 7 microseconds. Limitations in RF transmission rates (especially for small video cameras) were an issue in the past, however even small low-end video cameras are now common and can transmit TV-quality (at least 25 Hz frame rate, typically as high as 60 Hz) video over a range of up to 6 km. Transfer of airframe data (i.e. data to drive a virtual cockpit display or Heads-Up Display/HUD) and the manual control signals back to the airframe must be kept at a rate to match the video update rate to ensure synchronization between the video and the aircraft attitude.

The situation changes when attempting to tele-operate the UAV from a remote GCS as in (3). In this case, the communication lags could become very significant. This is particularly true if the communication channel makes use of communication satellites. Turn-around delays of at least 500 ms and as much as 7 seconds are noted by some UAV researchers, especially if geostationary types are used (Clough, 2005). If a terrestrial feed is used (e.g. through an internet connection – the horizontal path from the local GCS/receiving station to a remote GCS as shown in Figure 3-2 the channel delays would be dictated by the overall capacity of the network connection. The speed of the "weakest link" would determine the maximum throughput. This is likely to be the first link, from

the local GCS which will typically be in a remote location and most likely away from high capacity hard-wired communication cables. In this case a wireless internet link to a nearby community or repeater tower may impose serious restrictions on the maximum data rate, possibly as low as 56Kbit/sec. This may be adequate for attitude/control data but would severely limit the quality and frame rate of the video signal provided to the manual pilot.

d) τgcs = Delays in GCS Console (Software and Hardware)

Delays in the computer console itself (i.e. GCS computer software or hardware) may contribute to the control latency. This is not as great a concern as it was over a decade ago. For example, most current laptop PCs are capable of running graphics-intensive software (i.e. games or flight simulators) while maintaining an animation frame rate well above the "flicker limit" of 25 Hz. Frame-rates of 50-60 Hz are common. To be prudent we will assume 25 Hz as worst case here.

Assuming reasonable values for each delay term, the overall control delay for each of the three Virtual Pilot (VP) scenarios may be calculated:

(1) Manual Pilot: $\tau_{delay} = \tau_{delay} = \tau_{pilot} + \tau_{a/c} = 250 + 5 = 255$ ms

(2) Local GCS: $\tau_{delay} = \tau_{pilot} + \tau_{a/c} + \tau_{gcs} = 255 + 1/25 = 359$ ms

(3) Remote GCS: $\tau_{delay} = \tau_{pilot} + \tau_{a/c} + \tau_{comm} + \tau_{gcs} = 359 + 500 = 859$ ms (best case)

to 7.6 sec (worst case)

3.2.3.1 **Comparison with Typical UAV Airframe Dynamics**

Stable control of the UAV can only be assured if the overall speed of the controller (i.e. Manual Pilot including delays) is faster than the airframe. As a rule of thumb, it is desirable for the controller to be several times faster than the plant (i.e. airframe) under control, ideally ten times faster although five times is acceptable (Mohammed S. Santina, 1996). Therefore for the local Manual Pilot (Case 1) we can estimate that the aircraft being controlled should have a minimum time constant of around 1.3 sec. The corresponding "controllable" airframe is slightly slower (1.8 sec) for the Local GCS (Case 2), but quite a bit slower (4.3 sec) for the Remote GCS (Case 3) even for the best-case communication scenario.

This analysis confirms what this author has observed during operations of the Aerosonde UAV and the GiantStik while under Manual Pilot control. Landing speeds (and dynamics) are relatively benign for the GiantStik. It lands with full flaps at about 8 m/s (~29 km/hr) with the engine still operating. The overall airframe response time in roll in good weather is something like 1.5-2.0 seconds. Therefore while fast, the GiantStik should still be within the control ability of most intermediate R/C pilots. In contrast, the Aerosonde lands typically at 18 m/s (~65 km/hr) without engine power. Its longitudinal (roll) axis time constant is estimated to be 0.75-1.0 seconds. This is below the range where a typical human operator can maintain control, and is why highly-skilled R/C pilots are needed for the Aerosonde EP role.

The combination of a fast airframe and excessive control delays may make it fundamentally impossible to safely control the small UAV under manual control. During Aerosonde UAV trials, our EP noted a small lag (about 0.25 sec) when moving the Aerosonde flight surfaces using a standard R/C console, but with the control signals processed and transmitted by the Piccolo GCS. He noted that this lag was not present when flying his own normal high-performance R/C aircraft using direct R/C control (Trickett, 2007). The sensitivity of the Aerosonde UAV, especially in roll, was always a cause for concern. The additional lag identified by the EP may have been a major contributor to the crash of the second Aerosonde Trainer (AC171) on 8 June 2008 at Bell Island. If we compare the roll rate of the Aerosonde with the control lag of an EP whose commands must pass through a GCS (i.e. Case 2) that imposes an additional 0.25 sec delay, we see that the safe control of the Aerosonde under manual control is questionable, especially at critical times such as when flying very close to the ground.

3.3 Virtual Reality Pilot Experiments

3.3.1 Various Manual Piloting Methods

There are several possible forms of manual control that might be used to control a small UAV. A Virtual Pilot view (i.e. FPV[10] equivalent to a manned aircraft cockpit view) is hypothesized to be one way where the controllability of small UAVs may be improved during the most crucial portions of a mission - the takeoff and landing of the

---

[10] At the time of the planning and implementation first set of experiments documented here (i.e. 2006-2010) the accepted terminology for this technology was called Virtual Reality (VR). However, in the years since that time, and with the increased availability of such equipment in the R/C hobby, First Person View (FPV) has become the more popular description of these methods. This is in contrast to the remote third person view normally used for R/C flying. In the following text both terms will be used interchangeably.

aircraft. This is a common technique used with larger military UAVs such as the Predator, which has become possible in smaller vehicles due to availability of miniaturized Virtual Reality (VR) equipment at reasonable cost.

A series of experiments have been conducted to answer the question: "What form of virtual (manual) piloting is the best method, or the most appropriate for small UAVs?" Three different forms of UAV manual control were assessed:

(a) **Radio Control (RC) Mode** - the current "default" method, whereby the UAV autopilot is overridden and the aircraft is flown using standard Radio Control (R/C) techniques, using an un-aided external third-person view of the aircraft.

(b) **Flight Simulator (FS) Mode** - A fixed forward camera view along the aircraft centerline, providing a FPV to the pilot on a fixed screen in front of him. The pilot therefore flies the UAV in a manner similar to a flight simulator. Ideally, the pilot should be sitting down and use a joystick, similar to modern fly-by-wire cockpits.

(c) **Immersive (VR) Mode** – A fully immersive view using VR Goggles, providing a FPV binocular video image on a set of tiny LCD screens directly in front of both eyes of the pilot. These goggles also featured 2-axis tilt sensors on the "forehead" of the goggle housing, providing a head-tracking ability. This allowed the VR pilots to turn his head and pan/tilt the camera on the aircraft, giving the illusion of being on the aircraft.

This may be the first time that this sort of objective experimental method has been used to assess VR methods on small UAVs, apart from attempts to establish VR training systems for UAVs (Smith & Smith, 2000). This experiment focused on the critical Landing phase to allow an assessment of maneuver accuracy while using these three different control methods.

3.3.2   The VR Landing Experiment Design

The VR experiment used a Design of Experiments (DOE) factorial approach. This allows the use of a sparse matrix of test factor combinations while preserving the statistical validity of the results. This is useful when conducting real-world tests where running a full statistical set of all possible combinations would be too expensive, dangerous or impractical. The objective in the DOE method is to determine those factors which are the most significant to the response variables being studied.   By using a randomized order of test runs, the effect of random factors beyond the researchers' control is minimized and appears as "noise" in the statistical analysis.
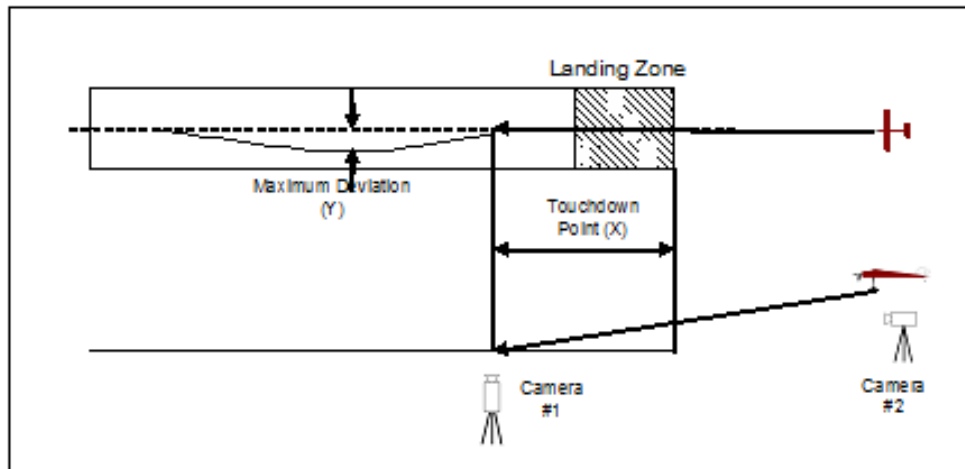
Figure 3-3: Diagram of Landing Task Used for VR Experiment

Figure 3-3 illustrates the task used as the basis for this experiment – landing a small aircraft (UAV) under manual control on a small runway of fixed heading. The goal during these experiments was to assess the relative "quality" of each landing.   The

primary objective is to land the UAV on the centerline of the runway, preferably just past the near end of the runway. This allows room for a successful post-landing roll out and deceleration without running off the far end of the runway. At the same time, the track should be straight down the center of the runway, to avoid violent lateral accelerations and to avoid sideways runway excursions.

3.3.2.1 **Factors Considered (Independent Variables):**

The following factors were studied in this experiment:

A = Form of Manual Piloting:

Radio Controlled (RC) mode (i.e. 3rd person view of aircraft)

Flight Simulator (FS) mode (FPV using fixed forward display on a screen)

Immersive (VR) Mode (FPV using VR Goggles with head tracking)

B = Skill Level of Pilot

Veteran (10+ years' experience)

Rookie (<2 years' experience)

C = Wind Conditions

Calm (<10 km/hr)

Windy (>30 km/hr)

3.3.2.2 **Response Variables**

To assess the quality of each landing, the following Response Variables were used:

X = Distance of landing touchdown point from landing end of runway

Y = Maximum deviation of landing track versus runway centerline. During the experiment it was noted this was the touch-down point, as both pilots corrected quickly to the centerline once landed.

3.3.3 Argentia VR Landing Experiment (2010)

The originally proposed test location was the Bell Island Airstrip (CCV4). This is a single 2700 x 66 foot runway with heading 26-08, located on Bell Island in the middle of Conception Bay, Newfoundland. However, due to demonstrated concerns on previous UAV missions with the security of the site, the test location was moved to the abandoned U.S. Air Base at Argentia, Newfoundland. Although much of the original runway and tarmac pavement has deteriorated over the decades, there is still a substantial area that was found to be adequate for small UAV testing. One such area was a taxiway for strategic bombers (SAC). In an attempt to establish an equivalent situation as on Bell Island, a section of pavement was marked with high-visibility (green) spray paint, establishing a mock-up runway 8m wide by 80m long. This runway and the locations of the mobile GCS, test pilots and video recording cameras are annotated in Figure 3-4. It was noted by both pilots these were far from aviation-grade runway markings both in colour and size, and difficult to see from the air. However, the centerline of the marked runway did correspond to the centerline of the taxiway. Even after 30 years the centerline marking was still visible. The large green target in the center of the hand-drawn runway could also be seen during final approach. Thus, while not ideal, the test setup was deemed adequate for the basic assessment of landing accuracy.
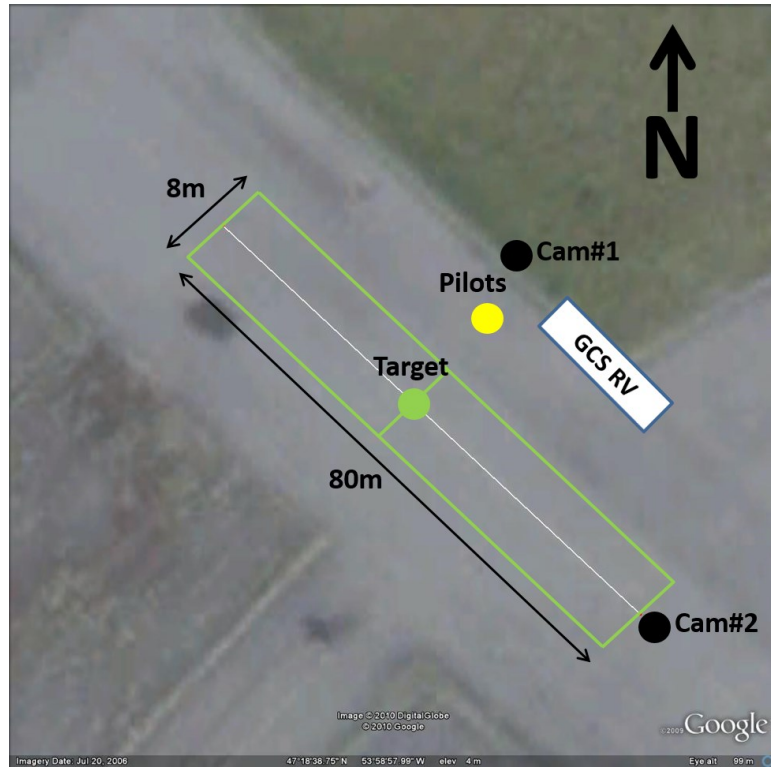
Figure 3-4: Test Site at Argentia (2010)

3.3.3.1 **Flight Test Vehicle**

A large R/C aircraft was used as the test vehicle. In 2010, the Great Planes "Giant BigStik" (hereafter called the GiantStik) was the largest member of this family of R/C aircraft, with a wingspan of 80", and nominal gross weight of 13-15 lbs. A detailed description is given in Appendix D. This test vehicle is shown with the author in Figure 3-5. The GiantStik uses a symmetric airfoil which has favourable handling properties, especially in the high winds common to Newfoundland. Originally, a gasoline-powered version of the GiantStik was planned, but was converted to electric power. This reduced

the vibration issues previously encountered during initial tests of the VR equipment, and provided a stable video image for the pilots.

Figure 3-5: GiantStik Test Vehicle

3.3.3.2 **The Pilots of the 2010 Experiment**

For the 2010 VR Experiment, two pilots were recruited from the Project RAVEN team to act as the test pilots. The two pilots used were:

a) **Marc Schwarzbach (the "veteran")**, a German graduate student who spent 2010-2011 flying with Project RAVEN as the primary manual pilot. At the time Marc had approximate 10 years' experience flying R/C aircraft (mostly electric types) in Europe. He was also very familiar (and enthusiastic) about the use of VR flying methods, having tried it himself on several occasions in Germany.

b) **Jesse Ross-Jones (the "rookie"),** one of the local graduate students who joined Project RAVEN in 2009. A recent flyer, he had only achieved his "wings" earlier

in the Summer of 2010. However, he was very comfortable flying the electric GiantStik and thus was an ideal "rookie" flyer candidate.

3.3.3.3 **2010 VR Equipment**

Figure 3-6 provides a schematic of the VR equipment setup that was used during the 2010 VR Landing experiment. As shown, the equipment may be divided into a set of Airborne and Ground Components.
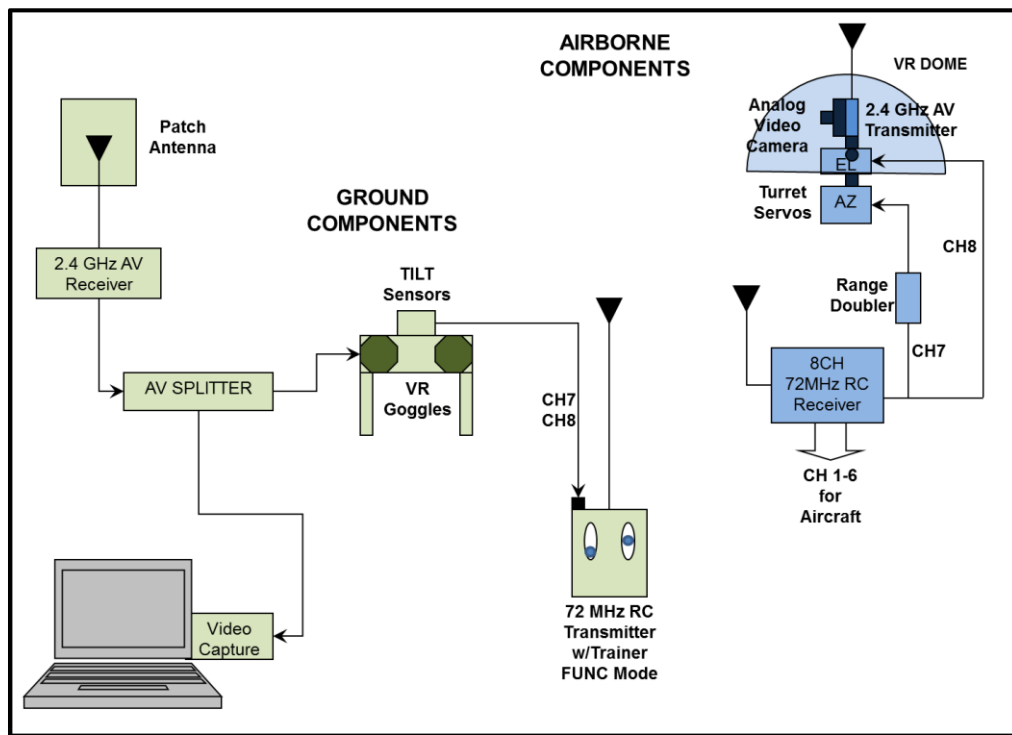
Figure 3-6: VR Equipment Schematic (2010)

I. Airborne Components:

a) **Camera and Turret in 4" Dome -** The onboard camera was mounted on a 2-axis turret inside a small 4" acrylic hemispheric dome assembly. This assembly was

mounted to an aluminum flashing belt which provided the anchoring method to the aircraft, using the existing main wing attachment bolts and dowels. Figure 3-7 shows a close-up of the VR Dome assembly installed on the test vehicle.

Figure 3-7: VR Dome Installation (2010)

The camera and turret were obtained as part of the X11 FPV VR Set from RC-Tech in Switzerland in 2007 (RC-Tech, 2010). The video image was provided by a small NTSC-format camera with a 2.4 GHz analog transmitter integrated to the back of the camera. The power source was a 7.4V 2-cell LiPo battery installed in the cylindrical base of the turret assembly. The camera and integrated transmitter provided a reasonably clear image to a maximum range of about 1 km, adequate for the landing experiment, provided that a tracking 4" x 4" patch antenna was used at the receiver. The use of an analog 2.4 GHz video link meant 2.4 GHz R/C control could not be used, due to severe interference at the receiver station. For this reason the GiantStik was reverted to 72 MHz FM R/C

control. The two-axis turret permitted head-tracking by the camera, using two auxiliary channels of the aircraft R/C receiver.

b) **Azimuth (AZ) Range Extender -** for the azimuth (yaw) direction, the range of the servo was increased to approximately +/- 90º by use of a Pulse Width Modulation range-doubler.   This small unit was installed similar to a servo extension cable on the AZ servo cable. The increased AZ range allowed the VR pilot to look over each wing tip, similar to full-size pilot practice.

II. Ground Components:

a) **2.4 GHz AV Receiver -** The receive station for the VR video was a small 2.4 GHz analog receiver, using a 4"x4" patch antenna. During the experiment, the aircraft was tracked manually by pointing the face of the patch antenna at the vehicle. This permitted clear video during most of the circuits used during the VR flights.

b) **Video Splitter -** A video-splitter was used so that the video feed could be sent to both the VR Goggles and a video capture card on a laptop. Airborne video could therefore always be seen and recorded, provided a good quality video link was maintained. Extension cables were used to allow the VR goggles to be worn by the pilot at a comfortable distance from the receive station.

c) **Video Capture Card and Laptop –** To permit the video to be displayed and recorded, a PCMCIA card-bus video capture card was used. The software provided with the capture card was used to display the VR camera image on screen, add annotations, and create digital video recordings for each experimental run. These video clips were recorded for all tests, whether using VR mode or not. The Laptop screen display was used as the fixed view for the FS mode. This fixed view corresponded to the mechanical and R/C center of the 2-axis turret, adjusted to give a view straight along the propeller centerline, and slightly downward

matching a typical manned aircraft cockpit view. Unfortunately, the ergonomics of this method were not ideal, as the original concept of a sit-down pilot with joystick control could not be implemented in time. Instead, the pilot looked at the fixed FS view while still using the R/C transmitter, requiring him to twist his body away from the flight line.

d) **VR Goggles -** For the fully-immersive VR mode, the test pilot wore a pair of VR1000 goggles, as demonstrated by the author in Figure 3-8.

Figure 3-8: VR1000 Goggles used in 2010

Once comfortable and adjusted to this view, the 2-axis head tracking could be activated using the FM transmitter "trainer switch". The VR setup was configured to use auxiliary channels 7 and 8 on a Futaba 9CAP 72 MHz FM transmitter in "FUNC" mode. In this mode channels 1-6 are still controlled by the transmitter, while channels 7 and 8 obtain control input through the VR goggle tilt sensors through the trainer port at the back of the transmitter. Assuming the tilt sensors are calibrated correctly, the sensors will track the pilot's head.

In practical use, the 2-axis tilt sensors were quite sensitive to the way they were calibrated. A critical step was to leave the goggles motionless on a firm surface during initial transmitter power-up. The tilt sensors obtain their power through the trainer port connection. The VR Goggles were left in this position for a period of at least 1 minute. This allowed the solid-state tilt sensors to properly warm up before attempting to use them to measure head tracking. Even with careful calibration, it was noted that the head tracking tended to drift slowly, especially in the elevation direction. A reset button was provided which re-centered the view to the mechanical center of the airborne turret. During the VR experiment this was shown to be a minor nuisance, since the pilot would simply turn his head more to compensate. It was only when the drift moved close to a mechanical stop that a reset was needed, approximately once every 60 sec.

III. Recording Instruments

In addition to the laptop computer which recorded the onboard video from the VR camera, two tripod-mounted video cameras were used to record the landings from a side-runway and end-runway view. The location of the end-view video camera was moved to the upwind (departure) end of the runway. While the original intent was to use this video to measure the touchdown points of each landing, it was quicker and more straightforward to simply note the touchdown point for each landing, and mark the location quickly as soon as the aircraft had cleared, using sidewalk chalk. Accurate measurements were done once several landing test points were finished using a surveyors tape. During the

experiment, the direction and magnitude of the wind speed was noted, making use of a mast-mounted anemometer on the mobile GCS.

3.3.3.4 **2010 Experimental Results**

The experiment was run over two days, August 25-26, 2010. Originally, it was hoped to run a blend of windy and calm conditions on each day, since this was a factor in the experiment and thus should have been randomized. However, as is usual for Newfoundland, the weather did not cooperate. Instead, the runs were divided into two Blocks, one for each day. The Windy cases were done on Day 1, and are summarized in Table 3-2.

Table 3-2: 2010 VR Experiment First Day of Tests (Windy Day)

Run	Factor A: Form of VR	Factor B: Pilot Skill	Factor C: Winds	Response X: Touchdown Location (m)	Response Y: Centerline Deviation (m)
1	None/RC	Veteran	Windy	-1.6	+0.75
2	VR Goggles	Rookie	Windy	+2.7	-1.9
3	FlightSim	Rookie	Windy	-2.2	-3.1
4	FlightSim	Veteran	Windy	-42.7	-0.9
5	VR Goggles	Veteran	Windy	-26.3	-0.9
6	None/RC	Rookie	Windy	-2.2	-1.0
7	VR Goggles	Rookie	Windy	+3.7	-1.7
8	None/RC	Veteran	Windy	+3.75	+0.3
9	FlightSim	Veteran	Windy	-24.3	-2.2
10	VR Goggles	Veteran	Windy	-55	-3.5
11	None/RC	Rookie	Windy	-20.4	-0.3
12	FlightSim	Rookie	Windy	+24.5	+3.5

All measurements were taken relative to the target circle at the center of the runway. Negative X values are landings short of the target point, positive X values are

after the target point. Negative Y values are to the left of the centerline, and positive Y values are to the right. The Winds varied from 15-18 kts (average 16.5 kts or 31 km/hr), from the South-East (SE), approximately 45º to the right of the runway heading. This tended to push the aircraft off course to the left, which is evident in the majority of the Y measurements.

The Calm Day runs were conducted on Day 2, as summarized in Table 3-3. The winds this time were 4-5 kts (8.5 km/hr average) for the majority of the tests. However, as is normal for coastal Newfoundland, the winds did pick up later in the day, peaking at 9 kts (17 km/hr) by the end of the tests. The winds were again from the SE, though this time about 30º off the runway centerline.

Table 3-3: 2010 VR Experiment Second Day of Tests (Calm Day)

Run	Factor A: Form of VR	Factor B: Pilot Skill	Factor C: Winds	Response X: Touchdown Location (m)	Response Y: Centerline Deviation (m)
13	FlightSim	Veteran	Calm	-28.6	+2.8
14	VR Goggles	Veteran	Calm	-24.7	+10.2
15	VR Goggles	Rookie	Calm	-51.1	+4.9
16	None/RC	Veteran	Calm	-5.2	0.0
17	FlightSim	Rookie	Calm	+19.8	-3.5
18	None/RC	Rookie	Calm	-12.8	-2.7
19	VR Goggles	Veteran	Calm	-37.7	-3.1
20	None/RC	Rookie	Calm	-10.3	-0.2
21	FlightSim	Rookie	Calm	0.0	-5.6
22	VR Goggles	Rookie	Calm	+0.6	0.0
23	FlightSim	Veteran	Calm	Aborted	Aborted
24	None/RC	Veteran	Calm	-3.3	-0.8

During the FlightSim mode runs on Day 2, the ergonomics of the position of the laptop and the need to use the RC controller at the tailgate of a parked vehicle resulted in

an uncomfortable situation for the pilots. There were incidences of irregular aircraft control due to possible antenna shielding and interference as the pilot twisted his body to view the LCD screen.   This was most likely due to the poor position of the FM transmitter close to the parked vehicle. The situation eventually led to the decision to abort Run 23 when the control situation was deemed unsafe.

3.3.3.5 Analysis of the 2010 Experimental Results

The results from the 2010 VR Landing experiment were analyzed using a statistical approach using the commercial software called Design Expert (Stat-Ease, 2014). The basic method used was an Analysis of Variance (ANOVA) for each of the response variables. A detailed description of this method and its use in the analysis of Design of Experiment (DOE) results is out of scope for this thesis. The reader is directed to many excellent textbooks (Montgomery, 2001) and online resources on this subject (Lane, 2014). Based on the results of this analysis, the significance (or insignificance) of each factor or combination of factors were assessed and documented in a paper presented at UVS Canada 2010 (Stevenson, 2010).

However, the results were inconclusive. Early in the analysis there was concern over a major "blocking effect" imposed on Factor C (the winds) given that the tests were conducted on two separate days. Also, the effect of the winds appeared to be opposite of what was expected. Indeed, the quality of many of the landings on the second day (Calm winds) were worse, especially in terms of centerline deviation.

In lieu of a detailed discussion of the statistical results from the ANOVA method, a basic summary of the results may be obtained by displaying the results in the form of a scatter plot. Figure 3-9 presents these results for the two days of tests. The runway outline is indicated by the green rectangle.
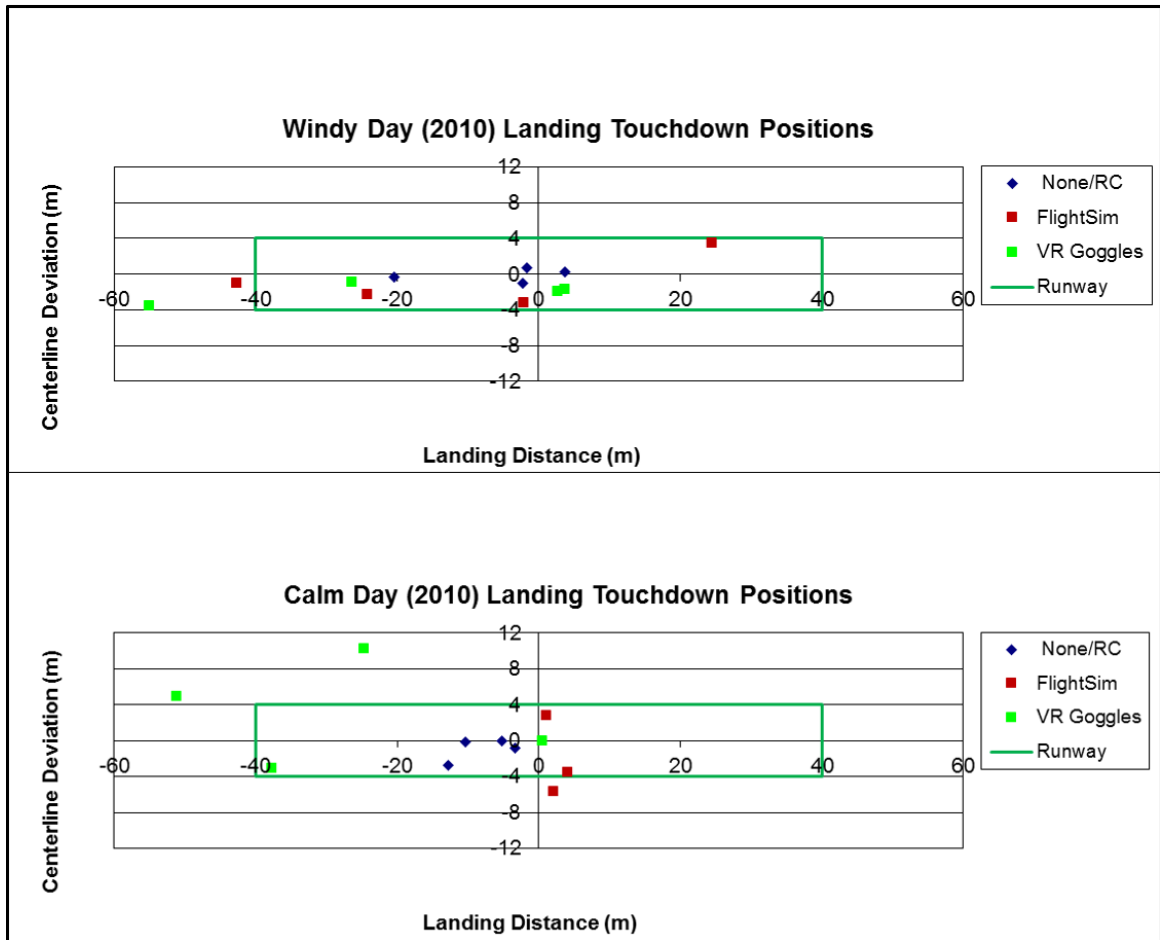
Figure 3-9: Landing Positions, 2010 VR Experiment

a) Response (X) Landing Distance

These results indicate that the addition of the two virtual piloting modes (FS mode and VR mode) degraded the accuracy of the landings, when compared with the default RC mode of flying. For both pilots, the FS mode tended to make for worse landing distances, with the Rookie landing long while the veteran landed significantly short of the target. This was true in both wind conditions. It is interesting that the rookie landing distances were actually better (though long) than the equivalent veteran results. The effect of increased wind appeared to be to increase the variability of the results.

In VR mode, the performance of the veteran pilot became worse. For the rookie pilot, there was an improvement. This was particularly true on the second (calm) day of testing. Anecdotal comments from the rookie pilot were favorable towards the VR mode, with the comment that he was getting more comfortable using the VR goggle mode by this time. However, both pilots continued to complain about the difficulty in seeing the green runway outline far enough away to begin a good approach.

b) Response (Y) Off-Centerline Distance

The results for the centerline deviation measurements (Y) show a similar trend as with the landing distance results – the FS mode resulted in worse overall results, whereas VR Goggle mode partially restored the performance, especially for the less experienced pilot. However, the centerline deviations on the windy day were surprisingly consistent, while the equivalent results on the calm day show a wider variability and overall worse results. For the case of the VR goggle mode, the calm day centerline distance for the two rookie landings varied widely, although in this case the "best" result of the entire

experiment was accomplished by the Rookie pilot (X=+0.6m, Y=0m). This was one of the last tests of the day, and it was at this point that the rookie pilot commented that he was getting more comfortable with this mode of flying.

c) Control Problems with FS Mode

The FS mode suffered from poor ergonomics during this experiment, and most likely was a main reason for the generally poor results when either pilot used this mode. The need to twist the body to see the laptop display in the back of vehicle (to provide a sunshield) was not ideal, especially while using an FM R/C transmitter with its long (1.5m) antenna. The odd position of this antenna, and its potential shielding so close to a large metallic object (the vehicle) is the suspected source of radio interference which resulting in one of the test cases being aborted on Day 2 due to safety concerns.

3.3.3.6 Summary of 2010 VR Landing Results

For the experienced R/C pilot it appeared that the default RC mode was the method which he was most comfortable using, and seemed the most appropriate (accurate) method for landing small UAVs under manual control. The addition of VR technologies did not assist the experienced R/C flier, and appeared to degrade his performance in terms of landing location accuracy.

For the less experienced flyer, the addition of VR technologies did provide some assistance, improving the accuracy of precision landings, especially in terms of centerline deviation (Y). However, the FS mode yielded worse performance. It is very likely that the poor ergonomics of the makeshift FS mode used during these experiments had a

negative effect on these results. A dedicated series of tests using a console approach (i.e. with the pilot sitting down inside the GCS) should be tested before this control mode is rejected entirely.

It was hypothesized that the landing task would be easier in calm winds, and that VR methods would improve accuracy especially in the presence of a strong cross wind (i.e. permitting a more accurate line-up with the centerline for example). Higher winds did result in greater variation from run to run but in general accuracy was as good, if not better, then on the calm day. However, the results may be masked by a strong blocking effect (i.e. perhaps someone was having a "better day" on Day 1?). Even tension within the team, evident at the end of the first day of testing, and schedule pressure on the second day could be a significant source of bias.

Finally, the choice of test site was sub-standard. Throughout the experiment there were frequent comments by both pilots about the difficulty seeing the makeshift green runway outline. The pilots reported they were using the original taxi-way centerline as their primary visual cue. This may have helped in line-up for the landing, thus impacting the centerline deviation (Y) response, but unfortunately provided no help in obtaining an accurate landing distance (X). In most cases the pilots reported they could only see the green runway markings during the final seconds of each landing. The choice of test site most likely hampered the assessment of the improvements to accuracy provided by the use of the VR methods.

3.3.4 Bell Island Landing Experiment (2013)

Due to the inconclusive results in 2010, it was decided that a repeat of the landing experiment should be done when time and schedule permitted. After a three year hiatus, the experiment was revived and repeated in November 2013. The test site was reverted back to the originally planned location at the Bell Island airfield, as shown in Figure 3-10. The locations of the pilots, side and end cameras and a trailer used as the GCS are noted. The target point for the landings was between the numbers "26", directly in front of the pilots, located 45 m from the end of the runway. The runway is approximately 20 m (66 ft) wide as shown.
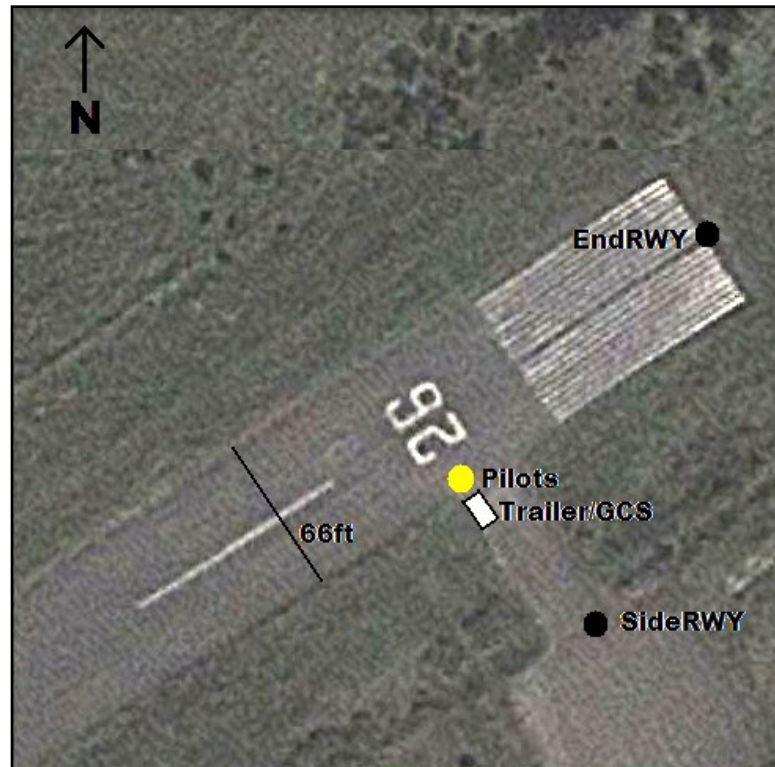
Figure 3-10: Test Site at Bell Island Airfield (2013)

3.3.4.1 **Flight Test Vehicles for 2013**

The same class of test vehicle was used for the 2013 repeat, although not the identical aircraft. The original aircraft used in 2010 was unfortunately lost in a flight mishap in 2011. Two new GiantStiks were constructed, GBS#10 and GBS#11 to support the 2013 experiment. As with the 2010 aircraft, electric propulsion was used. During initial flight tests to shake-down the FPV equipment, GBS#11 was lost at sea north of the Argentia while investigating interference problems with the video link. The significance of this unplanned event will be discussed in detailed in Section 3.3.4.6. A third GBS#12 was constructed as a replacement for GBS#11. The idea was that a second aircraft would always be available in case the primary vehicle (GBS#10) was lost during the experiment. In the end, this proved un-necessary and GBS#10, as shown in Figure 3-11, performed its function perfectly and survived.

Figure 3-11: GiantStik#10 Test Vehicle (2013)

3.3.4.2 **The Pilots of the 2013 Experiment**

For the 2013 VR Experiment, a new pair of pilots were recruited:

a) **Stephen Crewe (Veteran Pilot)**, the veteran pilot this time was the primary manual pilot for Project RAVEN since 2012. Stephen had about 10 years flying experience flying R/C aircraft at the time of the 2013 VR Experiment. He also had about one year experience using FPV equipment with his own personal R/C flying.

b) **Dilhan Balage (Rookie Pilot),** the rookie pilot this time was a staff engineer from Project RAVEN whose background is primarily electrical/computer engineering. He had been flying R/C aircraft only for the previous two flying seasons, and most of this experience was on the smaller Ultra40 and electric "foamy" type aircraft. He appeared to be nervous about flying the relatively large GiantStik, but quickly learned it shared much of the flight characteristics as its smaller cousin (i.e. the Ultra40). However, Dilhan had limited experience in aviation, apart from his work with Project RAVEN as an AVO.

3.3.4.3 **Updated 2013 VR Equipment**

The state of the art of VR equipment has advanced significantly since the original used in the 2010 experiment. The older equipment was replaced by updated First Person View (FPV) components, based around the EagleTree series of FPV products. Aimed at the high-end R/C hobby community, these FPV components are now borderline UAV avionics sets, including built-in GPS, On-Screen Display (OSD), and a rudimentary autopilot-capability (Eagle Tree Systems, 2013). For these experiments only the GPS and OSD features were used.

I. Updated Airborne Components

The camera used by the new FPV system is supplied in an integrated pan/tilt turret format. This was installed on the GiantStik using a custom built mount held to the top of the main wing using a rubber/plastic band (similar to the aluminum flashing band used in the 2010 experiment). Suspected RF interference caused by the original idea of using an aluminum band prompted the switch to the rubber/plastic material. The 2013 airborne equipment, including the new camera turret mount may be seen Figure 3-15.

Figure 3-12: VR Camera and Turret (2013)

The complete FPV system as installed on the aircraft consisted of the components shown in the annotated Figure 3-16. The new FPV system used a dedicated 5.8 GHz high-power video transmitter (C). Initially the normal 5.8 GHz antenna (B) was used, but this was switched to a special mushroom-shaped bi-polar style antenna (A) which had superior transmission range, especially when combined with a more powerful transmitter (i.e. at least 6 km when used with a 600 mW transmitter). For the electric-powered

GiantStik application a power monitoring board (D) is used to monitor the battery and propulsion system health. The main on-screen display (OSD) board (E) is the heart of the airborne FPV equipment, and serves as both the signal processing and signal relay board for the other components. The video from the Camera (F) is sent to the OSD, which adds the Heads-Up Display (HUD) elements, before sending this enhanced video image along to the transmitter. This includes the previously mentioned electrical system information and also the 2D tilt position status obtained from the tilt sensors (H) which is used to drive an artificial horizon display.
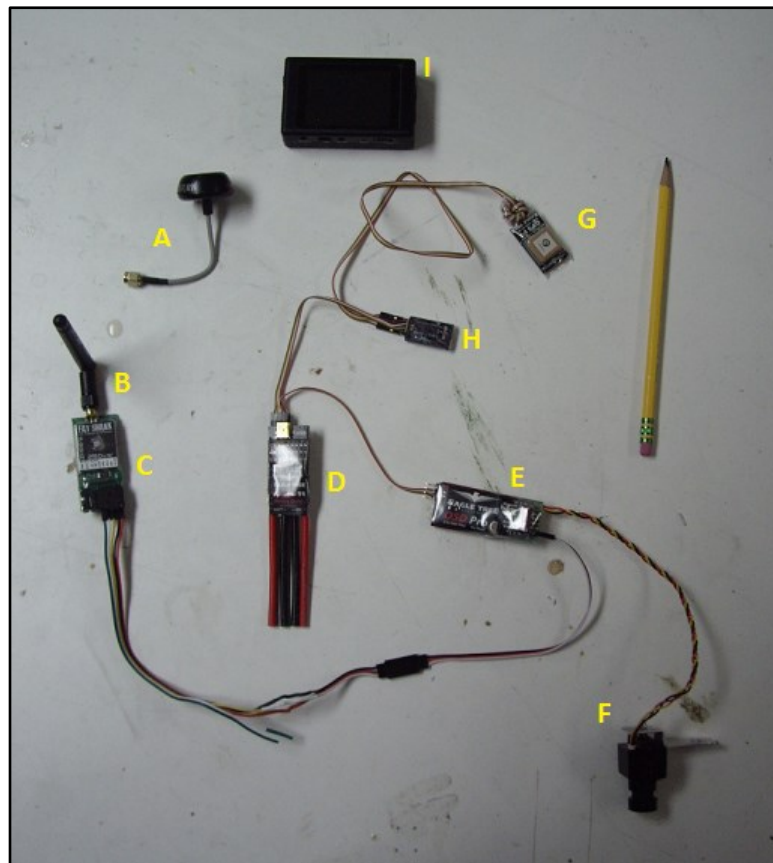
Figure 3-13: FPV/OSD Components used for VR Setup (2013)

The GPS module (G) provides the 3D position of the aircraft, which the OSD uses to calculate altitude, ground speed and the position of "home base" which is the saved location when the OSD was first turned on (i.e. the GCS location). The rectangular box (I) at top is a small solid-state recording device which is part of the Ground Components, and described in the next section.

II. Ground Components

(a) VR Goggles

The 2013 VR experiment used a new set of FPV goggles from "Fat Shark" (Fat Shark , 2013). The new style of goggles used can be seen being worn by one of the pilots in Figure 3-14.

Figure 3-14: Fatshark Goggles used for 2013 Experiment

These goggles have a built-in receiver. The new headset also includes pan/tilt sensors, similar to those in the VR1000, but with much better accuracy and reliability. The modern FPV equipment also used a solid-state data recorder (i.e. Component I in Figure 3-13) to record the FPV video, eliminating the need to use a video capture card

(b) <u>Heads-Up Display (HUD)</u>

The FPV equipment featured a HUD display, using the sensors on the aircraft to measure GPS location and pan/tilt of the aircraft. The OSD module used GPS to calculate the airspeed, altitude and heading of the aircraft. The direction to "home base" is also shown. When combined with the pan/tilt sensor, this allowed the display of a HUD. Figure 3-15 is an example of the display provided to the VR pilots.

Figure 3-15: First Person View (FPV) Display with HUD (2013)

The HUD provided the current aircraft position, ground speed (MPH) and altitude above ground (ft) in the form of "ladders" on the left and right sides respectively, as well as an artificial horizon. Although this artificial horizon was found to "lag" reality (as shown in the figure), the altitude and ground speed were accuracy enough to allow for good "flares" during the VR landings. The items in the lower left and right corners provided the current power draw and total power consumed by the electrical propulsion system. Since we used 10,000 mAH of total battery power this display acted like a "fuel gauge" letting us know when the aircraft power was dropping too low (i.e. when total power consumed exceeded 8000 mAH). Even in cold weather (1-4ºC), we had flight endurances of between 20 and 25 minutes on a fully charged set of batteries.

(c) Improved FS Mode Display

For the 2013 experiment a dedicated FPV display screen was used. This was mounted on a tripod in front of the pilot, as shown in Figure 3-16.

Figure 3-16: FPV Static Display LCD on Tripod/Stand (2013)

In addition to improving the ergonomics of having to turn to view an LCD inside the back of a vehicle, this arrangement eliminated the contradiction due to the pilot's aural (hearing) cues being opposite to his visual cues as the aircraft flew past when his back was turned to the runway. The FPV screen also included a safety feature not common to most LCDs. The FPV display is an analog device, and will continue to show the degraded video if the signal strength drops. Even a scratchy black-and-white display is better than nothing. In practical use, such video drop-outs were of limited duration (1-2 seconds) when flying in FPV mode, assuming the analog method is used and the aircraft was kept within 1 km range. The VR goggles video also behaves in this manner. The use of a dedicated FPV display therefore allowed a much better assessment of the effectiveness of the FS mode during the 2013 experiment.

3.3.4.4 **2013 Experimental Results**

Following a practice day on 27-November, and dodging cold and rainy weather all week, the experiment was finally ran on Friday, November 29, 2013. The winds were down the runway (i.e. almost no cross wind) at 5-7 knots (about 9-13 km/hr). Conditions were sunny with a few clouds but quite cold (~2ºC). The test cases ran in the morning were deemed to be "Calm Day" conditions.   The results showed a marked improvement in overall pilot performance versus the 2010 results.   The effect of running the experiment on a proper runway, with aviation-grade markings was clear. Both pilots

reported it was very easy to see the runway threshold, centerline and the numbers from a long distance, allowing for improved line-ups and precision landings.

Table 3-4: 2013 VR Results, 29-Nov-AM ("Calm" Winds 5-7 kts)

Run	Factor A: Form of VR	Factor B: Pilot Skill	Factor C: Winds	Response X: Touchdown Location (m)	Response Y: Centerline Deviation (m)
1	FlightSim	Veteran	Calm	-6.5	7.6
2	VR Goggles	Veteran	Calm	0.0	1.1
3	VR Goggles	Rookie	Calm	DNC	DNC
4	None/RC	Veteran	Calm	18.2	-2.4
5	FlightSim	Rookie	Calm	30.2	-10
6	None/RC	Rookie	Calm	3.6	-5.6
7	VR Goggles	Veteran	Calm	0.4	1.1
8	None/RC	Rookie	Calm	-2.4	-0.8
9	FlightSim	Rookie	Calm	24.6	-1.1
10	VR Goggles	Rookie	Calm	DNC	DNC
11	FlightSim	Veteran	Calm	13.6	-0.2
12	None/RC	Veteran	Calm	-1.8	1.1

Similar to 2010, the 2013 results show a gradual improvement as the tests were conducted, indicating a "training factor" may be involved. The one disappointment though was in the VR Goggle cases by the rookie pilot. He expressed some discomfort with the VR mode, in contrast to the RC and FS modes. This discomfort resulted in loss

of orientation, resulting in some erratic flying.. In both VR landing attempts, the situation deteriorated to the point were safety for the GCS crew was a concern, and the other pilot had to take emergency control. These are noted in the table as DNC (did not complete).

Following the morning tests, and facing deteriorating team morale and weather, it was decided to perform a series of "demonstration" runs. The author stepped in to be the rookie pilot. Only four cases were ran before weather conditions forced a stop to the experiment. These results are shown in Table 3-4, where "Jon" denotes the cases flown by this author. Both pilots expressed optimism about the quality of the video feed, and also the ease of flying well coordinated approaches. The VR Goggle method was not disorienting for either of us. The accuracy of the approaches, especially in terms of centerline deviation, is pretty clear. One of the author's approaches went quite long, similar to full-sized aircraft "floating" behavior, but landed within 1 m of the runway centerline. Weather conditions were rapidly deteriorating at this point, as it started to snow, forcing a stop to the flying activities on this day. This would turn out to be the final flying of Project RAVEN.

Table 3-5: 2013 VR Results, 29-Nov-PM ("Windy" 9-11 kts)

Run	Factor A: Form of VR	Factor B: Pilot Skill	Factor C: Winds	Response X: Touchdown Location (m)	Response Y: Centerline Deviation (m)
1	None/RC	Veteran	Windy	-6.8	4.8
2	VR Goggles	Jon	Windy	19.5	2.0
3	FlightSim	Jon	Windy	88.2	-0.8
4	FlightSim	Veteran	Windy	-2.8	1.8

3.3.4.5 **Analysis of the 2013 Experimental Results**

The results of the 2013 VR experiment were not analyzed using the ANOVA approach as in 2010, due to the lack of full results for "windy" conditions. The switch in rookie pilots would also invalid the statistical comparison. Instead the results are presented here in the form of a scatter plot indicating the touch-down locations of all of the landings conducted. These are shown in Figure 3-17, with the end of Bell Island runway indicated by the green outline. The target landing location (X=0) position was 45 m from the end of the runway as shown in Figure 3-10.
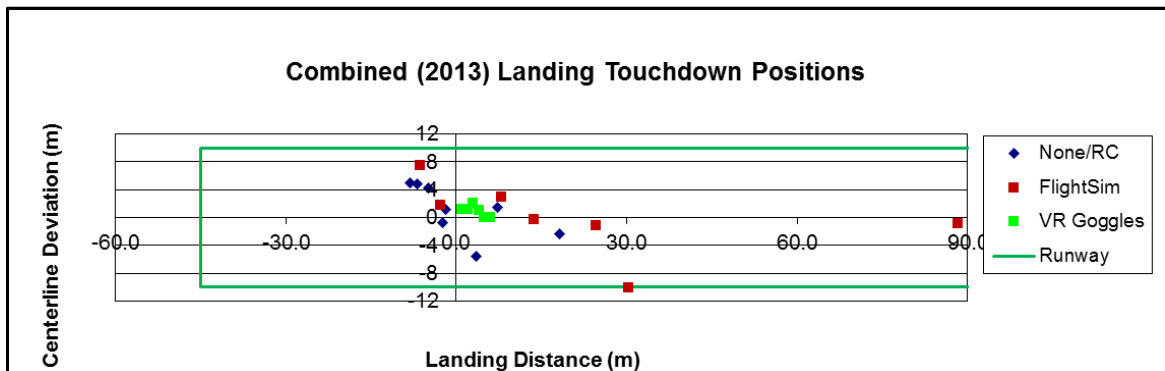
Figure 3-17: Landing Positions, 2013 VR Experiment

When compared with the results fro 2010 (see Figure 3-12), several observations can be made about the 2013 results. First, the accuracy of the landings, now constrained by a real runway (20m/66ft wide) have improved. The centerline distance, apart from two of the FS mode cases, are quite good. Landing distance is also very good, but generally "long" when the FS mode is used. The accuracy of the VR goggle mode landings are very good. The ease of lining up a good landing, experienced by the author, was greatly

increased when the immersive VR mode was used. Still, the poor performance of the first rookie pilot while using the VR mode was a cause for concern. It became evident that while the VR mode assisted myself and the veteran pilot, both who have flown flight simulators extensively since adolescence, to a person untrained in "normal" flying the VR mode does not provide the same advantage. Indeed, Dilhan first learned to fly using RC mode, and this appears to be the flying style he is most comfortable with. This was a result those of us involved in aviation had not considered. Generally, learning to fly R/C aircraft after you already know how to fly "real planes" involves combatting the third person disorientation effects caused by control reversal.   The FPV mode is one way of skipping this problem altogether.

3.3.4.6 <u>Significance of the Loss of GSB#11</u>

The loss of GBS#11 during initial FPV equipment shakedown, while not a planned event, is an important result of these VR experiments. It was flown beyond the range of the FPV video transmitter resulting in a loss of signal, and was too far away to allow recovery using normal R/C means.   This illustrated one of the dangers of using FPV mode that this author and others have noted – pilots tend to fly much higher and further than normal R/C flying, possibly in an attempt to emulate full-size aircraft flying practice, to the point where FPV becomes the only viable means of manual remote control. The gigantic nature of the runways at Argentia (i.e. 200 foot wide runways) only served to exacerbate this tendency.

Without a reliable BLOS manual control link, the use of R/C methods alone at the extended ranges encouraged by the use of FPV may render the small UAV uncontrollable. It is for this reasons that both MAAC and AMA set strict guidelines on the use of FPV techniques by their members (MAAC, 2012) (AMA, 2014). According to these guidelines FPV can only be used within unassisted visual range and always with the presence of a dedicated spotter who is also a second pilot ready to assume normal R/C control, should the FPV pilot become disorientated or the FPV equipment fail. Also, TC cautions the UAV operator to not assume that FPV technology alone can provide the desired situational awareness at BLOS ranges, in terms of providing the "sense and avoid" function of a manned aircraft pilot (TC TP15263, 2014).

3.3.5 Conclusions from Both VR Experiments

When the results from both VR experiments are considered together there are a number of important observations and conclusions that may be drawn:

1. The use of a real runway, using aviation grade markings, results in a significant improvement in VR mode landing accuracy, but has almost no effect on R/C mode.
2. For someone "entrenched" in the use of R/C alone, the addition of VR methods may hinder landing accuracy.
3. The VR method appears to be a promising method, but only if used by pilots familiar with full-size aircraft flying methods, and with sufficient training.
4. There appears to be a training effect involved in the use of novel VR methods for UAV control. In the case of both sets of experiments there was evidence that pilot performance was improving gradually as the test

progressed. To someone already trained in the use of FPV methods, such as the second Veteran pilot, this effect is quite strong.

5. The fixed-view FS mode, while being easier to implement (i.e. not requiring the tilt sensor or head tracking equipment) appears to be less accurate then the VR mode. It is possible, especially when the second (2013) set of results are examined, that there may be a fear factor involved. Forcing yourself to look at a small FPV screen when you could hear the aircraft approaching was difficult. The natural tendency for most R/C pilots is to avoid hitting yourself with your own aircraft! Most R/C pilots tend to err on the side of safety, and land beyond the pilot position. The results for the 2013 FS mode in particular appear to show this effect, as the pilot position was much closer to the runway centerline than in 2010.

6. When flying in FPV mode, pilots have a tendency to fly higher and further than normal R/C flying. It therefore becomes crucial that sufficient video feed signal strength (i.e. range) is provided to avoid sudden video signal drop-outs.

7. The addition of a HUD display improves the quality of the landing approach and with practice, encourages the use of proper landing speeds and flared landings.

Following the 2013 experiment, the video footage, especially of the various VR and FS modes was re-examined from both series of tests. The measurements of landing distance (X) and centerline deviation (Y) do not tell the complete story. It was noticed that when flying in R/C mode, the aircraft turns and altitude holding were not as accurate or smooth as with the FPV modes. When flying FPV, the pilot appears to naturally start to fly like a full-size aircraft. Turns are gentler with bank angles more typical of manned aircraft. Altitude, especially with the addition of HUD instruments, is typically held

within 50 feet.   However, the size of the circuits are much bigger in FPV mode, with the pilot flying downrange quite some distance before turning onto final approach to land. Again, this is very similar to full-sized aircraft flying practice.

3.4   **Extended Range Video Links at Beyond Line of Sight**

Project RAVEN has been testing extended range video, still images and remote data transfer technologies since 2006. Unfortunately, for a majority of this flight testing, flight at Beyond Line of Sight (BLOS) range was not permitted due to SFOC restrictions. However, in the fall of 2013 Project RAVEN was granted an exception and permitted to fly the first true BLOS mission. To be permitted to do this, a section of airspace north of the old Argentia airbase would be blocked off and temporarily classified as restricted airspace (i.e.   Restricted Class F airspace).   We would also equip the UAV with an extended range FPV setup, and an extended range telemetry link to maintain the link between the aircraft autopilot and the GCS throughout the mission.

Figure 3-18 shows the flight plan used for the BLOS mission to Fox Island. The UAV would launch from the NE end of the main runway, fly 4 km to the island, circumnavigate it, and then fly back. This flight plan would be repeated for as long as the aircraft endurance would allow. For this mission one of the gasoline-powered GiantStik aircraft would be used, equipped with an ArduPilot autopilot system (3DRobotics, 2013). The GiantStik used featured an enlarged fuel tank which allowed approximately 40-45 minutes of useful flight time.

Figure 3-18: Beyond Line of Sight (BLOS) Mission to Fox Island

An extended-range version of the FPV setup as used by the 2013 VR experiment was used for this mission. Key to this system was the use of a more powerful video transmitter (i.e. 600 mW power, about three times that normally used by consumer-grade remote video units). A high-gain antenna suitable for 5.8 GHz was also used, mounted on top of a 30' tall radio mast. A second hi-gain antenna suitable for the 900 MHz Ardupilot telemetry link was also mounted on the mast. In the case of the FPV setup a diversity RF switching system was used to switch between the hi-gain antenna and the FPV goggle antenna, depending on the strength of the signal received by both. In theory, the manual control override system built-in to the Ardupilot system could also have been used to override the autopilot at BLOS range (provided the telemetry link is maintained),

and fly the aircraft based on the FPV video, in a manner very similar to the FS mode in the VR experiment. However, this was not tested during this initial BLOS mission. The FPV video was used only to monitor the situation and prove we could maintain a good video signal at long range (6+ km).

Before we could fly this mission we verified that both the video and telemetry links could be maintained at a minimum 6 km range. A series of range tests were conducted in the same area, by setting up both the autopilot GCS and FPV receivers at the location of an elevated Lookout as shown in Figure 3-18, and flying the aircraft over the runway, near the GCS location indicated. The range was approximately 2.5 km. Attenuators were used to deliberately degrade the signal during static tests, to determine the maximum useful range of both links. The directionality of the hi-gain antennas was also investigated. In both cases the effect beam width turned out to be quite narrow, approximately +/- 15º in azimuth and +/-10º in elevation. The sensitivity in elevation was also marked, especially if the antenna was pointed straight forward or slightly down cast. This makes sense if multi-path effects are considered.

Following successful range tests of both the FPV and telemetry links, including drilling of emergency procedures and conducting a mock GCS switchover to a remote station located at the lookout location (while the UAV was flown over the Argentia runway), the BLOS was finally conducted on October 30, 2013. A sample image from the forward FPV camera during this mission may be seen in Figure 3-19.

Figure 3-19: FPV View over Fox Island during BLOS Mission

The aircraft was able to travel back and forth and circumnavigated Fox Island many times during the 45 minutes duration of the mission. The telemetry link between the ArduPilot and the GCS worked flawlessly. We calculated that the maximum range was approximately 5.0 km, when the UAV was north of Fox Island. The FPV system maintained good video quality for most of the mission. The only times of degraded quality appeared to be brief moments when the aircraft turned the antenna away from the GCS location, usually during the return track and off to the right of Argentia as seen from the aircraft. The video footage over Fox Island was good enough for us to spot a small fishing vessel just north of the island, indicated by the yellow circle in Figure 3-19. This was well beyond the line of sight of all the crew including the spotters at the GCS, and confirms the basic utility of FPV to enhance situational awareness at BLOS range.

3.5 Synthetic Environments

Synthetic environments are commonly used in the field of Unmanned Aerial Vehicles to provide a simulation environment where various experimental UAV control methods and mission planning may be accomplished, without risking actual flight hardware. In the context of the research outlined in this chapter, a low-cost synthetic environment was developed, initially to assist in mission planning in the early stages of the Aerosonde flight program. However, this synthetic environment was expanded and used in other roles, including use as a potential Beyond Line of Sight (BLOS) situation display. Details of how this simulation evolved and was used will be explored in the following sections.

3.5.1 Visualization using a Flight Simulator

A visualization tool was developed that permitted small UAVs to be simulated and observed in a variety of views, including several external views and also a "virtual pilot" (i.e. from the cockpit) view. The basis of this simulation was an aerodynamic simulation of the Aerosonde UAV, developed in MATLAB with the assistance of a third party aerodynamic library called AeroSIM (Unmanned Dynamics, 2006). This library was developed specifically for simulating small airframes such as the Aerosonde UAV. This block set included an interface that could be used to send Flight Dynamic Model (FDM) state information (i.e. aircraft position, angles and velocities) to either the Microsoft Flight Simulator 2002 or the FlightGear (FG) flight simulator for use as a visualization tool. This permitted the creation of a low-cost (i.e. about the cost of two modern desktop

115

PCs) UAV synthetic test environment. This basic simulation environment is shown schematically in Figure 3-20.
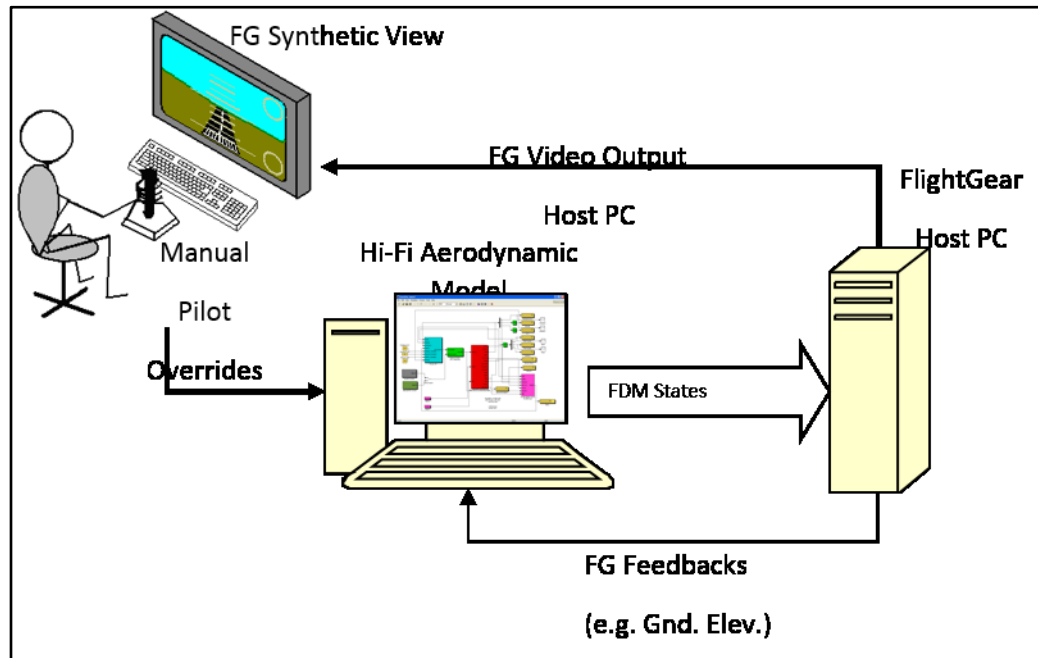
Figure 3-20: Low-cost Single UAV Synthetic Environment

FlightGear (FG) was found to be the better choice of visualization tool in terms of animation quality, especially frame rate. Also, since it is open-source, it was more easily customized. This same visualization method was used by the Aerosonde GCS for in-lab simulation and mission planning using hardware-in-the-loop techniques. Figure 3-21 is a screen shot showing one of our UAV test vehicles, the GiantStik, flying over the Clarenville Airfield in this simulated environment. The GiantStik visual model was created by this author using relatively inexpensive (<$100) 3D modeling tools. The terrain data was available via free download from the FlightGear website. The

Clarenville area is included in a 10x10 degree geographical block which encompasses most of the eastern Island of Newfoundland. The terrain elevation data used is based on the same Earth model used within the AeroSIM block set (i.e. the World Geodetic System 1984 Earth Ellipsoid datum[11]). The WGS84 is also the same earth model standard used by GPS, and thus the simulation environment is using the same geodetic information used by most UAV autopilots. Even though the FlightGear terrain is of somewhat lower resolution (i.e. 30x30 m scenario mesh), it is perfectly adequate for visualizing typical UAV maneuvers and DSA scenarios where the UAV will be typically flying between 150 and 300 m altitude above ground, especially over relatively flat terrain.
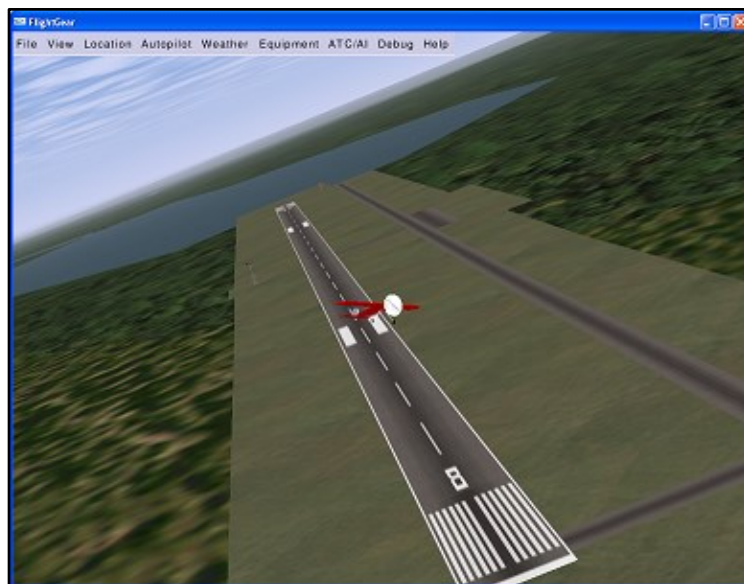
Figure 3-21: FlightGear Visualization of GiantStik over Clarenville Airfield

---

[11] The World Geodetic System 1984 (WGS84) is the standard earth ellipsoid model used by GPS. Such earth models are used to account for the fact that the Earth is not an ideal sphere but rather more of a pumpkin shape (i.e. an ellipsoid), bulging out at the equator. The geometric formulae built into the WGS84 are used to convert between latitude/longitude/altitude and Cartesian coordinates. The WGS84 was established as an improvement on previous such Earth models such as the older NAD27 standard and made extensive use of satellite radar data to establish an Earth model considered to be accurate within 1m (National Imagery and Mapping Agency, 2000). A full description of the WGS84 is out of scope for this thesis. The interested reader should consult the NGA/NIMA website indicated in the previous citation.

3.5.2 Enhancements using Multi-Player Mode

The visual representations in FlightGear are essentially one-way. The MATLAB/Simulink (or Aerosonde GCS software simulation) simply sends the current aircraft position and velocity data to FlightGear, which is set to accept external Flight Dynamics Model (FDM) state information. This state information is primarily the position of the aircraft (latitude, longitude and altitude), the angular orientations (pitch, yaw and roll) and the velocities of these six primary variables. FlightGear can also accept detailed information related to the positions of the flight surfaces, and provided individual parts are included in the aircraft animation, the movement of these control surfaces may be seen.

The external FDM state data stream overrides the normal flight models in FlightGear, and controls the movement of the aircraft seen in the flight simulator. The aerodynamic simulation on the MATLAB-host computer is the primary source of control as it includes a representation of the autopilot. With the addition of manual pilot override controls it is now possible to simulate virtual piloting, using the FG-generated video as the feedback to the pilot. When combined with the in-cockpit FG view this is a very effective VP method.

The open-ended nature of the visualization tool (i.e. FlightGear) also permits the use of multi-player to represent different vehicles (including ground targets) in the same scenario. For example, the GiantStik could be flown as an adversary versus an Aerosonde. We could likewise insert a variety of other aircraft, including general

aviation (GA) aircraft such as a Cessna C172 or Piper Cherokee. The use of this multi-player mode to support DSA scenario simulations will be discussed in detail in Chapter 5.

3.5.3 Tests of the Synthetic Environment in Clarenville

During an Aerosonde mission, all Piccolo AP telemetry received at the GCS is recorded to a "telemetry file". These telemetry files contain a recording of the Aerosonde UAV position information and the Piccolo autopilot control outputs during a mission. The primary use of these telemetry files is to allow playback of previous missions on the GCS. When connected to FlightGear, this would also produce a synthetic view of the mission in the flight simulator. We discovered that it was possible to intercept this telemetry during flight, and once packaged in an appropriate data structure, this could be sent to FlightGear at the same time as the telemetry file recording. In this case the view in FlightGear is no longer a simulation or mission playback, but rather a representation of what is actually happening during the mission in real time.

We have already conducted testing of this practical use of the FlightGear visualization tool during Aerosonde training flights in October 2007. Figure 3-22 shows the visualization display active just to one side of the GCS workstation. The FlightGear display on the left computer was driven by Aerosonde telemetry, which was intercepted from the main GCS computer over a serial port normally used for hardware-in-the-loop testing. The computer on the right hosted the "bridge" code that accomplished this telemetry interception, and then transmitted it to FG in external FDM input format.

119

Figure 3-22: Synthetic Environment Active during Live Aerosonde Flight

The accuracy of the synthetic view was good enough to determine the UAV position and attitude in real time, and to show other environmental conditions during flight. During one mission it was noticed that the sun disk displayed in the FG simulation was touching the western horizon, which is the legal definition of the onset of sunset (MacDonald & Peppler, p. 108). With this information we alerted the AVO and manual pilot, who were then able to start the recovery operation in a timely manner. This was critical as we were prohibited from flying after sunset under the SFOC in place at that time. The successful landing of the Aerosonde was accomplished at about the same time that a full moon was rising. This was also visible in the FG visualization tool. One of the post-landing pictures taken is shown in Figure 3-23. This picture became one of the trademark photos from these series of test flights of the Aerosonde.

Figure 3-23: Post-landing Picture of Aerosonde Framing a Full Moon

3.5.4 Extension of Synthetic Environment for BLOS Control

An extension of the FG visualization tool allows the creation of a simple yet powerful enhancement to the Aerosonde GCS. As already demonstrated, the FG-generated forward (cockpit) view could be used to drive a virtual piloting display at the GCS. While a live video feed is the preferred option here, the synthetic view could be used to augment the live video display. This could be used to enhance situational awareness such as in situations of poor visibility due to weather or time of day. The synthetic view could also be used beyond eLOS range, or when the video signal drops below a certain strength. The amount of telemetry needed to drive the FlightGear visuals is much smaller than the equivalent video feed, and may even be possible over very low bandwidth satellite phone links. It would be most effective if the synthetic and real video

views could be combined into the same virtual piloting display. This concept is illustrated in Figure 3-24.
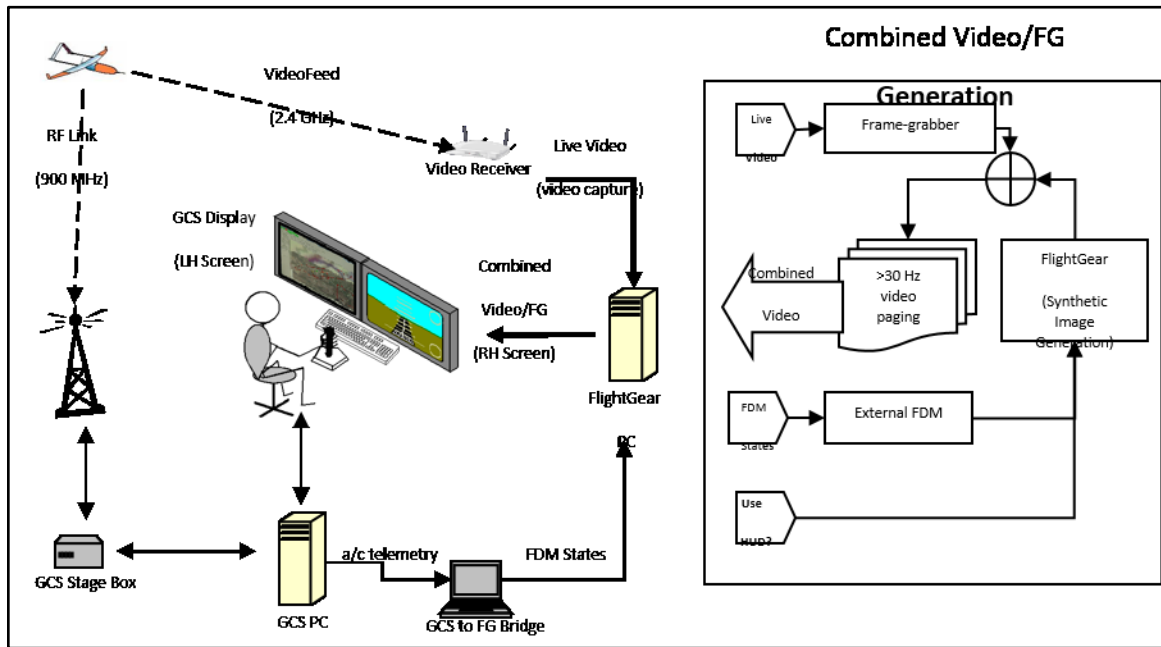
Figure 3-24: GCS Enhancement using Combined Video Display

While the live video feed is of good quality and useful, this would form the primary background image in the Virtual Pilot view at the GCS. A HUD or bottom cockpit dials would be used to provide a complete virtual pilot experience. When video imagery degrades, synthetic FG-generated elements would replace the real imagery. The virtual pilot could also select some synthetic elements to be over-laid on top of the real imagery to enhance the display. The HUD is an obvious example, as would artificial enhancement of the runway location, through use of the simulator-generated edge lighting. This would be very effective when landing in poor visibility conditions (i.e.

equivalent to IFR with manned aircraft). The synthetic display could also display any detected entities, either targets on the ground, or other airborne targets nearby, assuming these are detected via other sensors (e.g. Automatic Identification System (AIS) for ships, ADS-B, TCAS for cooperative aircraft, etc.), even when these target are well beyond normal visual range or visible in the video feed.

Most of the pieces needed for this system have been tested within Project RAVEN, especially the synthetic FG environment and extended range video, however it must be stressed that a fully-integrated version of the concept illustrated in Figure 3-5 remains a future subject for research, possibly as a focused electrical or computer engineering project. The concept of combining live-video with synthetic visual enhancements should be possible even with fairly simple and light-weight electronics. A form of such an enhanced video, combining real video imagery with synthetic elements, is the basis of the OSD used by the EagleTree FPV products (Eagle Tree Systems, 2013) used in the 2013 VR Experiments documented in Section 3.3.4.

3.6 Summary: Effect of Enhanced UAV Control Methods on Safety

An enhanced method to remotely operate a UAV manually could be a significant improvement to the overall robustness and safety of the system. A FPV view has been shown, both theoretically and through experiment, to improve the accuracy of precision flying, if used by a properly trained manual pilot. This improved accuracy should enhance the safety of UAV flight during takeoffs and landings. The FPV view also provides a means to accomplish manual emergency landings should the need arise.

Instead of the UAV simply crashing into some random location, FPV may be used to guide the aircraft to a safe dead-stick (i.e. engine out) landing, perhaps on an abandoned field or road. This emergency landing capability is an important element of manned aviation safety and trained for by manned aircraft pilots. If applied to small UAV operations this could represent a significant "mitigation strategy" and would contribute to a non-zero value in the P_{mit} term used in equation 2-1.

FPV and enhanced BLOS vision technologies could also be used to improve AVO situational awareness and reduce the mid-air collision risk[12]. The enhanced range FPV view, if combined with synthetic enhancements, would benefit UAV operations in times of reduced visibility. Traffic de-conflicting also becomes a possibility should manned aircraft be encountered and an emergency avoidance maneuver become necessary. Without such a system, the AVO is indeed blind, and would have no chance to do anything about the situation. This is one of the primary complaints of small UAVs in their present form. Any improvement in situational awareness should provide an improvement to the $P_{UAVfailure}$ (i.e. the chance that the UAV fails to avoid a collision) term in equation 2-2.

---

[12] It should be noted that Transport Canada does not give much credit to the use of FPV technology as a possible sense and avoid technology in its present form (TC SI-623-001, 2014). However, with sufficient development, especially if a BLOS synthetic environment could be fused with data from a DSA system, it could one day become an integral part of a possible BLOS remote piloting system.

Chapter 4   Enhancements to UAV Visibility

In this chapter we will explore methods and technologies which may be used to enhance the visibility of the small UAV. This of course is directly related to the Mid-Air Collision threat posed by the small UAV. We will begin by determining the theoretical limits of the "See and Avoid" principal when dealing with the small UAV. This will be followed by the results from the research of several proposed visibility enhancements, including:

1. A thorough study of a possible lighting system for the UAV;
2. Using transponder technologies to enhance UAV detectability; and,
3. Providing the UAV with an air-band radio capability.

The goal is to improve the chances that others in the same airspace will be able to spot the small UAV with sufficient warning to avoid traffic conflicts, thus addressing Quadrant 2 of the DSA Situation as shown in Table 1-1 (i.e. "Can the UAV be seen and avoided?).   Note also that the concept of "visibility" must be extended to include non-visual detection means, especially if operation of the small UAV in non-visual weather conditions is to be contemplated.

4.1   Theoretical Visibility Estimates

In this section, the probability that a small UAV would be seen by a manned aircraft will be estimated. In addition to the small UAV, the detection ranges for different sized manned aircraft will be included.   These may be used to create a preliminary

specification for the requirements of a hypothetical UAV vision/sensing system. The ability of a pilot to see another aircraft is of course directly related to human visual acuity, which will be summarized first.

4.1.1 The Human Factors of Vision

Perhaps the most important ability of a human pilot is the sense of sight. It has been suggested that up to 80% of the sensor input used by humans comes from the eyes (Chapanis, 1996), and this is especially true for the human pilot. The human eye is extraordinarily sensitive and has remarkable detection capabilities, although these capabilities have limitations.

4.1.1.1 Visual Acuity

The visual acuity (i.e. resolving ability) of the human eye varies depending on the type of detection being attempted and background illumination level. In general, visual acuity decreases as the complexity of the target detection task increases or when background illumination is low (Chapanis, 1996, p. 218). In increasing order of difficulty (and decreasing acuity) these tasks may be classified as:

1. Detection (detecting the presence of something);
2. Vernier (detecting misalignments);
3. Separation (resolving gaps between parts, lines, dots, etc.); and,
4. Identification (letters, object classifications, etc.)

Normal healthy eyes are able to detect linear objects which subtend as small as 0.5 arc seconds, provided the object has some length (i.e. at least 1° of arc). This detection ability is well below the theoretical limit based on optical diameter on the retina and is more related to the ability to discriminate fine changes in contrast. A very distant thin line (e.g. an antenna guy wire) appears as a discontinuity against the background sky.

For disk-shaped objects the resolving limit is 30 arc-sec. The acuity to resolve two distinctly separate objects (disks or lines) is limited to 25 arc-sec. The ability to identify 2-D shapes (e.g. letters or the silhouette of aircraft) is akin to acuity testing using standard "Snelling Letter" charts. For this sort of visual acuity, normal vision (i.e. 20/20 vision) is generally considered to be 0.8 arc-minutes resolution, which over 5 minute arc letters allows one to distinguish, for example, an "E" from an "F" (Clark, 2009). These values are valid assuming good target to background contrast (i.e. dark black letters against a white background) and normal indoor lighting conditions. For the resolution of dark objects against a bright background (i.e. an aircraft against the sky) the target size detection acuity increases with background luminance as seen in Figure 4-1, which summarizes these various classifications of normal human visual acuity. Note that normal indoor lighting is approximately 100 Lumens, while outdoors at midday it is 1000 Lumens.
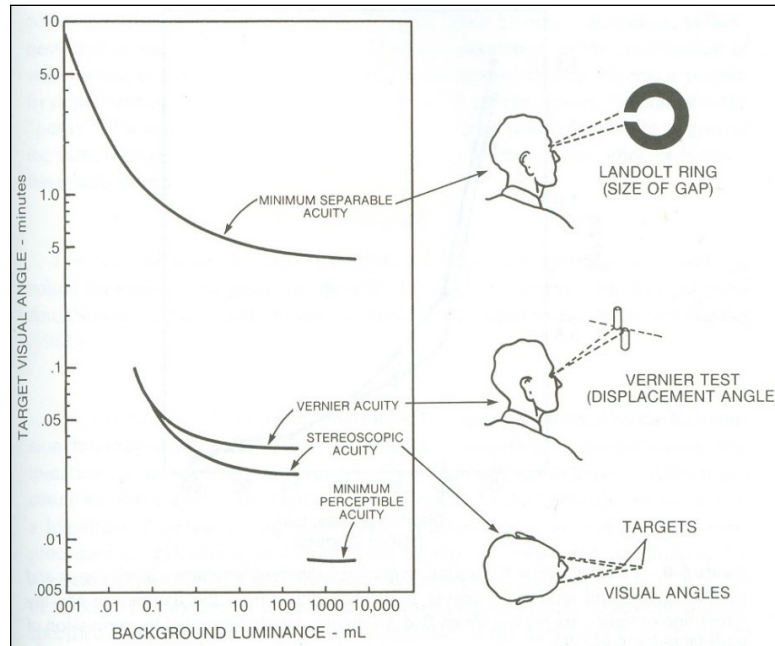
Figure 4-1: Visual Acuity versus Background Luminance (Chapanis, p. fig 6.7)

The theoretical eye resolution power may also be estimated based on the physical characteristics of the eye. From elementary photonics, the angular diameter of a point source on the retina may be calculated from (Friedman & Miller, 2004):

$$D = 2.44 \frac{\lambda}{\theta_{optic}} \tag{4-1}$$

Where:

D = angular diameter of focused point

λ = wavelength of light

θ_{optic} = optical diameter of focusing element

For the human eye, assuming an average iris diameter of 5 mm and using 500 nm wavelength for light (yellow-green), this results in a point size of 0.244 mrad (50 arc-sec, about 0.83 arc-min). This compares well with the resolving limits as described above (Chapanis, p. 220).

In terms of "pixels" (i.e. equivalent to digital camera resolution) one may be tempted to consider the total number of receptors on the retina and simply divide by the complete peripheral vision range for an average person. However, this is misleading since the field of view of high-resolution for the human eye is limited to approximately +/-15° off-axis from the center of gaze. This corresponds to the region of the retina called the Fovea, where the concentration of the colour-sensitive cones is highest. Outside this area, the resolving power of the eye drops dramatically as summarized in Figure 4-2.
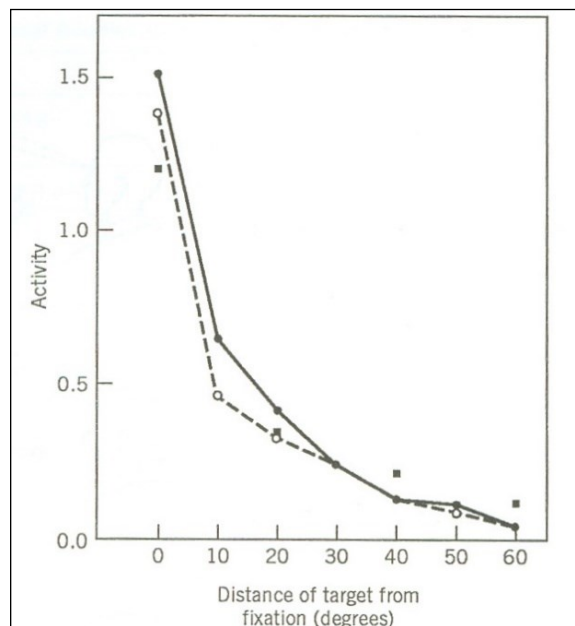
Figure 4-2: Visual Acuity and Center of Gaze (Chapanis, pp. fig.6-8)

If we were to take this central high-resolution area and consider the best disk-to-disk resolution power (i.e. 25 arc-sec = 0.4 arc-minute), one would estimate that at least in the central area of the retina, the equivalent number of pixels would be a circular region approximately 4500 pixels wide (i.e. 15.9 million pixels, or an equivalent square region just under 4000 x 4000 pixels). This is approximately 6-7 times the resolution of a typical NTSC format TV screen and explains why higher resolution computer screens (as well as high definition TV screens) are definitely detectable as such by most people.

4.1.1.2 Field of View (FOV)

For the average person, only the central +/- 15º field of view corresponding to the Fovea can be considered as the high resolution human field of view. However, vision extends well beyond this range, at least in terms of the ability to detect objects, especially motion, on at least a rudimentary level. The outer limits of peripheral vision varies considerably from person to person (as well as by gender and age), and depends on both optical properties of the eye (i.e. FOV of the lens) and also the ability of the eyes to rotate. The normal FOV for human binocular vision is an elliptical region 200º wide by 135º high (Schiefer, Patzold, Dannheim, Artes, & Hart, 1990). In addition, although most are not consciously aware of it, the human eye automatically scans left-right and up-down in minute motions called Saccades. The signals from the retina are integrated by the visual cortex region of the brain to give a coherent view of about +/-30º. This integration process also "fills in" the blind-spot region of the retina. This is the area where the optic nerve enters the eye, and is devoid of sensing cells. If these saccades are somehow stopped (e.g. such as through the use of immobilizing drops during eye exams) one

experiences a pronounced narrowing of the field of view (i.e. "tunnel vision") and in some cases a pronounced "blind spot" just off-axis from the center of gaze (Friedman & Miller, p. 138).
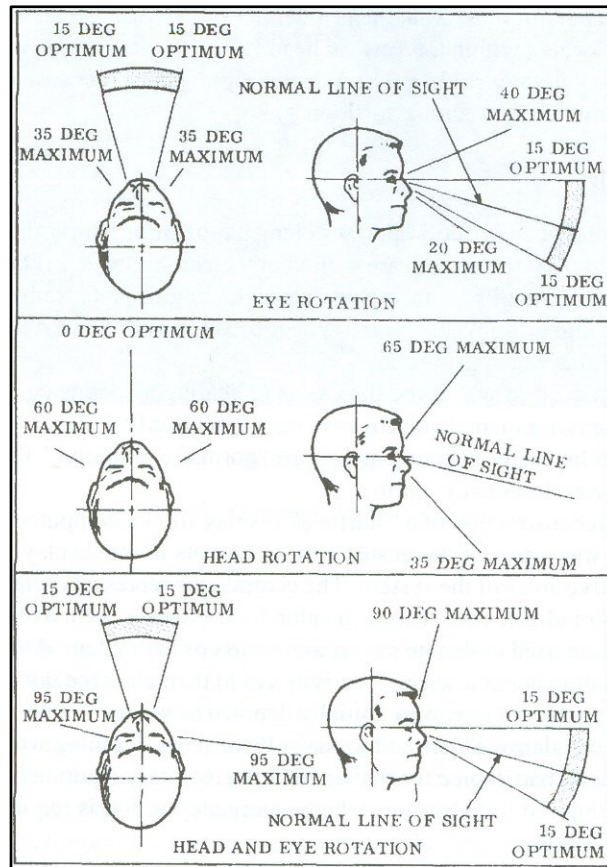
Figure 4-3: Practical FOV Limits (Chapanis, pp. fig.4-5)

Of course, the pilot can also turn his head. The ergonomics of this situation have been studied at length to determine practical limits for this head motion, especially in the design of man-machine interfaces, for example aircraft cockpits or the interiors of automobiles. Figure 4-3 gives a summary for normal human operators when taking into

account the most acute eye FOV, eye rotation and head turning. As shown the neutral human line-of-sight is angled downwards at 15º from horizontal, which explains the most common arrangement seen in aircraft cockpits and automobile dashboards. From an ergonomic standpoint, it is important to not rely on frequent and continuous head turning. While it is possible to turn your head back and forth perhaps every other second, to do so continuously would rapidly become very tiresome. For this reason, the most important information (e.g. front windows and flight instruments) should be kept within a relatively narrow forward region (perhaps 30º wide), but additional information (side windows, radio and engine controls, etc.) can be placed over a wider horizontal and vertical area (Chapanis, 1996).

It is interesting to note that during particularly intense maneuvers (e.g. final approach during aircraft landings), human factor researchers including this author have noticed that most pilots have already fixed their gaze more or less in the forward direction, with very little side-to-side head motions, as they become fixated on the target in front of them (Hobbs, p. 11). Any scanning at this point is limited to the view directly out the front of the aircraft, and the most important cockpit instruments, such as airspeed, rate of descent, altitude, and the ILS glide-slope indicator. This tendency ("target fixation") is frequently cited in aviation accident reports as a major limitation of the "See and Avoid" principle (TSB Report A00O0057, 2000).

4.1.1.3 **Sensitivity (Night Vision)**

The sensitivity of the human eye to bright light sources, especially at night, is important in the detection of lights on aircraft, especially the anti-collision strobe. Once adapted to dark conditions, the sensitivity of the human eye increases by several orders of magnitude (approximately $\times 10^6$), but generally at the expense of the ability to distinguish colours (Wandell, 1995). In the early years of nuclear physics, dark-adapted humans eyes (usually those of graduate students!) were noted as being the most sensitive instruments for detecting very small numbers of particle (photon) emissions. Legend was that they could detect a single photon, although later experiments showed that a burst of 5 or more photons over a particular timeframe is required to be detectable by the human visual system (Friedman & Miller, p. 138).
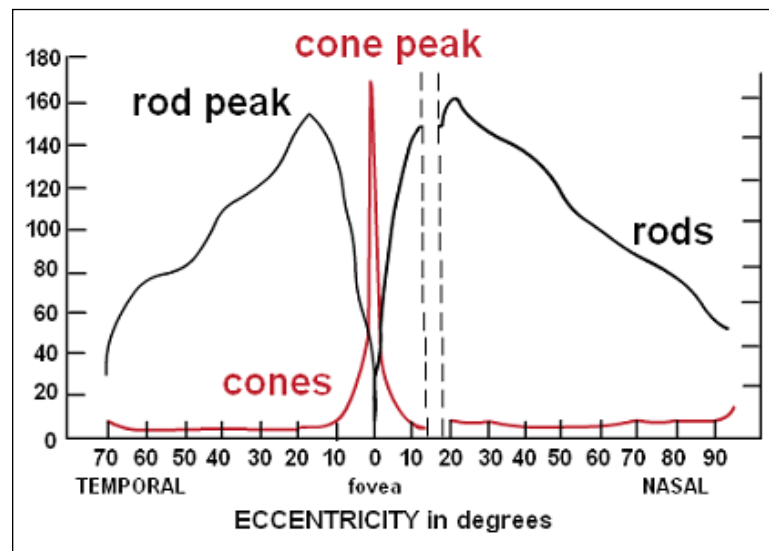
Figure 4-4: Densities of Receptors of the Human Eye (Osterberg, 1935)

The large increase in eye sensitivity in low light conditions is explained by the dilation of the iris and also the increased light sensitivity of the rods in the retina. While most of the colour-sensitive cones are concentrated in the fovea region, the rest of the retina is covered by the more plentiful (and sensitive) rods. Figure 4-4 shows a summary of the measured densities of rods and cones in a typical human eye (x1000 per mm^2), where the complementary nature of the two may be seen. Note the gap due to the blind spot (Osterberg, 1935).

In theory, in dark (starless and moonless) night conditions, a human pilot might be able to detect the anti-collision lights of another aircraft from as few as 1 to 5 photons (for black/white) and 10 to 15 photons for colour determination. The smallest detectable luminance is approximately 10^{-6} milli-lumens (Chapanis, pp. Table 6-2). Of course, the inside of an aircraft cockpit at night will not be completely dark. The actual sensitivity of the pilot's eyes at night will likely be an average of night-adapted vision and the light conditions inside the cockpit. Red back-lighting is typically used, as this has been shown to cause the least amount of degradation of night-adapted human eyesight (AOA, 2014). We will return to this discussion of night visibility in the section on aircraft lighting systems in this chapter.

4.1.2 Day-Time Visibility

The human factors summarized in the previous section may now be applied to estimate the limits of the human pilot in terms of the ability to detect another aircraft during day time VMC conditions.

134

4.1.2.1 **Maximum Detection Range based on Photonics**

From elementary photonics, the angular size (radians) of an object of size L, at a distance D from the observer may be calculated from:

$$\theta = 2\,Arc\tan\left(\frac{L}{2D}\right) \quad \text{(radians)} \tag{4-2}$$

Which for small angles (i.e. $\theta < 10°$), may be simplified as:

$$\theta = (57.3)(60)\left(\frac{L}{D}\right) \quad \text{(arc-min)} \tag{4-3}$$

Either equation may be used in conjunction with human visual acuity limits to estimate the maximum (ideal) detection range. Alternatively, we may also estimate the smallest detectable target at a given range. Consider the head-on view of three aircraft shown approximately to scale in Figure 4-5.
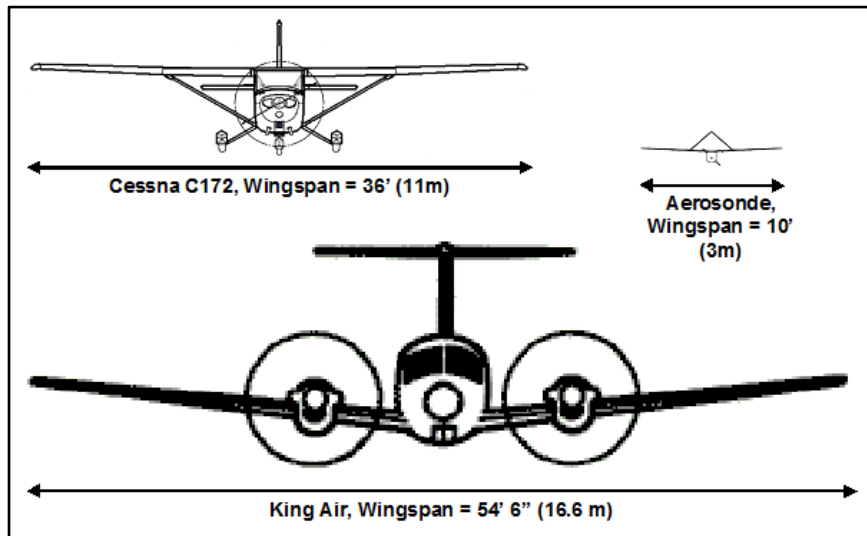
Figure 4-5: Head-on Views of Three Different Aircraft

In Figure 4-5, the small size of the Aerosonde (3m/10ft wingspan) is apparent when compared to a typical GA aircraft (Cessna C172, 11m/36ft wingspan) and the larger twin-turboprop King Air (16.6m/54.5ft wingspan). If we consider the characteristic geometries of all three aircraft, we may idealize them as:

(a)   A slender horizontal bar (wings); and,
(b)   A prominent central disk (fuselage).

Next, consider the minimum legal sighting distance under current VFR rules, which is 1 statute mile (1609 m) in uncontrolled G class airspace above 1000 feet (MacDonald & Peppler, p. 115). From this distance, the ability to detect the wings will be limited by the very slender nature of airfoils. However, the eye can detect very fine linear objects subtending as low as 0.5 arc-sec. At 1609 m this equates to a thickness of only 4 mm (e.g. an antenna guy wire). However, this ability exists only if the object also subtends at least 1º of arc in length (Chapanis, 1996). Using this later limit we may estimate that the minimum detectable wingspan at this range as:

$$(1 \deg)(60 \, arc \min / \deg) = (57.3)(60)\left(\frac{L_{min}}{1609}\right)$$

$$\therefore L_{min} = 28m$$

This suggests that none of these aircraft have wide enough wingspans to be detected, at least based on the eye's ability to detect long thin objects. However, the fuselage might be easier to spot. Assuming a best-case detection limit is 30 arc-sec,

which is the absolute limit for human vision in bright lighting, we might estimate the minimum diameter detectable as:

$$30 \text{ arc-sec}/60 = 0.5 arc \min = (57.3)(60)\left(\frac{\phi_{\min}}{1609}\right)$$

$$\therefore \phi_{\min} = 0.234m$$

This is approximately the diameter of the Aerosonde fuselage. The Cessna fuselage is approximately 1.52m (5ft) diameter while the King Air is 2.1m (7ft) diameter. Therefore, it seems the Aerosonde is at the lower limit of detection at 1609m, while the two larger aircraft would theoretically be detectable at longer range, the Cessna at 10.2 km, and the King Air at 14.6 km. However, we must be careful when using these estimates as they are based on ideal object to background contrast, laboratory lighting conditions, and prolonged attention by the observer. This is also detection of a point object, which is hardly enough to recognize another aircraft. Under practical conditions, especially time-limited detection tasks, the assumed human visual acuity limit (i.e. 30 arc-sec in this case) could be lower by a factor of ten (Chapanis, 1996). There is also the effect of whether an un-cued pilot would even be scanning the right area of the sky for maximum visual acuity to apply.

Based on the AFRL results (i.e. F-16, of similar size as the Cessna, detected at a maximum range of 3 km by the average USAF pilot), a scale factor of approximately 3.3 seems appropriate (McCalmont, et al., 2007). Hence, the adjusted maximum detection ranges would be 488 m for the Aerosonde, 3.1 km for the Cessna and 4.4 km for the King

Air. The Cessna and King Air detection ranges comply with the VFR visibility rules, but the Aerosonde is too small to be detectable at a minimum 1.6 km (1 mi) range.

4.1.2.2 **Maximum Detection Range Estimate based on Johnson's Criteria**

An alternative estimate of detection range may be made based on Johnson's criteria. These criteria were developed for the U.S. Army in the 1950s to estimate the target size required by an observer (sensor or human) to accomplish an observation task with 50% success rate (Friedman & Miller, pp. 4-5). These criteria are:

1. Detection (i.e. The presence of something) – 0.5 to 1.0 line pairs;
2. Orientation (including estimate of motion direction) – 2 to 3 line pairs;
3. Reading Alphanumeric (English characters) – 2.5 to 3 line pairs;
4. Recognition (i.e. is it a tank or artillery piece?) – 3 to 4 line pairs; and,
5. Classification (i.e. is it a T-72 or Sheridan tank?) – 6+ line pairs.

A line pair is one way to define spatial resolution. It is equal to a dark bar and a white space (often also called one cycle) across the critical dimension of the target. Crudely, the number of pixels is approximately twice the number of cycles (Friedman & Miller, p. 6). The critical dimension is usually the diameter or width (across a uniform disk or square shape, respectively). For an irregular shape it may be estimated as the square of the area. These criteria have continued to be used during the development of targeting systems into the 1980s. Recent researchers have also extended them to the analysis of digital imagery (Vollmerhausen, 1999). Estimates of the probability of success have been modeled successfully using these relationships:

$$P(N) = \frac{\left(\dfrac{N}{N_{50}}\right)^{E}}{1 + \left(\dfrac{N}{N_{50}}\right)^{E}} \qquad (4\text{-}4)$$

Where:

$N_{50} =$ Number of cycles needed to be resolved across the target dimension for 50 percent of the observers to get the target choice correct (with the probability of chance subtracted); target dimension is typically taken as the square root of target area.

$N =$ Number of cycles actually resolved across the target.

$E =$ An empirical scaling factor, equal to:

$$E = 1.7 + 0.5\left(\dfrac{N}{N_{50}}\right) \qquad (4\text{-}5)$$

The empirical scaling factor (E) is the outcome of over four decades of target observation model development (including field tests) and was the currently accepted form as of 2004 (Friedman & Miller, pp. 11-12).

The application of Johnson's Criteria, and in particular equations 4-4 and 4-5, to determine the probability of success in four levels of target detection may be summarized as shown in Figure 4-6. The number of pixels required to successfully accomplish a certain observation task increases with the task complexity.
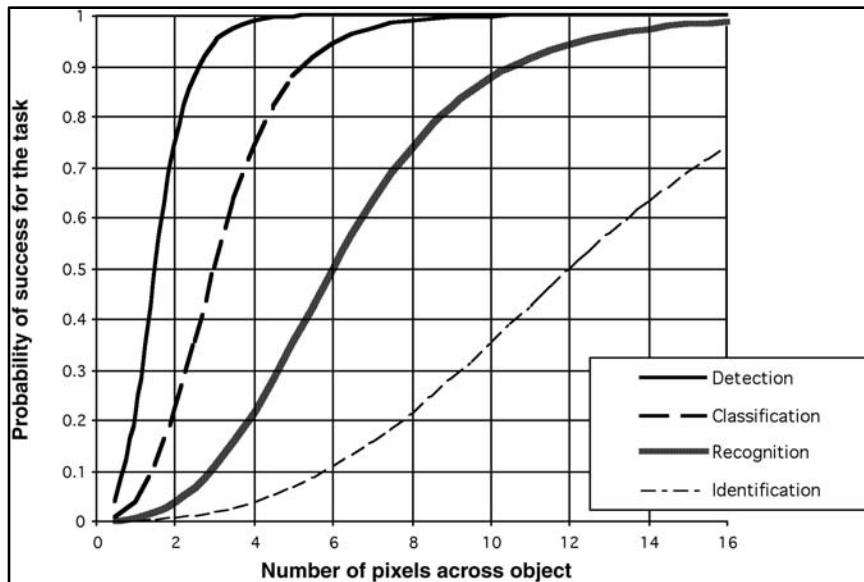
Figure 4-6: Probability of Target Detection, Classification, Recognition and Identification (Friedman & Miller, p. 13)

Returning to the estimate of aircraft detection range, we would need at least 4 pixels across the target's critical dimension to ensure 100% chance of detection (i.e. the top curve in Figure 4-6). Using the estimated pixel resolution of the human eye (0.5 arc-min), we would therefore require an overall target size of at least 2.0 arc-min. Based on the fuselage diameter, the estimated range for 100% chance of detection for each aircraft is therefore:

Aerosonde (0.23 m dia.) = 494 m (0.31 mi)

Cessna (1.52 m dia.)   = 3266 m (2 mi)

King Air (2.1m dia.)   = 4585 m (2.85 mi)

These calculations based on Johnson's Criteria agree well with the previous photonic estimates assuming the inclusion of the AFRL scale factor (i.e. Aerosonde = 488 m, Cessna = 3.1 km, King Air = 4.4 km) as in Section 4.1.2.1. We can conclude that the minimum detection range for the Aerosonde UAV is approximately 500 m.

4.1.2.3 <u>**Effect of Human Field of View (i.e. Visual Scanning)**</u>

When combined with eyeball and modest head rotation, the region of good scanning is generally defined as a 60° wide cone out front. First, we consider the drop in visual acuity as an object appears further away from the center of gaze. To model this effect, we apply a curve fit to human eye visual acuity curve in Figure 4-2 and find that an exponential curve fits the measured acuity as shown in Figure 4-7.

Acuity versus Off-Axis Angle

$$y = 1.5e^{-0.0579x}$$
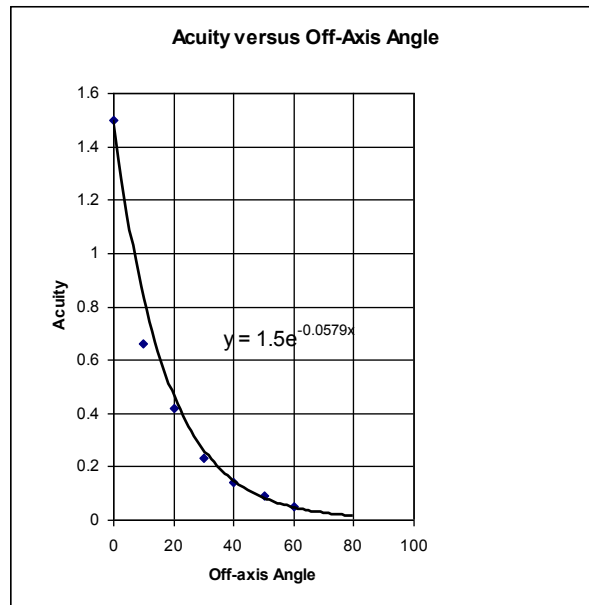
Figure 4-7: Curve Fit to Off-Axis Visual Acuity

If we take 1.5 as maximum (ideal) visual acuity, we may estimate the maximum detection range (R_{max}) of a fuselage ($\phi_{fuselage}$) over a range of angles from the center of gaze by using Equation 4-3:

$$\frac{(1.5)(0.5 arc\,min)}{acuity} = (57.3)(60)\frac{\phi_{fuselage}}{R_{max}},$$

$$\frac{0.75 arc\,min}{acuity} = (57.3)(60)\frac{\phi_{fuselage}}{R_{max}} \tag{4-6}$$

$$\therefore R_{max} = (57.3)(60)(acuity)\frac{\phi_{fuselage}}{0.75}$$

Applying equation 4-6 for the three aircraft being considered over a range of viewing angles off the center of gaze, we obtain the results as seen in Figure 4-8.
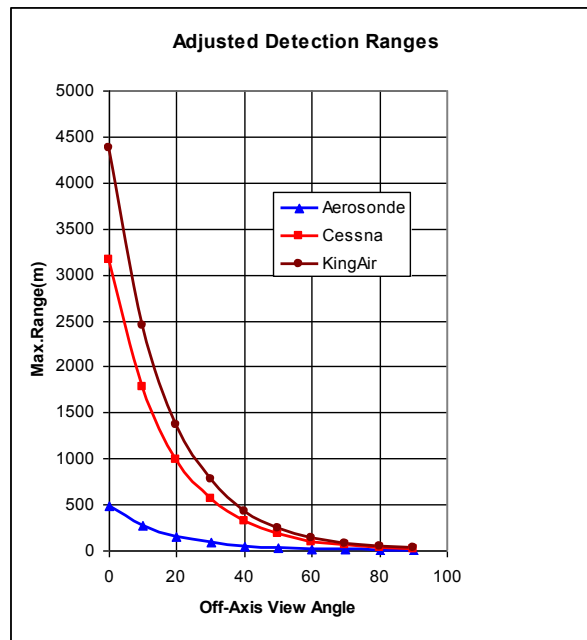
Figure 4-8: Detection Range as a Function of Off-Axis View Angle

We can now use the estimated drops in visual acuity to calculate the modified chance of target detection for our aircraft at 1609m (1 mi) range, using the Johnson's Criteria method of the previous section. These results are summarized in Figure 4-9, and show a marked drop in detection range (and probability of detection) off-axis from a fixed forward gaze. This shows the danger inherent with the "target fixation" problem. Another aircraft could literally blind-side the pre-occupied pilot. However, assuming the pilot continues to maintain a good visual scan, the forward 60º view should be monitored fairly evenly every few seconds.
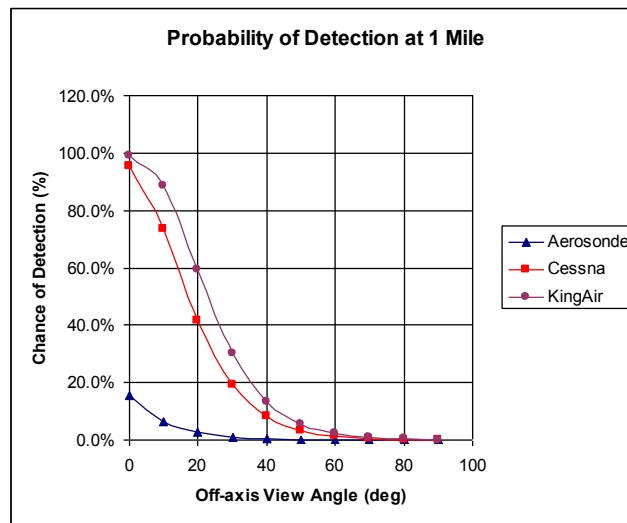
Figure 4-9: Probability of Detection at 1609m (1 mi)

The effect of pilot visual scanning is difficult to quantify precisely but may be approximated as follows. The azimuth angle as seen in Figure 4-8 and Figure 4-9 will be blurred by approximately 20º. Therefore, the visual acuity in the 0-5º range will extend

out to 20-25º range, and all subsequent results will be as shown, only shifted 20º. Even with this broadened scan area, the detectability for an aircraft approaching from an azimuth angle of only 40º or more would still be quite low (< 20%) even for the largest aircraft being considered here. In the case of the very small Aerosonde, without any form of visibility enhancements, detectability at 1609m (1 mi) will be near impossible even when approaching head-on.

4.1.2.4 **Safety Aspects of Daytime Visual Detection**

Preliminary estimates of the maximum detection ranges for three aircraft have been made using several different techniques. Based on these results, the safety of the minimum sighting rules seen in current Aviation Regulations may be called into question. Assuming a head-approach direction, the Cessna and King Air could be detected at a maximum range of 3.2 km (2 mi) and 4.6 km (2.85 mi) respectively, assuming ideal lighting conditions and that the pilot is actively scanning. Detection beyond 4.8 km (3 mi) seems unlikely. The Aerosonde is very small and would only be detected at close range of 500m (1640 ft) even under ideal conditions.

The danger of an aircraft approaching at some off-axis angle (>40º) is also clear, if human visual scanning is relied upon. Unless a pilot is actively searching for other aircraft, it is unlikely he would be looking in the right area of sky to detect the aircraft in time before it approaches to very close range. This is in fact the typical scenario in most air-to-air near misses reported, especially for GA aircraft (Hobbs, 1991). Accident investigation reports involving mid-air collisions universally acknowledge the limitations

of the 'See and Avoid" principal considered so central to manned aviation safety (TSB Report A12C0053, 2012). These limitations have been documented many times in the literature (Hobbs, 1991) as well as by the FAA (FAA AC-90-48-C, 1983).

The previous discussion assumes VMC conditions. In less than ideal weather conditions (overcast, rain, fog) visibility would be more limited so relying on visual methods (e.g. lights) to prevent collisions will not ensure safety. An alternative form of visibility enhancement in the form of instrumentation (e.g. a transponder) is needed in such non-visual conditions.

4.1.3   Night-Time Visibility

Estimates may also be made of the limits of human vision to detect another aircraft at night. The discussions which follow assume night-time VMC conditions, and that the aircraft are equipped with a standard aviation lighting system. Lack of VMC conditions (or lights) would of course render any aircraft essentially undetectable using solely visual detection methods. Note that the next section makes reference to several Canadian Aviation Regulations (CARs) related to night flying requirements and rules. For convenience, a summary of these regulations may be found in Appendix C.

4.1.3.1 <u>Detecting Aircraft at Night</u>

Assuming the aircraft is carrying a properly functioning set of navigation lights and strobes, it will be spotted at very far ranges, especially in good visibility conditions. The detection of a distant light against the background of the night sky is similar to that of spotting a star in the night sky. This is where the subject of photonics overlaps that of

astronomy. The anecdotal comment within the astronomy community is that properly dark-adapted human eyes are capable of detecting sky objects down to a magnitude of +6, though some claim as high as +8 (Clark, 2009). Here we are using the relative magnitude scale used by Astronomers since antiquity, and which was originally based on the order (or "class") in which stars appear to the naked eye as the night sky darkens after sunset. 6th magnitude stars were by definition considered the faintest observable by unaided eyesight (Keill, 1739). This magnitude scale has been expanded upwards and downwards more or less using a logarithmic scale, especially to cover the situation of very faint objects that are normally invisible to the naked human eye. This magnitude scale is interesting from an historical perspective, but for practical calculations we need to relate human eyesight capabilities to engineering units and quantities.

Fortunately, much work has been done to characterize the capabilities of the eye, especially at night, for obvious reasons of flight safety. The light intensity requirements in the aviation regulations imply a detection range of at least 3.2km (2 mi) (MacDonald & Peppler, p. 109). The ability to detect an illumination source is directly related to its contrast against the background luminance of the scene. For example, attempting to spot the light of an aircraft against a dark night is much easier than against a busy background (e.g. town/city with lights), or a night sky dominated by sky glow or a full moon. The minimum detection threshold for a human eye-sight has been studied extensively, including studies of the special situation for human pilots viewing scenes close to the ground (Federal Aviation Administration, 1997). A useful correlation has been developed for this situation versus the background luminance (B) as follows:

$$\log(Ev) = 0.64\log(B) - 5.7 \tag{4-6}$$

Where:

B = background luminance

E_v = Illumination detection threshold of Pilot's Eyes

This equation will return E_v in whatever units are used for B. Assuming the use of standard SI units for luminance (Cd/m^2), typical background luminance may be characterized as given in Table 4-1 (Halm, 1996). Note the logarithmic nature of the luminance values from dark night to clear sunlight sky.

Table 4-1: Typical Values for Background Luminance

Condition	Value	Units	E_V [Cd/m2]	Comments
Darkest Sky	400	$\mu Cd/m^2$	7.98E-10	
Typical Night Sky	1.0	mCd/m^2	1.995E-09	Argentia experimental conditions
Moonlight Scene	1.4	mCd/m^2	2.79E-09	Ground scene in full moonlight
Cloudy Sky	1	kCd/m^2	0.003990525	
Daylight Scene	5	kCd/m^2	0.009976312	Ground scene in full sunlight
Average Clear Sky	10	kCd/m^2	0.013966836	

A more general expression such as Allard's Law may be used to calculate the attenuation of a light source as it passes through the atmosphere (Friedman & Miller, p. 48):

$$E_T = \frac{Ie^{-\alpha V}}{R} \tag{4-7}$$

Where:

R = Range (m)

V = Atmospheric Visibility (same as R, but in km)

α = Attenuation factor through the atmosphere (e.g. 0.2 = 20% drop per km)

I = Power intensity of the light source

E_T = Illumination intensity at range R.

Note that for the units of E_T to be consistent, the value of R in the denominator should be in base units (i.e. meters). The V term in the exponent is the same quantity, but in units of km to match the attenuation unit (i.e. 1/km for α). The value of α is related to the propagation of light through the atmosphere, which is associated with the effective visibility. A correlation for airborne objects is given by Koshchmeider's rule (Friedman & Miller, p. 48):

$$\text{Visibility (V)} = 3/\alpha \qquad\qquad (4\text{-}8)$$

For example, if the visibility is quoted as 10 or 15 km, the corresponding attenuation (α) would be 0.3 or 0.2 (per km) respectively. This will be affected by atmospheric conditions at low altitude, especially haze, dust or precipitation. However, for typical VMC conditions near sea level, the above mentioned range (0.2-0.3) appears appropriate, especially when compared to empirical data as summarized in the U.S. Navy's R384 database (Biberman, 2001).

Using a conservative value of attenuation of 0.3, and assuming the minimum brightness requirements for the lights (i.e. 40 Cd for the navigation lights, 400 Cd for the

strobe), we may use equation 4-7 to generate a table of light intensity levels for the two classes of lights at increasing ranges, as summarized in Table 4-2. By comparing these with the estimated human eye detection thresholds as in Table 4-1, we can determine the maximum range where the lights might be seen by a human operator (i.e. pilot).

Table 4-2: Light Luminance Intensity at Increasing Visual Ranges

Range (km)	NAV LIGHTS (I = 40 Cd)	STROBE (I = 400 Cd)	Comments
1	2.963E-05	2.963E-04	
2	5.488E-06	5.488E-05	
5	3.570E-07	3.570E-06	
10	1.991E-08	1.991E-07	RED/GREEN viewed side-on
15	1.975E-09	1.975E-08	Maximum range for NAV LIGHTS (normal night) viewed head-on
17	8.438E-10	8.438E-09	
17.1	8.094E-10	8.094E-09	Maximum range for NAV LIGHTS (darkest night) viewed head-on
20	2.479E-10	2.479E-09	
20.5	2.031E-10	2.031E-09	Maximum range for STROBES (normal night)
22	1.666E-10	1.666E-09	
22.9	7.921E-11	7.921E-10	Maximum range for STROBES (darkest night)
23	7.620E-11	7.620E-10	

The comparison between the estimated human detection thresholds (Table 4-1) and calculated light intensities at increasing viewing ranges (Table 4-2) yields the following results. In the case of the NAV LIGHTS, assuming we are viewing them head-on (i.e. aircraft pointing towards us), the maximum range is estimated to be 15 km (normal night, lighter blue highlights) and as high as 17.1 km (very dark conditions, dark

blue highlights).   If viewed side-on (aircraft turned 90º, so pointing either wingtip towards us), the light intensity is approximately 1/10, so one order of magnitude lower. The maximum detection range would then be 10 km as noted by the cyan highlighting. In the case of the STROBE, which emits 10x the power of the NAV LIGHTS, the corresponding estimates are 20.5 km (normal night) to 22.9 km (dark night).

Based on these theoretical estimates, the navigation lights should be seen at 10 km, and the flashing strobe at 20.5 km in typical VMC conditions at night. At first these estimates may seem far too high. However, consider the case of an airliner as it passes overhead on a clear night at cruise altitude. Most will spot the strobe first, when the aircraft is still over the horizon, about 25 km away. When it passes directly overhead (10 km altitude) the strobes are very easy to see. Some may also note the red/green wingtip lights, but likely only when it is overhead. The intensity of the flashing strobes may however dominate the relatively weak red/green wingtip lights when viewed at extreme range.

Our observations of a hypothetical UAV light set does support the contention that the strobe is by far the most obvious light visible, and easily spotted at ranges of at least 2.6 km which was the farthest range we tested. The intensity noted even at 2.6 km suggested the range of visibility to be many times this tested range. It was also noted that the steady red/green lights tended to be overpowered by the strobe flashes even at this range. This will be discussed in detail in Section 4.2.

4.1.3.2 **Determining Orientation**[13]

At night, the ability to distinguish between the different lights on the aircraft (i.e. their separation) is required if we are to determine orientation. This is directly associated with the visual resolution limits of the human eye. Equation 4-2 may be used to estimate the apparent angular separation of these lights as point-sources, and increasing range from the viewer. Assuming no attenuation effect, we might estimate these angular size of a 3m (10 ft) wingset as summarized in Table 4-3. Note that the light experiment results mentioned in the comments are discussed in the next section.

Table 4-3: Angular Separation of Wingtip Lights at Increasing Range

Range (km)	Angular Size (Arc-min)	Comments
0.5	20.958048	Light Experiment Range B1
1	10.479024	B2
1.609	6.512755749	B3
2	5.239512	
2.4	4.36626	Worst case naked eye [i.e. Marr, 1982]
2.5	4.1916096	
2.6	4.030393846	Lookout range, also average visual acuity of 4 arc-min.
2.9	3.613456552	Best case naked eye [i.e. Wegman, 1995]
3	3.493008	
4	2.619756	
5	2.0958048	
6	1.746504	
7	1.497003429	
8	1.309878	
9	1.164336	
10	1.0479024	Limit if 1 Arcmin (not reasonable!)

---

[13] For this section, the reader unfamiliar with standard aviation light standards may wish to reference Figure C-2 in Appendix C.

Reviewing the calculations in Table 4-3, the assumption 1 arc-min resolution capability for average human visual acuity clearly does not apply for the night-time light detection task. Most certainly this limit is based on ideal (indoor) laboratory conditions, and not applicable to night. Also, in order to determine the orientation of multiple light points a minimum number of "pixels" (at least 4 using Johnson's Criteria) will be required if we are to achieve at least 75% accuracy, which suggests a much lower limit of about 4 Arcmin. The practical limit of naked eye visual acuity at night (i.e. its ability to discern very close light points in the sky) has been a concern for astronomers since antiquity. The limit for naked eyes to resolve a point source is quoted by astronomers as 0.8-1.0 arc-min (Siegal, 2010). This would mean an overall object size of 4 arc-min would be needed to distinguish two or more lights using the above Johnson's Criteria.

Similar analysis by others concerned about computer screen resolution suggests a minimum human visual limit of 3.6 arc-min (Wegman, 1995). An earlier theoretical calculation based on eye anatomy suggested a limit of 4.38 arc-min (Marr, 1982). A value of 4 arc-min therefore appears to be a very good "average" limit for normal human eyesight at night. It would of course be very informative if a human factors experiment was conducted to test these theoretical limits for human eyesight. This is the subject of the next section.

4.2   Experiments with Anti-Collision Lights

Based on the preceding theoretical discussions, the use of anti-collision lights is hypothesized to be an effective way of enhancing the visibility of small UAVs. However,

there is the question of what sort of lights and whether the geometry would make sense on a very small wingspan vehicle. Is it simply a matter of duplicating full-sized manned aircraft practise, i.e. with red/green wingtip lights and a strobe? Would they be equally effective both night and day?   At what range could a human pilot see the light-equipped UAV? In an attempt to answer these and other questions, a series of experiments and field tests were conducted[14].

4.2.1   Night-Time VFR Light Experiment

A night-time VFR light experiment was conducted in Fall 2013 to determine whether aviation-grade navigation and anti-collision lights would work on a small (3m wingspan) UAV in terms of the ability to detect the UAV and also determine its orientation.

4.2.1.1 Light System Requirements

Night-time visual flight rules (VFR) as currently implemented in Canadian Aviation Regulations are based on the premise that all aircraft will be equipped with a set of lighting equipment which meets or exceeds a set of minimum requirements. These lighting requirements (cf. Appendix C, Figure C-2) may be summarized as follows:

a) Navigation/Position Lights

Each aircraft operating at night must be equipped with a set of navigation (Position) lights as follows:

---

[14] The Interdisciplinary Committee on Ethics in Human Research (ICEHR) paperwork for the review and approval of this experiment (ICEHR Reference #2014-0493-EN) are included in Appendix F.

Red Navigational Light – on left wing tip, projecting Aviation Red over an arc from 0º (directly ahead) to 110º Counter-clockwise. The light must have a minimum intensity of 40 Candles (towards front) and 5 Candles when viewed from the left side.

Green Navigational Light – Similar to the red light, but on right wing tip, projecting Aviation Green.

White Position Light – On the tail, projecting backwards over a 140º arc. The light must have a minimum intensity of 20 Candles over the entire 140º arc.

b) Anti-Collision (Strobe) Lights

The aircraft must be equipped with an anti-collision (strobe) light system which provides 360º coverage in the horizontal plane, and +/-75º coverage in the vertical plane. Note that depending on the aircraft geometry, multiple strobes may be needed to cover the complete azimuth and elevation angular ranges described in the CARs (for details see Appendix C). The anti-collision lights may be either aviation red or aviation white lights, with an effective flash rate of between 40 and 100 per minute. The intensity of the strobe must be at least 400 Candles over the 360º horizontal plane. The intensity in the vertical direction may be dimmer, but cannot drop below 20 Candles at +/-30 to +/-75º.

4.2.1.2 Candidate LED-Based UAV Light System

A powerful, light-weight and power efficient set of lights were acquired as a possible candidate lighting system for small UAVs. The AveoFlash LSA light system, as shown in Figure 4-10, uses banks of ultra-bright LEDs to create the minimum intensity and coverage arcs for the various colours of the navigation lights.
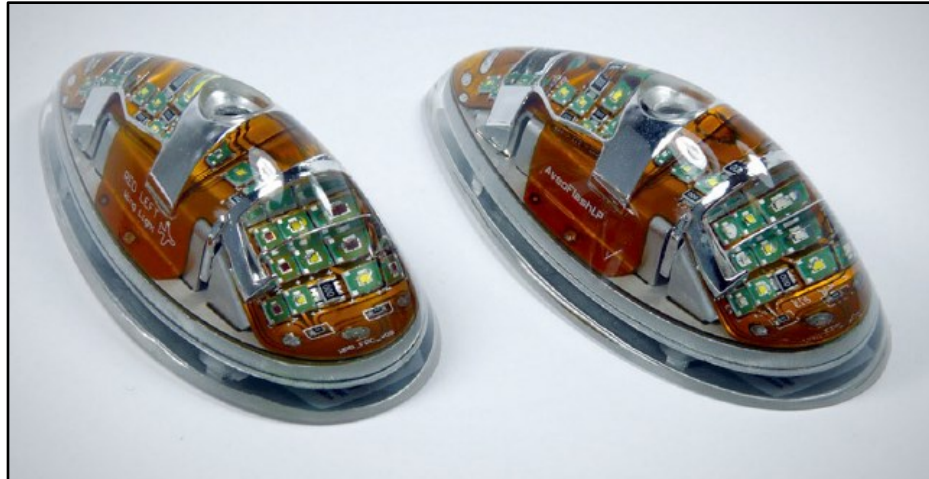
Figure 4-10: AveoFlash LSA 3-in-1 Light Set (Courtesy of Aveo Engineering)

The lights include an integrated strobe feature which provides the anti-collision function. The LED strobes are very bright, almost dangerously so, and care had to be taken to prevent eyesight damage when close to these units when they were functional. The integrated design means that the navigation and strobe light requirements can be satisfied by a pair of lights fitted on the wingtips of the UAV. The pair of lights flashes at about a 1 Hz rate, with a triple flash at each major flash interval, similar to that found on many modern manned aircraft light systems.

The lights are designed to accept a wide range of voltage inputs, with 12 VDC being nominal. Since the lights are LED-based, the power consumption was quite low, 2.2W – 5.3 W (navigation – strobe loading). The lights are compact, 100mm long x 45mm wide x 30mm high at the top of the "domed" area, and fit on the larger UAVs in the RAVEN fleet, particularly those with a flat wingtip area (Aveo Engineering, 2013).

4.2.1.3 **Light Installation and Test Stand Apparatus**

The light set was installed on the wingtips of a 3m (10ft) wing-set from a small UAV. Wires were routed inside the wing-set and terminated using plugs to allow reliable and safe connection to the power supply. A blue synchronization wire was used to connect the pair of wingtip lights together, such that the strobe flashes were synchronized.

A custom-build wooden stand was available within the project, having been constructed the year before for another purpose in the RAVEN Project. The wing set was bolted onto the central "head" section, which also featured a pivot platform with regular 22.5º interval azimuth settings pre-measured. This made the stand ideal for the light experiment. The complete wing set setup, installed and powered at the end of the main Argentia runway at dusk conditions, may be seen in Figure 4-11.

Figure 4-11: Night VFR Light Experiment Test Stand

4.2.1.4 <u>Argentia Test Range and Conditions</u>

This experiment was a human factors experiment, designed to determine the average ability of a typical human to be able to see the UAV lights, and if possible also determine its orientation based on the light distribution and visibility. The test range for the experiments was along the main runway at the abandoned U.S. Argentia Naval Station as shown in Figure 4-12. The test procedure required a clear line-of-sight between the test stand at Location A and Observation Sites at Locations B1, B2 and B3, to a maximum distance of 1609m, which made the use of a runway ideal. The site also had very little active lighting in the direction the observers would be viewing. The timing of the experiment was chosen to be during a new moon period, to ensure maximum darkness and to prevent the untimely rising of the moon which could ruin night vision. This restricted the test times to only a few "time windows" during fall of 2013.

Figure 4-12: Argentia Test Site with Test Ranges Noted

4.2.1.5 **Experimental Procedure**

With the wing-set installed on the test stand and powered, the test operator at Location A positioned the wing-set by turning it on the stand such that it presented different azimuth view angles to observers at positions B1 through B3. Eight positions were used as summarized in Table 4-4. The angles used followed the standard nautical bearing sense (i.e. clockwise is positive, counter-clockwise negative).

Table 4-4: Wing-set Azimuth Positions Tested

Code	Azimuth (deg)	Descriptions
P1	0	Aircraft Pointing towards observation post (front view)
P2	45	Aircraft turning RIGHT at 45º relative to observation post
P3	90	Aircraft turning RIGHT at 90 º relative to observation post
P4	135	Aircraft turned RIGHT and heading away from observation post at 45º
P5	180	Aircraft Pointing away from observation post (rear view)
P6	225	Aircraft turned LEFT and heading away from observation post at 45º
P7	270	Aircraft turning LEFT at 90º relative to observation post
P8	315	Aircraft turning LEFT at 45º relative to observation post

At each of the Observation locations, tests subjects were brought inside the darkened cab of a large Recreational Vehicle (RV), simulating night-time conditions in a cockpit. After allowing vision to adjust to the dark conditions, the test sequence was started. Five random positions were used for each test subject. The order was randomized, and not all azimuth cases were tested for all subjects. Repeats of test points were also possible. The idea was to present a completely random set of cases, and to

eliminate the possibility of test subjects guessing. Once each azimuth position adjustment was done, the Test Operator at A communicated to the Operator at B in the cab that the wing-set was "in position" and the subject was asked:

1) What lights can you see?
2) What is the orientation?

The correct determination of the relative direction of another aircraft at night, based on the navigation lights visible, is an obvious safety consideration. This ability is generally not an automatic one, but one learned by people in aviation or nautical fields, both of which use the same conventions for navigation lights (i.e. red = left/port, green = right/starboard). For this reason a visual aid was provided for the observers during the experiment - a small UAV model with the position of the navigation lights shown – to assist the observers.

The answers for each test subject were recorded by the Tester at location B, who also did not know the order of the positions. In this way, any possibility of bias or "hints" was reduced since neither the test subject nor Tester at B knew the real test orientations being used at A.

This procedure was repeated for all test subjects. The RV was then moved further down the runway to the next position, and the entire test sequence was repeated. This was done until all test subjects were tested at all three observation positions:

1) B1 - 500m
2) B2 - 1000m
3) B3 – 1609m

The experiment was conducted on Saturday night, 5 October, 2013. The weather at the start of the experiment was overcast, about 9ºC, with light winds (5 kts). A total of thirteen (13) human test subjects arrived. The subjects had a good spread of ages (24 – 61 years), and a 5/8 split by gender (female/male). There was a blend of members from Project RAVEN, significant others, plus a couple enlisted from the nearby community of Placentia. A total of 65 observations were made at each of the three viewing ranges.

The first observations at B1 (500m) were conducted somewhat slowly as everyone became accustomed to the test procedure. There were concerns about the late start (9:15 PM) and also the possibility of the weather deteriorating. It took a little over 1hr to conduct the first set of tests. The results of each set of recordings will be summarized in the next section. After this was completed, the RV was moved to the B2 (1000m) location.

The second set of tests started at 10:30 PM. By this time, a light drizzle had started, which hampered visibility out the window due to water droplets. However, the lights on the wing-set were still visible, especially the strobe flashes. The windshield was wiped frequently to keep the water droplets under control. However, this did cause delays and resulted in the B2 series taking much longer. The RV was then moved to the final B3 (1609m) location.

The third series was started at 12:15 AM. By this time the weather had cleared and the drizzle which plagued the 1000m series had stopped. The temperature had dipped

and there was some concern about the health of the equipment and Operator at A. However, both performed admirably, and the third set of observations were finally completed at 1:30 AM. The human subjects were dismissed and the crew began the teardown procedure at A which was completed by 2 AM.

4.2.1.6 **Analysis of the Results**

The results from the VFR Night-time Light experiment were analyzed to determine the observation accuracy for all of the observers at each sighting distance. While it is true that the sample size of the number of human subjects is small (13) the total number of observations at each viewing location (65) does permit the determination of overall trends in the results.

This first thing that was noted for all observers at all observation ranges and viewing angles was that the strobe (flashing) of the wing-set lights were always visible. This confirms the hypothesis that simply carrying a strobe, flashing at 1 Hz, immediately makes the UAV easy to be spotted. The maximum range tested during the experiment was 1609m. However, later observations from as far away as the lookout location described in Chapter 3 (over 2.6 km away), confirmed the strobe was immediately obvious at this range too. Thus, the addition of just the anti-collision strobe feature should improve the chance that the small UAV would be spotted by human pilots, at least out to a range of 2.6 km (1.6 mi).

The ability of the observers to determine the orientation of the aircraft (wing-set) was also assessed, by comparing the observed position (what each person thought they

saw) against the actual position as recorded by the Operator at position A.   To permit a numerical accuracy to be calculated, the error in the observed positions versus the actual position was calculated using these rules:

If observed position = actual, the accuracy is 100%

If observed position within +/-45º (i.e. one position step), accuracy is 75%

If observed position was off by +/-90º, accuracy is 50%

If observed position was off by +/-135º, accuracy is 25%

Worse than this was deemed to be an accuracy of 0%

The last rule represents the worst case scenario, where the observer has misinterpreted the orientation by 180º (e.g. tail-on as a head-on situation).

The accuracy results are shown in Figure 4-13 for each of the three ranges B1 (500m), B2 (1000m) and B3 (1609m) in the form of polar plots.   These summarize the observation accuracy versus the real orientation of the wing-set as represented by the Aerosonde UAV icon in the center (i.e. 0º = head-on, 90º = right side view, 180º =tail-on, etc.). A mark on the outer circle indicates 100% accuracy, while a mark at the center denotes 0% accuracy. The first three polar plots show the results sorted by gender. The lower right is summary of all three observation ranges ignoring gender, plotted together to permit a comparison.

There was almost no difference between genders in terms of observation accuracy. The head-on and tail-on orientations were the easiest ones to be determine, generally at an

accuracy of 75% or better. The most difficult positions were the 45º off-axis positions, especially those pointing away from the observer. These were the source of all of the 0% accuracy results.
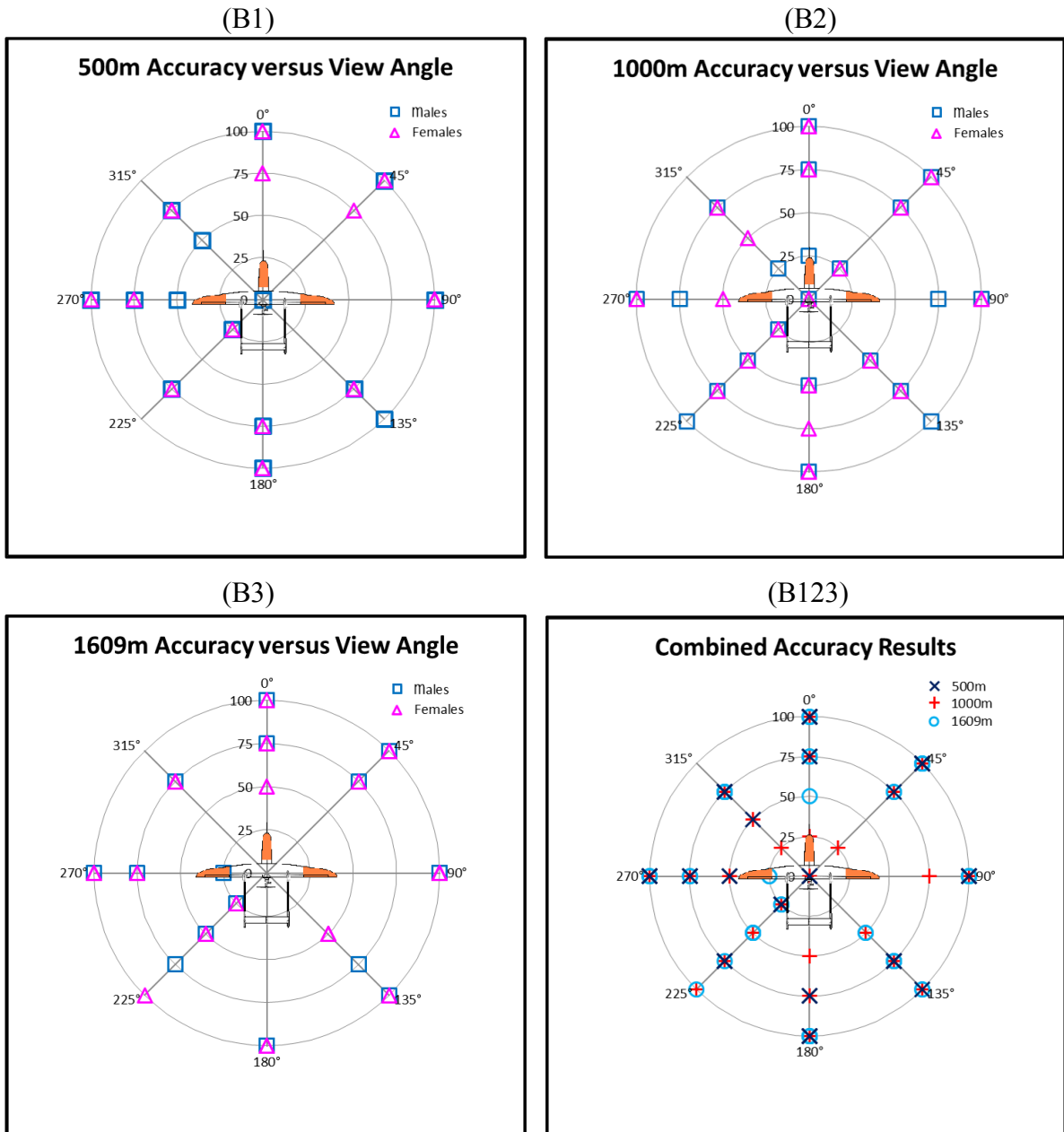
Figure 4-13: Position Interpretation Accuracy versus Viewing Angle at: (B1) 500m; (B2) 1000m; (B3) 1609m; and, (B123) Comparison of all three ranges.

The results show a degradation of observation accurate with range, which was expected. However, the degradation from 500m to 1000m is much worse than the step from 1000m to 1609m. Indeed, the results appear to improve between the second and last set of data. The drizzle during much of the 1000m observations likely deteriorated these results. However, even in the face of adverse sighting conditions (i.e. rainy weather, water on the windshield, etc.) the majority of the observations were still 50% accurate or better at 1000m.

A surprising result is that even at 1609m, a full mile away, the majority of the observations were able to distinguish the orientation of the aircraft, especially along the cardinal directions (i.e. Front/Back and Left/Right). There were a few instances of confusion over red/green versus left/right which may account for the lower accuracy at 270º azimuth (i.e. which is when the RED wing-tip was pointing towards us). Therefore, even on a very small aircraft (i.e. 3m/10ft wingspan), the red/green wingtip light method does appear to work, and the brightness and separation of the colours is still sufficient to permit orientation to be determined.

4.2.2 Extended Range Observations

Unfortunately, time did not permit a check of the light visibility at longer ranges on the same night as the VFR Night-time experiment. One month later during the next new moon period, the Night VFR experiment setup was re-assembled in Argentia to accomplish two tasks. First, still and video footage was recorded of the wing-set setup at each of the three ranges B1 through B3. The original intent was to do these recordings at

the same time as the experiment. However, concerns over the safety of the delicate video camera equipment in the wet weather (drizzle) prompted this step to be skipped. On the night of November 5th, the video recordings were conducted, though not without some equipment failures due to the cold weather, including failure of a mounting system for the hi-res video equipment which impacted the quality of the imagery obtained.

Next, the observing crew moved and re-assemble at the location of the lookout area about 2.6 km away. From this vantage point, the lights on the wing-set were immediately visible to the four people present, especially due to the distinct strobe pattern used. This was how we were first able to locate the distant wing-set stand. When the wing-set was rotated we could discern the change in orientation, but not based on the ability to see individual points of light. Instead, the orientation could be determine as the dominant colour of what appears as a fat single-point light source shifted from mostly white, red/white, red/green together, green/white, then back to white again.

The ease by which we could locate the wing-set due to the strobe is very important. We may conclude that as long as we are able to carry a strobe, it appears the UAV would be visible at night in VMC conditions, at least 2.6 km away.

4.2.3 Daytime VFR Anti-Collision Light Testing

During the set-up of the light-stand both on the day of the night-time experiment and the later set-ups for the video recordings, we were able to make observations of the lighted wing-set during bright noon-hour conditions, mid-afternoon and about 1 hour before dusk. It was noted that the coloured lights, especially the green, was very difficult

to see in full sunlight.   However, the strobe flashes were still visible. Indeed, it was usually by seeing the flashing lights that the eye was able to locate the position of the wing-set against the busy background beyond the end of the runway. Predominantly this was the ocean, and green forested terrain beyond.   The inability to see the green light made determining orientation difficult at 1000m, and impossible at 1609m.   Orientation could still be determined at 500m, by everyone in the crew (about 6 people) still located at the GCS location.

As the light conditions started to dim, by around 4PM (i.e. 1 hour before sunset), the coloured wingtip lights could now be seen quite clearly out to range of 1000m.   But determining the orientation at 1609m range was still very difficult, mostly due to sun glare on the ocean surface beyond the end of the runway.   However, just like in the results from the Night-time observations, the flashing strobe pattern could always be seen.

4.2.4   Conclusions from Anti-Collision Light Experiments

Based on the results of the Night-time VFR experiment, and additional observations both at day and night conditions, we may conclude the following concerning the use of aviation lights on a small UAV:

1. The anti-collision strobe is easily spotted, particularly at night at least to a range of 2.6 km as tested. The brilliance of the strobe even at this range suggests that the theoretical range limits calculated in Section 4.1 may be valid.
2. Determining the orientation of the small UAV appears possible out to at least 1.6 km based on the ability to see individual lights, but only during night-time VFR conditions.

3. The limit of human vision acuity to discern distinct points of light at night is estimated to be 4 arc-min. For our light set on a 3m (10ft) wing-set this corresponds to a range of about 2.6 km, where the different lights merge together to form a single point source. Our observations from 2.6 km validate this theoretical estimate.

4. The ability to see the red or green wing-tip lights in conditions of full sunlight is limited, perhaps only to a maximum range of 500m.

5. Equipping a small UAV with an anti-collision strobe should allow it to be detect at least 2.6 km away during night, and also up to 1.6km away during the day.

4.3   An Equivalent UAV Vision Capability

Assuming we wish to equip the small UAV with a machine vision system that at least matches the capabilities of a human pilot we could write the following requirements.

4.3.1   Visual Acuity

The vision system should have the following minimum visual detection capabilities:

1. Shall be able to detect a Cessna-size aircraft at a minimum range of 1609m (1 mi) assuming Daytime VMC conditions.

2. Shall be able to detect anti-collision lights in Night-time VMC conditions at a minimum of 3.2km (2 mi), and resolve wingtip navigation lights separated 3m at a range of 1.6 km.

3. Shall have an instantaneous FOV of 60º. This would be a central conical area 30º wide (15º half angle) with very high resolution equivalent to 4500 pixels wide (i.e. 15.9 million pixels in a circular region). The remaining area can be equivalent to NTSC resolution.

4.3.2   Field of View and Scanning Ability

The vision system should have the following minimum FOV and scanning abilities:

1. Shall have a minimum Field of Regard (FOR) of +/- 110º horizontal and +/-15º vertically.

2. Shall scan the entire range of azimuth and elevation angles at least once every 10 seconds.

4.3.3 Better than Human Vision Abilities

By meeting the above requirements, the UAV vision system would be equivalent to a very consistent and perceptive human pilot. However, simply matching human pilot visual capabilities is not sufficient, given the acknowledged limitations of normal human vision. A better option may be to reduce the guaranteed detection range (e.g. to 1000m) while giving the UAV the equivalent of HD resolution capability but with a full 360º FOR in the horizontal plane. A vertical FOR of +/-30º should also be possible. This could be implemented by a camera with a 60º FOV, using a fast rotating scan to sweep through 360º of azimuth. Such a vision system would exceed any human pilot in terms of situational awareness in VFR conditions, in particular the ability to detect collision threats approaching from behind.

4.4 Transponder Technologies

Transponders can be a very effective way to alert cooperative airspace users of each other's presence. The Mode-C, or altitude reporting version is the preferred type in this role, especially to prevent mid-air collisions. If the transponder is also Mode-S compliant it will also respond to TCAS interrogations. Transponders allow ATC to monitor the location of each aircraft within their control zone, assuming the transponder is

powered and within range of the search radar being used by the control tower.   Two different transponder technologies have been investigated to date in this project.

4.4.1   **Miniature Mode-S Transponders**

During flight tests of the Aerosonde Mk4.2 in 2007-2008 a small Mode-S compliant transponder was installed and flown at both Clarenville (CCZ3) and Bell Island (CCV4) Airfields.   A very light-weight transponder, the MicroAir T2000UAV-S, was available which fit easily within the Aerosonde Mk4.2.   This transponder is a UAV-specific version of the T2000-S with the pilot controls and display removed, as shown in Figure 4-14. This unit is very light (520 g), and small (approx. 134 x 61 x 61 mm). Also important was the low power consumption (200 mA at 14VDC, or 2.8W), and relatively strong signal (200W pulse).   With the removal of the pilot interface, the T2000UAV-S is designed to be controlled via remote control, through RS-232 commands on a dedicated DB25 connector (MicroAir, June 2009). The altitude reported by the transponder is set using telemetry data from the Piccolo II autopilot, communicated on the RS-232 as serial data. These features made the MicroAir an ideal transponder for use on the Aerosonde UAV.
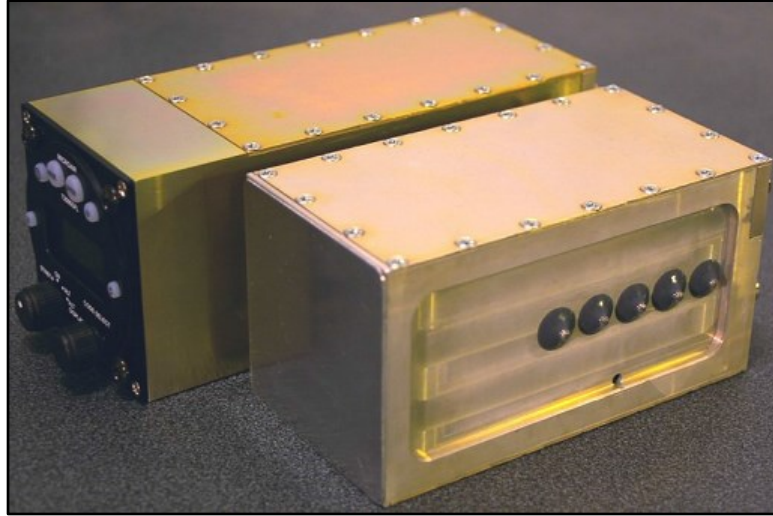
Figure 4-14: T2000-S and UAV-S Transponders (Courtesy of MicroAir Pty.)

Ground tests of the MicroAir transponder were accomplished at the PAL hanger at St. John's International Airport (CYYT), and proved that the transponder could be seen by ATC. However, it was during flight operations at Clarenville and Bell Island that the usefulness of the transponder would be seen. The T2000UAV-S is also Mode-S compliant, meaning it will respond to inquiry broadcasts from standard TCAS avionics sets currently standard equipment in all aircraft above a certain size and passenger count (FAA AC-120-55-A, 1993). During flight operations in Clarenville, one such event occurred when an Air Ambulance KingAir flew overhead. The pilot reported a traffic advisory contact in the vicinity of the Clarenville airstrip, and also its altitude, bearing and airspeed as determined by the TCAS system they were using. This occurred even though the estimated closest range to the airway they were using was at least 3 km away to the southwest. The Air Ambulance TCAS could see the Aerosonde, but ATC in Gander

could not, as we were well beyond the range of the Gander search radar, especially given the terrain between Gander and Clarenville. However Gander ATC was aware of our presence at Clarenville due to the SFOC and Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) we had filed, and advised the Air Ambulance pilot of our experimental UAV operations.

During a second series of flight tests at Bell Island on June 18, 2008, a transponder-equipped Aerosonde was flown over the airstrip, which is located on the northwest coast of the island. We were located about 2km north of the approach path to Runway 11 at St. John's International Airport, flying well below (i.e. under 365m/1200ft) so we would not conflict with air traffic on this approach vector. The weather conditions were such that this was the approach being used at around noon, when several commercial aircraft flew overhead. Each reported a TCAS traffic advisory, similar to the experience of the Air Ambulance pilot in Clarenville. Since we were monitoring using an Air band radio, a requirement since we were using an active runway on Bell Island, we were able to hear both the pilot and ATC exchanges concerning these TCAS events. One typical exchange was that of an Air Canada A319 captain:

Pilot: "Torbay tower this is AC flight xxx, reporting TCAS contact at our 11 o'clock… VERY low…around sea level…going 50 knots…..please advise…"

Tower: "…Roger AC flight xxx….that is experimental UAV flying at Bell Island runway…"

Pilot: "….Roger…didn't know these could be seen on traffic advisory…very good…it's tracking them pretty good…"

Similar exchanges were noted with a WestJet B737 and an Air Labrador Dash-8 also landing on Runway 11. What is key is all of these aircraft could see the Aerosonde on their TCAS systems, and all reported what must have appeared as a very strange contact (i.e. a 50 knot aircraft at sea level!). We can conclude that the "professional" flyers, especially the larger passenger planes which must use TCAS, are able to see our UAV if equipped with a Mode-S compliant transponder like the MicroAir T2000UAV-S, and at a significant range (i.e. at least 3 km).

4.4.2 Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast Transponders

RAVEN has also been experimenting with the use of ADS-B transponders as another method for cooperative aircraft traffic de-confliction and collision avoidance. Each ADS-B avionics set determines its own position using GPS, and broadcasts this information using 1040 or 975 MHz (these two bands are proposed for larger aircraft, or smaller types which fly below 6000 m (18,000 ft), respectively). All ADS-B receivers in range are therefore able to determine the location of all other similarly-equipped aircraft. It is proposed in the U.S. to replace the present transponder-based air traffic control system with the ADS-B based method by 2020 (Federal Aviation Administration (FAA), 2010). The ADS-B system also allows other information to be received, including weather, terrain, NOTAM/Advisory information and also position information sent by ATC for aircraft whose location is known via other means (e.g. traditional transponders or search radars). This last data-fusion capability remains an active research area in the follow-on research activities after Project RAVEN.

Air-band Radios

A technology that has overlooked for UAVs is the provision of a two-way radio communication capability. For manned aircraft, two-way radio communications with other aircraft, and between aircraft and ATC, are major contributors to the situational awareness of each pilot who share the same radio channels. The ability to be able to hear status and position reports, and also the stated intentions of each pilot, especially close to busy airports, is cited in VFR and IFR regulations as a major requirement and is a contributor to the overall flight safety regime (MacDonald & Peppler, 2000). The inability of pilots to communicate with the "blind and dumb" UAV is a common complaint against them (Kirkby, 2006).

It is proposed that all UAVs should be given the ability to communicate their status and intentions to other users of the airspace, and ATC, in a manner exactly like the regular radio calls that are the standard practise in manned aviation (RMC Inc.). This capability could take the form of the UAV acting as a relay station to the GCS. The AVO would then assume the role of the manned pilot, communicating with ATC and the other aircraft using the same standard language and following standard radio call procedures. If this method is used, every AVO would have to be trained and certified in the use of aviation air-band radios, or hold the equivalent of a GA pilot license (MacDonald & Peppler, p. 217).

An alternative form of this communication capability could be an autonomous two-way communication channel centered on the UAV. The UAV could be programmed

to respond automatically when it detects another aircraft in the vicinity, or if it detects it has entered a controlled airspace zone. The automatic response could be triggered by a TCAS or ADS-B query, radar/transponder sweeps, or when the channel detects a message directed at itself (i.e. assuming the use of a unique call sign similar to manned aircraft). This would require some form of speech recognition and artificial intelligence to ensure the UAV "voice" responds properly.   This autonomous mode would be most effective when the UAV is flying in very remote locations outside the range of any GCS.

4.6   **Summary: Impact of Visibility Enhancements on Safety**

Without some form of visibility enhancements, it is unlikely that small UAVs would be visible to manned aircraft at anywhere near the normal sighting distances implied in aviation regulations. Theoretical estimates suggest that a small UAV such as the Aerosonde is unlikely to be spotted until it is less than 500m away under ideal daylight lighting conditions.

With the addition of an anti-collision strobe, night-time visibility should improve when VFR conditions prevail. Based on night-time observations, the strobe should be visible at 2.6 km range or more. During daylight conditions, observations indicate the strobe would still be visible up to 1.6 km away.   Therefore, the Estimated Level of Safety of the small UAV could be improved simply by it carrying a set of aviation-grade lights, in particular an anti-collision strobe. This would improve the chances that a manned aircraft might spot the small UAV with sufficient warning to avoid traffic conflicts and

174

reduce the probability of a mid-air collision. This would apply whether or not the other aircraft is co-operative (i.e. using a transponder), but only in visual flying conditions.

If the small UAV is equipped with a small Mode-S Transponder (i.e. one compliant with TCAS interrogation protocols), it will become visible to both ATC and any aircraft nearby equipped with TCAS. The range of detection has been demonstrated to be a minimum of 3 km. The range for detection by ATC has not been measured rigorously but should be at least this range or better, especially given the improved sensitivity of the ground-based receive antennas used by the control towers at major airports. ADS-B may have a similar effect, but only in a cooperative DSA environment. Unlike the light system, these transponder-based enhancements will work in non-visual (IFR) conditions. If combined with the TCAS functionality, detection of the small UAV should be automatic at the 3 km range. This would greatly reduce the risk of mid-air collision, especially in controlled airspace.

Equipping the small UAV with a two-way radio would be a simple but important enhancement to safety, simply by enhancing the situational awareness of all pilots and ATC in the area of the UAV presence and intentions. This may also have the beneficial impact of improving the perception of the UAV amongst pilots, who might start to regard the UAV as a cooperative member of the airspace community.

Chapter 5 4D Simulations and Avoidance Maneuvers

The topic of DSA related to UAVs naturally leads to the subject of 4D maneuvers. 4D maneuvers refer to two UAVs which are synchronized in both space and time in such a way that they encounter each other (i.e. 3D space plus time or 4D). The ability to create a rich set of repeatable 4D maneuvers is crucial for enabling the collection of realistic air-to-air data which may be used to develop DSA sensors and strategies. They are also a means to conduct validation testing of any hypothetical DSA method. But setting up 4D encounters is not easy. In this chapter a simulation environment will be described which may be used to develop 4D maneuver flight-plans and DSA before committing to expensive field testing until confident they will work. A discussion of typical 4D maneuvers will follow, including an introduction to an improved 4D maneuver method. Finally, assuming a collision threat is detected, what avoidance maneuvers are possible for either the manned aircraft or small UAV? Is such an avoidance maneuver the best option and what form should it take?

5.1 4D Encounter Simulation Environment

An aerodynamic simulation environment has been developed which permits the simulation of dual-UAV encounter scenarios in real-time. This section will describe in detail how this simulation was developed, the mathematical basis for the simulation and the enhanced features recently added to support 4D simulations.

5.1.1 Historical Background

The current simulation environment is the result of over 8 years of development. The simulation has evolved greatly and has been used for many different purposes. It was originally developed as a mission simulation and planning tool to simulate typical ship inspection scenarios by small UAVs in the Newfoundland offshore environment (2005-2006). The simulation started as an enhancement of a demo simulation included in the original AeroSIM toolkit for MATLAB/Simulink (Unmanned Dynamics, 2006). The original visualization method used the Microsoft Flight Simulator 2004. However, poor real-time performance and the closed nature of this commercial product limited the possibilities of customizing the simulation. The visualization method was switched to FlightGear (FG), a free open-source flight simulator. A key feature of FG was that it permitted the use of an external simulation to drive the Flight Dynamics Model (FDM). Even at this early stage of development, the MATLAB/Simulink simulation was able to drive the FG visual display on the same computer, as shown in Figure 5-1, with reasonable performance. This method could also be used to send FDM across the internet to a remote PC running the visualization tool (FG). The simulation also included a rudimentary autopilot simulation which could control the UAV heading, speed and airspeed. This was used to simulate typical off-shore inspection maneuvers, involving orbiting a moving ground target (i.e. ship) at typical distances of 300-500 m.
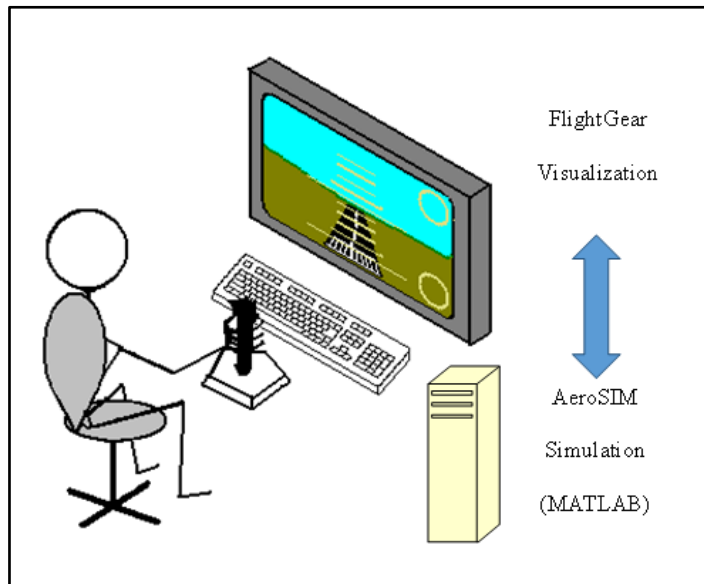
Figure 5-1: MATLAB Simulation and FG Visualization on the same Computer

The simulation was upgraded and used to assist in the development of Automated Takeoff and Landing (ATOL) control algorithms from 2006 to 2008. ATOL scenarios were developed for the Aerosonde Mk4.2 and the GiantStik at the Clarenville Airfield (CCZ3). This simulation included a model of the Piccolo II Autopilot and also featured manual override pilot controls using either a joystick or R/C controller. Custom ATOL control algorithms were added to the waypoint following methods used on the Piccolo II and used to simulate automated landing approaches. This representation of the autopilot and manual controls are still present in the current 4D Simulation. From 2008 to 2010 the simulation was used to develop the initial autopilot gains for various R/C aircraft to allow them to be converted into small UAVs.

Finally, following a three year hiatus, the ATOL simulations were revived and used as the basis for the development of the current 4D Simulation. The Multi-player

feature in FlightGear was used to support the simulation of multiple aircraft in the same airspace. This final form of the simulation is the basis of the 4D Simulation Environment.

5.1.2 Simulation Structure

The basic structure of the AeroSIM-based simulation may be seen in Figure 5-2, which shows the top level of the Simulink model.
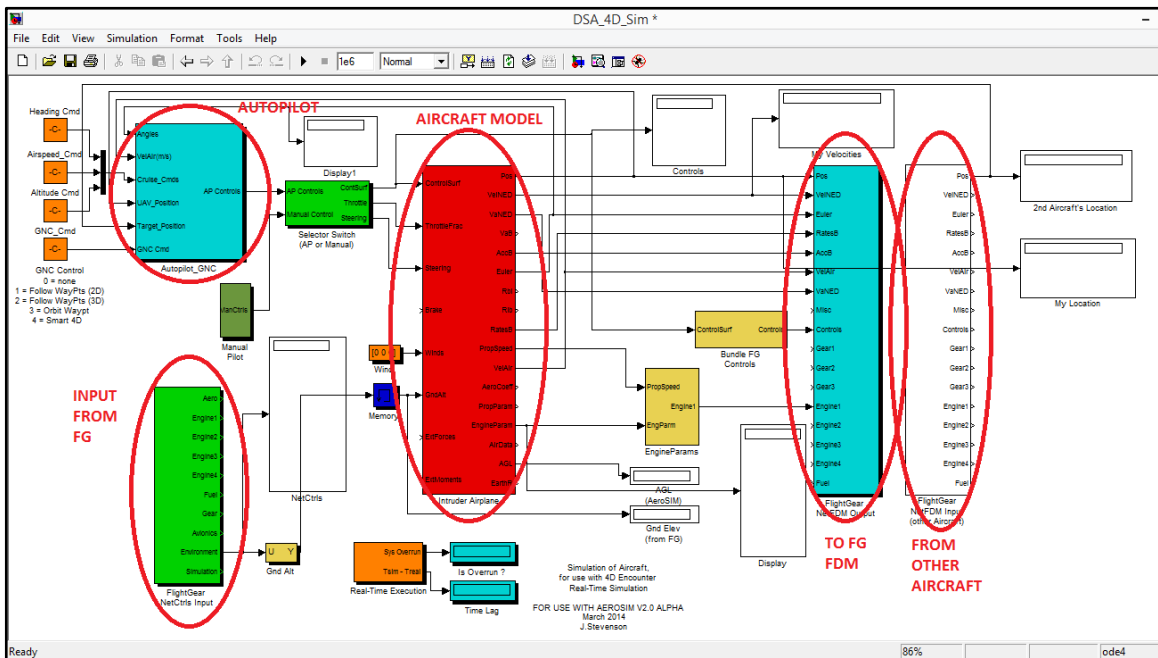
Figure 5-2: AeroSIM Simulation Top-Level in Simulink

The major sub-systems of the simulation are:

Aircraft Model - The core of the simulation is an aerodynamic simulation of a small airframe in MATLAB/Simulink, built using the AeroSIM toolkit, developed by Unmanned Dynamics Inc. (Unmanned Dynamics, 2006). Note that this is not the same as the Aerospace toolkit included in some MATLAB installations. This built-in aerospace library is more suitable for larger airframes, and is optimized for controls development

179

work. The AeroSIM library from Unmanned Dynamics was developed specifically to allow the simulation of smaller aircraft, in particular UAVs like the Aerosonde or small R/C type aircraft (Unmanned Dynamics, 2006).   The mathematical basis of this aircraft model is provided in the next section.

Autopilot - This is a representation of the Piccolo II autopilot, which will be described only at a very high level here. A detailed description is provided in Appendix E. Outer Loop control loops are used to calculate speed, heading and altitude commands. The nominal waypoint following method defines these based on the range and distance to the next waypoint.   Additional modes include waypoint orbit and simulated active guidance to a target. The Outer Loop commands are used to drive a set of Inner Loops. These Inner Loops are PID-based control loops which control the pitch, yaw, roll, altitude and velocity needed to achieve the Outer Loop commands, by manipulating the flight surfaces (elevator, aileron, rudder and flaps) and engine throttle settings. The outputs from the Autopilot are feed to the Aircraft Model block which includes detailed models of the effects from the flight surfaces and throttle setting. The manual control overrides are located just underneath the Autopilot and are direct inputs of the flight surfaces and throttle settings, which may come from a standard R/C controller or a joystick.

Inputs from FG − This is an AeroSIM interface module which allows the interception of FG output information. This is used in the current simulation to return the ground altitude obtained from the FG terrain mesh.   This is used for ATOL control modes.

Outputs to FG – This is the AeroSIM interface module which outputs the current aircraft state. This information is used to drive the FDM in FlightGear, and thus provide the visualization of the UAV.

Input from Other Aircraft – This was added to the 4D Simulation, and mimics the function of DSA sensor such as an ADS-B avionics box. The position of the other aircraft (latitude, longitude and altitude) in the multiplayer simulation is input to the simulation through this interface block. This has been used to simulate a basic DSA capability, namely the ability to detect the position of another aircraft. This can be used to drive either pursuit or avoidance behaviour by the aircraft.

The Aircraft Flight Dynamics Model (FDM) is the Plant block in a classical feedback control system. The Autopilot simulation serves as the controller. Shown schematically, the complete UAV simulation then becomes a feedback system of the form shown in Figure 5-3. It is important to note that the output to and input from FG are used solely to drive the visualization tool (FG) and do not directly affect the physical simulation of the aircraft motion. The only exception is the autopilot Guidance, Navigation and Control (GNC) program which may react to position information from another FG instance, assuming this GNC is activated and programmed.
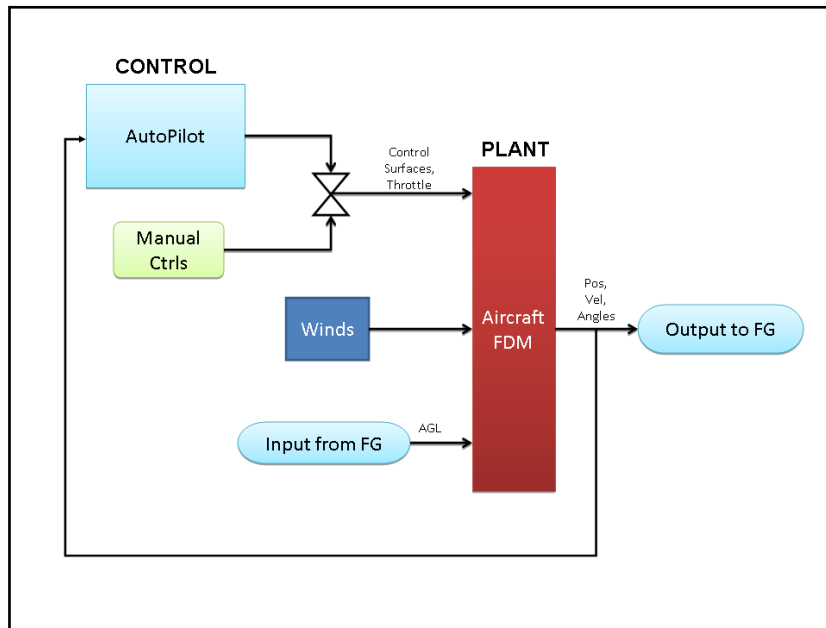
Figure 5-3: Schematic diagram of 4D Simulation

5.1.3 Mathematical Basis of the Aircraft FDM

The AeroSIM aircraft block is an implementation of a six° of freedom (6-DOF) Flight Dynamics Model (FDM). Consider the typical diagram of an aircraft such as shown in Figure 5-4 which shows the three principal position axis: Longitudinal (X), Lateral (Y) and vertical (Z), and the three corresponding angles around each axis, namely the Roll (φ), Pitch (θ) and Yaw (ψ). The positive directions of the angles and the axis are chosen using a right-handed Cartesian axes system, identical to what is used in AeroSIM. While it might seem odd that +Z is pointing downwards, this establishes positive yaw as clockwise (i.e. right turn) as viewed from above, giving increasing heading nautical heading angles. Likewise, the directions of positive roll and pitch are the normal directions (i.e. positive is right, positive pitch is up, etc.).
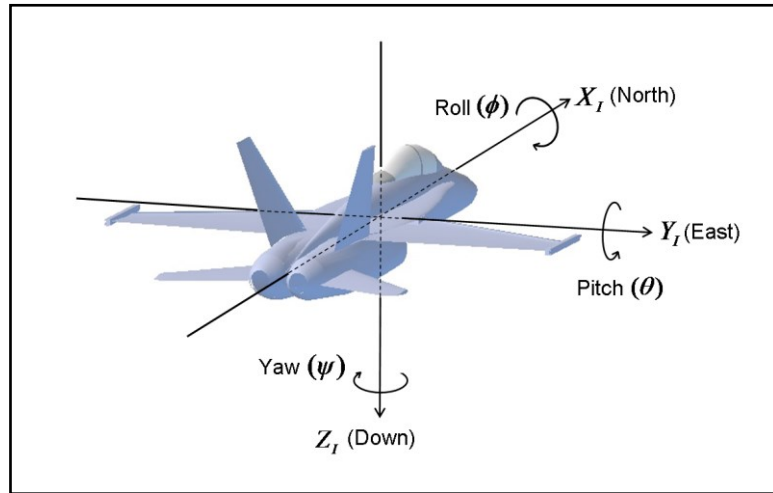
Figure 5-4: 6-DOF Diagram of Aircraft
Courtesy of CH Robotics (CH Robotics, 2013)

The FDM of an aircraft can be represented as a system of first order non-linear differential equations (Cook M. V., 2007). The simulation results are calculated by solving these for all the state variables with respect to time. Traditionally, this system of equations is established based on body coordinates. Response in other coordinate systems of interest can be obtained by transformation matrices (e.g. by using a Direction Cosine Matrix, or DCM). The 6-DOF flight model consists of six fundamental state variables: u v w (body velocities), and p q r (body angular velocities). Aircraft properties include the aircraft's mass and moments of inertia about its Center of Gravity (CG). The complete definition of the moment of inertia about all three axes is a 3x3 matrix:

$$I = \begin{pmatrix} Ix & -Ixy & -Ixz \\ -Iyx & Iy & -Iyz \\ -Izx & -Izy & Iz \end{pmatrix} \tag{5-1}$$

183

The signs are used to preserve the right-hand coordinate system centered on the aircraft CG. For most aircraft, symmetry and uniform distribution of mass about the x-z plane can be assumed, so the products of inertia may be assumed to be zero (i.e. Ixy = Iyx = Izy = Iyz = 0). Since Ixz and Izx are generally very small for a symmetrical body, we may also assume that Ixz = Izx = 0. The linear accelerations along the three principle axes can be expressed as follows (Cook M. V., 2007):

$$\dot{u} = rv - qw + \sum Fx/m \tag{5-2}$$

$$\dot{v} = pw - ru + \sum Fy/m \tag{5-3}$$

$$\dot{w} = qu - pv + \sum Fz/m \tag{5-4}$$

Where u, v and w are the linear velocities along the x, y and z axes. Likewise, r, p, q are angular velocities about the x, y and z axes. Fx, Fy, and Fz are total forces along each axis. m is the mass of the vehicle. In the AeroSIM model, mass is calculated at each time step, starting with the empty mass plus the current mass of the fuel tank. As fuel is consumed, the mass of the fuel tank and the overall vehicle mass will decrease. There will also be a slight shift of the CG position fore or aft, depending on where the fuel tank position is defined. Note that this only applies to fuel-driven aircraft. For electric-powered aircraft, mass is held constant, and these adjustments are un-necessary.

The angular accelerations about the three axes can be expressed as (Cook M. V., 2007):

$$\dot{p} = [\sum Mx + (Iy - Iz)qr]/Ix \tag{5-5}$$

$$\dot{q} = [\sum My + (Ix - Iz)pr]/Iy \tag{5-6}$$

$$\dot{r} = [\textstyle\sum Mz + (Ix - Iy)pq]/Iz \tag{5-7}$$

The moment terms take into account the instantaneous sums of these moments about the aircraft CG in all three axes. This includes the effect of the aerodynamic loadings on the various parts of the aircraft, in particular the main wing, fuselage and tail surfaces. In all cases standard non-dimensional aerodynamic coefficients, in particular the Lift (CL), Drag (CD) and Moment Coefficients (Cm) are calculated as functions of the appropriate angles. All three angular conditions are considered, and not just pitch. The effect of roll, pitch and yawing moments are calculated from the appropriate moment coefficients based on how the body is moving through the airstream (i.e. the actual body angles versus perfect alignment with the free stream velocity). The effect of the control surfaces are included as deltas on these nominal moment coefficients, which generally increase as a function of how far the control surface has rotated. The effect of the throttle setting is also included, and is used to set the propeller rotational speed. Propeller speed ultimately translates into a thrust, primarily along the longitudinal axis of the aircraft and thus mostly affecting the Fx term in equation 5-2. The effect of off-axis and side-thrust are included, to account for off-axis propeller line of force, which is common in single engine propeller aircraft.

The rates of change of the roll, pitch and yaw angles may be calculated as follows (Mathworks, 2007):

$$\dot{\phi} = p + (q \sin \phi + r \cos\phi)\sin\theta/\cos\theta \tag{5-8}$$

$$\dot{\theta} = q \cos \phi - r \sin\phi \tag{5-9}$$

$$\dot{\psi} = (q \sin \phi + r \cos\phi)/\cos\theta \tag{5-10}$$

To relate body velocities to the equivalent quantities using a fixed-Earth frame of reference requires a transformation (i.e. body axis to Earth-reference frame). This transformation is achieved by multiplying by the inverse of the DCM as follows (Cook M. V., 2007):

$$\begin{pmatrix} \dot{X}e \\ \dot{Y}e \\ \dot{Z}e \end{pmatrix} = DCM^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix} \tag{5-11}$$

Where Xe, Ye, and Ze are the corresponding positions in the earth-fixed reference frame, and:

$$DCM^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} cos\psi cos\theta & cos\psi sin\theta sin\phi - sin\psi cos\phi & cos\psi sin\theta cos\phi + sin\psi sin\phi \\ sin\psi cos\theta & sin\psi sin\theta sin\phi + cos\psi cos\phi & sin\psi sin\theta cos\phi - cos\psi sin\phi \\ -sin\theta & cos\theta sin\phi & cos\theta cos\phi \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\tag{5-12}$$

The earth-fixed reference position rates of change may therefore be calculated as:

$$\dot{X}e = u\,cos\psi cos\theta + v\,(cos\psi sin\theta sin\phi - sin\psi cos\phi) + w\,(cos\psi sin\theta cos\phi + sin\psi sin\phi) \tag{5-13}$$

$$\dot{Y}e = u\,sin\psi cos\theta + v\,(sin\psi sin\theta sin\phi + cos\psi cos\phi) + w\,(sin\psi sin\theta cos\phi - cos\psi sin\phi) \tag{5-14}$$

$$\dot{Z}e = -u\,sin\theta + v\,cos\theta sin\phi + w\,cos\theta cos\phi \tag{5-15}$$

The AeroSIM aircraft block provides a numerical solution method (in Simulink) which uses these equations to perform integrations in time. Equations 5-2 through 5-4 are used to determine the linear accelerations, and from these the linear body velocities u, v, and w. Similarly, Equations 5-5 through 5-7 are used to calculate the angular

186

accelerations which are integrated to determine p, q and r.   The change of the body

angles are then calculated using equations 5-8 through 5-10. Equations 5-13 through 5-15

are used to calculate the corresponding change in the aircraft position in terms of the

fixed-earth.

Once the body velocities are known, the angle of attack α, and side-slip angle β,

both which are critical to determining the aerodynamic coefficients, may be determined

from basic trigonometry:

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{w}{u} \qquad\qquad\qquad (5\text{-}16)$$

$$\sin \beta = \frac{v}{\sqrt{u^2+v^2+w^2}} \qquad\qquad\qquad (5\text{-}17)$$

Simulink integrates the FDM mathematics for each time step, marching forward in

time. The size of this time step is critical, as it needs to be fine enough for numerical

stability. However, if the time step is too small, the ability to simulate the aircraft in real-

time is limited. For the small UAVs being simulated in this project, a base time step of

10 ms using the Runge-Kutta (ode4) integration method gave a good compromise

between simulation stability and accuracy while still allowing the simulation to run in

real-time.

5.1.4   4D Encounter Simulations using Multiplayer

The multiplayer feature built-in to FlightGear was intended to allow users to

experience the realism of flying an aircraft in an environment shared by other aircraft

(FlightGear, 2010). The FlightGear multiplayer method uses internet protocol ports to

output the local aircraft FDM data to a remote server. A corresponding input port is used

to accept FDM data for any other aircraft in the local area of the user's aircraft. FG has limits on what will be displayed based on range, centered on the current view. Usually this is the forward cockpit view, but could also be a tower view or other external view like a chase plane view, all which are typically near the local aircraft. The range limit for most aircraft in FG is 5000m (5 km), though this is also user-configurable in each aircraft definition file. Several international server sites have been created to support the FG Multiplayer mode.

Given the open source nature of FG, it was determined that any computer could be used as a server, requiring only that the internet protocol (IP) address be known by the other computer(s). An experiment was conducted where the server address for computer 1 was defined as that of a second nearby computer 2. Likewise, the server address for computer 2 was set to that of computer 1. Once the right port numbers were assigned the experiment was successful and the two aircraft could see each other. The external views on both FG instances also showed both aircraft existing simultaneously on each of the FG visualizations.

Each computer was then setup to host one instance of the MATLAB simulation, and a local instance of FG as the visualization tool. This created a dual-computer 4D simulation environment as shown in Figure 5-5.
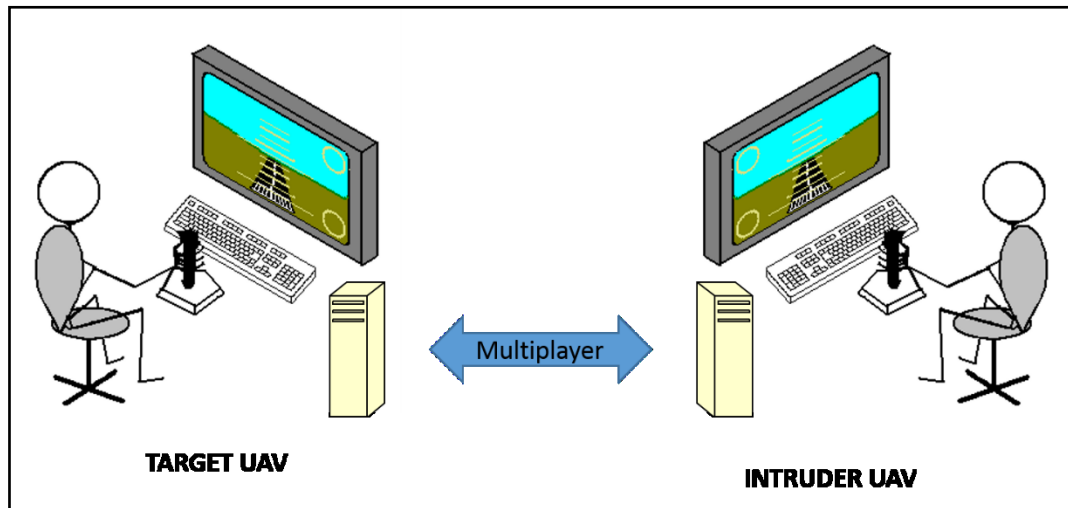
Figure 5-5: Multiplayer-based 4D Simulation Environment

The UDP port numbers and IP addresses for each computer become the corresponding remote settings for the other computer. For example, assuming the Target PC has an address of 192.168.2.11 while the Intruder PC has an address of 192.168.2.12, the Multiplayer settings for each computer then become as shown in Table 5-1.

Table 5-1: FlightGear Multiplayer Internet Settings

Computer	Local IP Address	Multiplayer Server IP	INPUT PORT	OUTPUT PORT
Target UAV	192.168.2.11	192.168.2.12	5510	5520
Intruder UAV	192.168.2.12	192.168.2.11	5520	5510

The FG multiplayer mode provides a stable simulation assuming a good internet connection is maintained. This works across any two computers located anywhere in the world with an internet connection. The method also works for laptops using a wireless connection. However, connection problems were encountered when attempting to drive

the simulation on remote PCs where one was protected behind a network firewall. As long as reasonably powerful computers are used, the simulations run in real-time.[15] The 4D simulation environment provides a compelling visual test environment as shown in Figure 5-6. In this example, an Aerosonde UAV has just crossed in front of the first aircraft, travelling from right to left. This environment was used to develop typical 4D encounter maneuvers as discussed in the next section.

Figure 5-6: Screen Capture of a typical simulated 4D Encounter

---

[15] This simulation is fairly math-intensive. While a desktop or laptop can be used, The PC hardware must be able to run both FlightGear and MATLAB simultaneously. For this reason the minimum processor should be a Centrino Duo or better, although an i5 or better is preferred. The PC should also have a good amount of memory (1GB minimum for WinXp based, 4GB minimum for Windows 7). The PC must also have good graphics capability to support the FlightGear visualization tool at high-resolution (i.e. minimum of 1080x768, although 1280 x 800 is preferred).

5.2 Development of 4D Encounter Geometries

The creation of repeatable 4D encounter geometries is of obvious interest and importance to anyone involved in the development of DSA technologies. In spite of the concerns regarding the UAV as a collision threat, deliberately creating the hazardous situation of one aircraft being on a collision course with another at a variety of encounter angles, is not a trivial task.

5.2.1 Opposing Circuits

One of the simplest methods used to create 4D encounter scenarios, and a method commonly used within Project RAVEN, is to use opposing circuits. This was the method used during the ADS-B testing described in Chapter 4. In this method, one aircraft is flown in a typical circuit, such that it flies down the center line of the runway once per circuit. This is easily accomplished using a basic 4-waypoint autopilot flight-plan as shown in Figure 5-7 in BLUE (i.e. ABCD). A second aircraft is now added, flying a similar circuit but in the opposite direction (i.e. BADC) as shown in RED. Note that an alternative method could be to define the second circuit as illustrated in GREEN. However, assuming the manual pilots and GCS are located at the bottom edge of the runway as noted, this GREEN flight-plan would involve one of the aircraft flying behind the GCS every circuit. This is not normally done as it could pose a safety hazard. The requirement that one of the manual pilots must now "pirouette" during every circuit also becomes very tiresome. For these reasons the RED and BLUE patterns are more typically used.

As suggested in the figure, the second circuit waypoints are offset slightly. A difference in altitude of 10-20m (30-60ft) is also used as a safety measure. The idea is to setup an encounter situation but not an actual collision. The geometry is ideally set such that the aircraft encounter each other close to the center point of the runway. Note that a second encounter opportunity also exists between C and D.
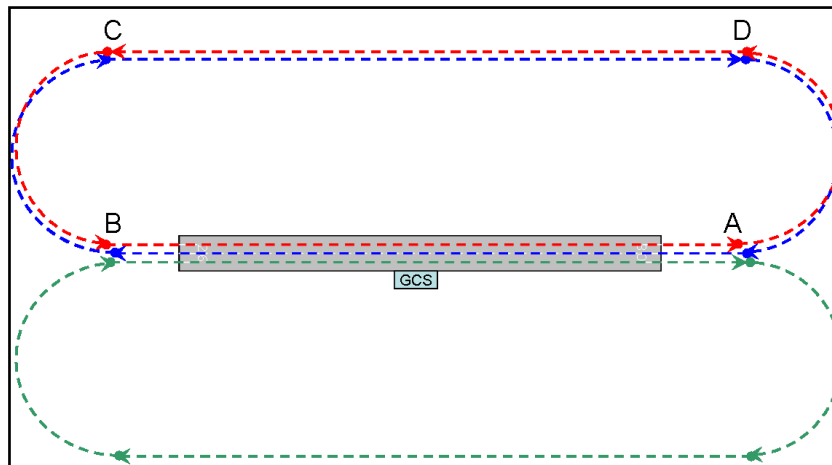
Figure 5-7: 4D Opposing Circuits (Ideal Case)

Even with this simple geometry, getting two aircraft to encounter each other at a desired location still requires careful timing and coordination by the manual pilots and the AVO at the GCS. Typically, one aircraft at a time is launched and flown manually, establishing a circuit close to the planned waypoint pattern, and it is then switched to AP mode. Once the first aircraft is stable and flying this flight-plan for a few circuits, the second aircraft is launched, again under manual control. The same flight-plan is used by the second aircraft, but in reverse order. The second aircraft is flown manually such that it is approaching Waypoint B (from the left) about when the first aircraft is about to fly

through A (from the right). At this point, the second aircraft is switched to AP mode, and hopefully will now fly towards A. If timed correctly, the two Aircraft will encounter each other in a head-on situation, about half-way down the runway.

In practical field tests using this method, the limitations of the opposing circuit strategy may be seen. Besides the obvious need for very precise timing, which will not be as straight forward in practical real flight conditions, there is the issue of winds, which have been ignored until now. With real aircraft flights, winds are shown to cause the flight plans to shift from the ideal situation implied in Figure 5-7. Even if assuming the ideal case of the wind direction coming straight down the runway (i.e. no cross-wind) one of the aircraft will encounter a head-wind, while for the other aircraft this will be a tail-wind. One aircraft will see a sudden increase in airspeed when it turns to fly down the runway and its altitude will tend to "balloon" or rise. The AP will of course try to correct this, but not completely before the encounter occurs. Similarly, for the other aircraft there will be a sudden decrease in airspeed, and its altitude will tend to drop.

In the more typical cross-wind situation, the heading corrections for the two aircraft will also not be the same, to the point where the flight-plans for each will become distorted. The typical effects on a simple 4-waypoint flight-plan in real flying conditions can be seen in Figure 5-8, which is a screen capture from the GCS during the Fox Island mission discussed in Section 3.4. The track record is shown in dark blue. The distortion effects will be quite different between the predominantly "up-wind" and "down-wind" aircraft.
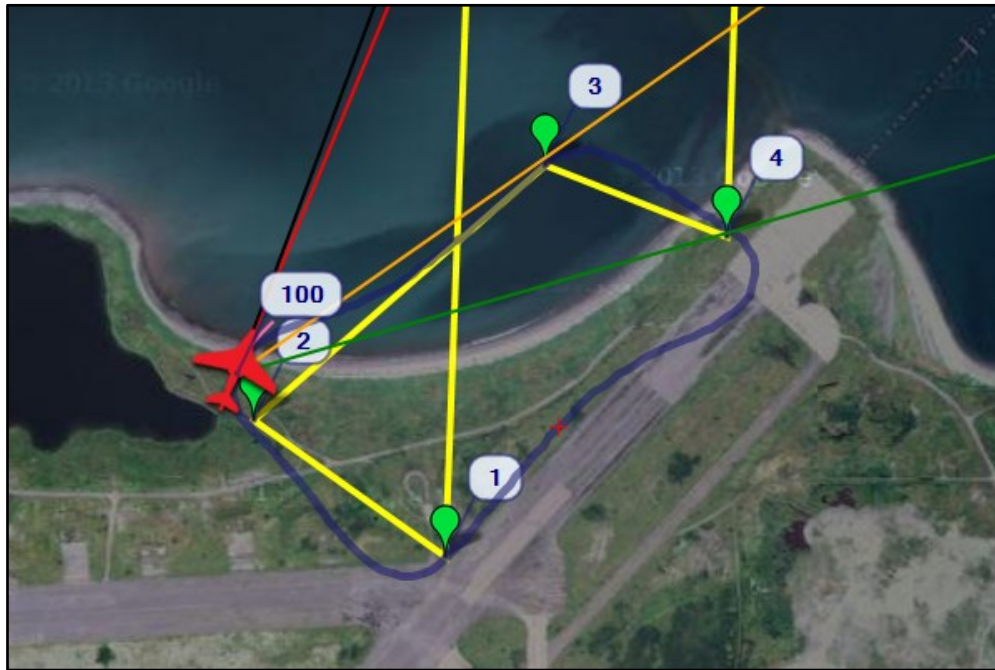
Figure 5-8: UAV Circuit in Real-World (Windy) Conditions

The "ballooning" effect of one of the aircraft and the altitude drop of the other aircraft may also set up a situation where altitude separation, defined as a safety measure, could become compromised. The accuracy of the airspeed and altitude sensors may also be questioned, especially in the presence of sudden shifts in the wind direction caused by the aircraft making essentially 90º turns at each waypoint. Airspeeds errors of up to 10 knots (5m/s) have been noted during GiantStik flights. Altitude errors of up to 50 feet (17m) are typical. The airspeed and altitude errors conspire to prevent the type of precision 4D flying depicted in Figure 5-7, to the point where the safe and reliable establishment of a 4D encounter is impossible.

5.2.2   **Time-Synchronization Methods**

Attempts have also been made to develop 4D algorithms which automatically adjust for a common time of arrival of two aircraft at a defined 3D point in space. A small distance error, usually a difference in altitudes, is used to prevent a mid-air collision from occurring while still creating a close encounter and allowing the collection of sensor data for a typical near-miss scenario.   The development history of this activity within Project RAVEN is summarized in a recent report (Fang, 2014). This section will outline the final form of the 4D Synchronization algorithm that was developed and tested.

The time synchronization technique uses custom software which monitors the location of two UAVs, each controlled by its own GCS, as shown in Figure 5-9.
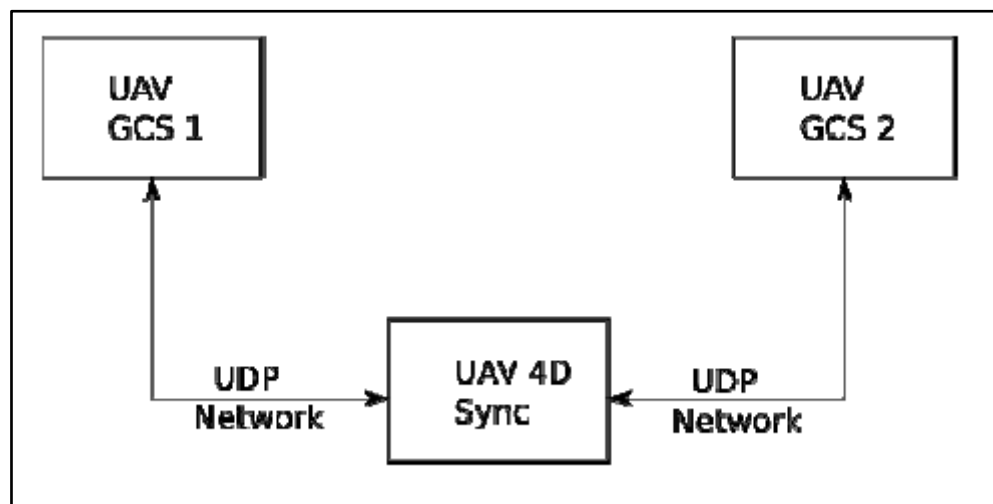
Figure 5-9: 4D Time Synchronization System Schematic

The 4D Sync software communicates with each of the two GCSs, analyzes the telemetry data from the UAVs, and calculates adjustments needed to the flight plans with the aim to establish 4D time synchronization. Synchronization commands in the form of

alterations to the flight plan for UAV2 are then sent back to its GCS which then communicates an automatic update to the corresponding UAV autopilot.

Several different 4D synchronization schemes have been tried, and the basic design has evolved considerably from 2009-2013. The algorithm that has shown most promise, and has been flight tested, is illustrated in Figure 5-10.
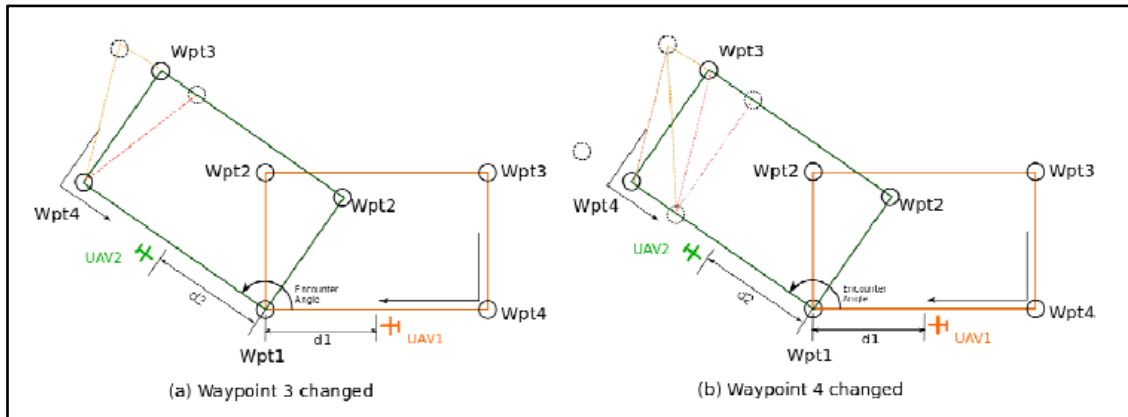
Figure 5-10: Waypoint Adjustments to Synchronize (Fang, 2014)

As shown in Figure 5-10, each UAV is programmed to fly a rectangular flight plan with four waypoints (Wpt1 through Wpt4). The UAV1 flight plan is shown Orange while the UAV2 flight plan is Green. In this example, the circuits of the UAVs are in opposite direction (i.e. UAV1 clockwise, UAV2 counter-clockwise) and share a common waypoint (Wpt1). This waypoint is the planned interception position and has an identical horizontal (XY) position but a small (i.e. typically 10-15 m) offset in altitude (Z) to prevent a collision. The flight plan of UAV2 is rotated at the desired encounter angle at this waypoint (e.g. in this example, UAV2 approaching UAV1 from the front right at 45º angle, for an encounter angle of 135º).

The 4D synchronization algorithm leaves the UAV1 flight plan unchanged, and makes automatic adjustments to the UAV2 flight plan in real time.   The goal is to minimize the distance error (d1-d2) as the two aircraft are both approaching Wpt1. When this distance error is tuned to zero, 4D synchronization is achieved. The algorithm first adjusts the airspeed of UAV2 in an attempt to synchronize to a common time of arrival at Wpt1. However, the range of safe airspeed adjustments and the rate by which they will have the desired effect on the UAV is limited, especially when real-world flight conditions (winds) are considered. Once these limits are reached, the algorithm then uses adjustments to the UAV2 flight plan, by making adjustments to the location of Wpt3 as shown in Figure 5-10 (a). Moving Wpt3 inwards (toward the lower right) will decrease the time needed for UAV2 to reach Wpt1, and moving it outwards will increase the time. The algorithm uses these adjustments to Wpt3 until the limit to what is possible is reached (i.e. when the error d1-d2 cannot be decreased any further). Adjustments to Wpt4 are then used in a similar manner to fine-tune the 4D synchronization as shown in the Figure 5-10 (b).

The success of the algorithm, and the speed at which it converges to a 4D synchronization solution depends strongly on the flight conditions (i.e. especially the presence or absence of strong or variable winds) and the starting situation of the two UAVs. The algorithm assumes that the UAVs have already been roughly synchronized using course methods by the GCSs, and are flying under autopilot control such that the UAVs are each on the final "legs" (Wpt4 to Wp1) of their flight plan when the 4D synchronization algorithm is engaged. An average of three or four circuits are typically needed before 4D synchronization is achieved (Fang, 2014).

This time-synchronization method has been used with some success during practical field trials at Argentia, including tests conducted in late September 2013. During these trials this author was the manual pilot for one of the two UAVs involved. As observed during these tests, provided the aircraft are flown with properly-tuned autopilots and in reasonable wind conditions, head-on, chasing and 135º encounter scenarios similar to the example shown in this section can be achieved. However, the difficulties in maintaining constant altitudes and accurate airspeeds have hampered attempts to record a good set of video footage for such scenarios. Given the field of view of most cameras, the size of the aircraft involved and their relative speeds, even if an interception is missed by only a few seconds, the encounter footage (if any) will be limited.

The 4D Sync method described here does show promise but clearly more work is needed to provide a truly autonomous method of achieving 4D synchronization and permitting the collection of a rich set of 4D encounter data.

5.2.3 The PHI Maneuver

During simulated testing of opposing circuits within the 4D Simulation Environment, a new method was discovered. While setting up opposing circuits, one of the aircraft was forced to intercept a waypoint that was inside its minimum turn radius. Most autopilots like the Piccolo II feature an escape algorithm to prevent this situation, by forcing the UAV to fly to the next waypoint if it is impossible for it to reach the current one in a certain time limit. However, the representation used in the 4D Simulation does not have this algorithm. Instead, the aircraft continued to turn in an attempt to intercept

the waypoint. The aircraft, in this case a GiantStik, began to orbit the waypoint at its minimum turn radius, which at the commanded airspeed (20 m/s) was approximately 100 m. Meanwhile, the second aircraft continued to fly its normal circuit. As it passed through the orbit of the first aircraft, there were one and sometimes two interception opportunities as the aircraft passed by. Note that this happened without any special timing or synchronization, during every pass of the second aircraft through the first aircraft's orbit.

The flight-plan of the second aircraft was changed from a circuit into a "dog-bone" pattern. The second aircraft now would make repeated passes down the runway in both directions, with 180° turns at each end of the runway The 4D maneuver geometry created is as shown in Figure 5-11.
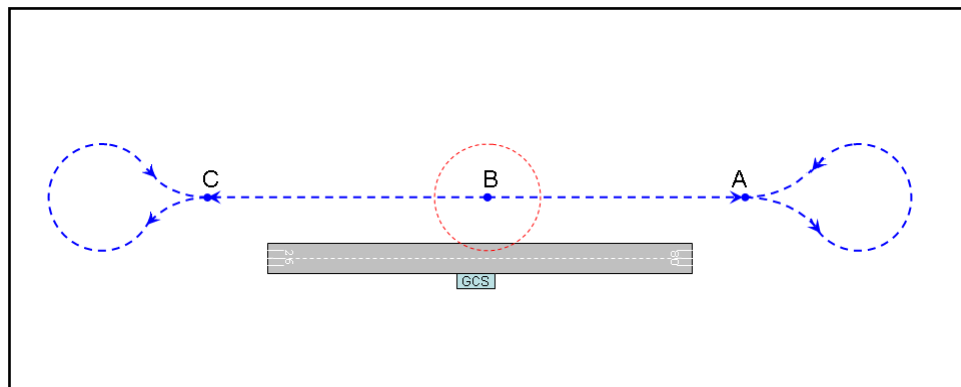
Figure 5-11: The PHI Maneuver

The central waypoint is point B, which is simply the orbit center of the first aircraft shown in RED. The second aircraft flies the BLUE dog-bone flight-plan. Waypoints A and C are used to line up the second aircraft such that it will fly straight through point B. Thus, the central theme of this maneuver is simply a circle with a line

199

through it – resembling the Greek letter Φ (PHI).   It is from this resemblance that the name "PHI Maneuver" has been created. The simplicity of this maneuver is that only one waypoint needs to be defined accurately. As shown this should be shifted away from the GCS so that the encounter area is always in front. Most commercial autopilots have a waypoint-orbit capability built-in so the RED flight-plan is easy to define. The radius should be chosen such that it is a wider than the minimum turn radius of the aircraft. Otherwise, the orbital radius will effectively become this minimum radius. The AP will struggle to maintain the aircraft in a stable orbit that is on the edge of what the vehicle can do aerodynamically. By leaving some margin for an inward turn, the maneuver options for the orbiting aircraft are also kept open.

The other aircraft only has to fly through waypoint B to guarantee at least one 4D encounter for every pass.   The random nature of the 4D encounters created by this maneuver geometry will be such that the exact locations of each aircraft will not be known ahead of time.   The range of each encounter will also be random. This assumes no enhancements are used to improve the chances of an interception.

5.2.4   The PHI Maneuver with Active Guidance

The 4D Simulation has been used to experiment with the concept of giving one of the aircraft active interception guidance control, similar to that of an air-to-air missile, to force an encounter. Note that only a high level discussion of these experiments is given here. Detailed simulation results are provided in Section 5.4.

The orbiting aircraft was given a simple interception guidance program, which remains dormant while the second aircraft is far away. Once the second aircraft comes

within range of the orbiting aircraft, it goes from being "passive" to "active", and attempts to intercept the approaching aircraft. Simple Pursuit was used initially, where the heading command has set equal to the instantaneous bearing to target. However, as expected this almost always resulted in the pursuing aircraft flying behind and chasing the second aircraft, especially if the aircraft was being forced to exceed its maximum turn rate. The difference in airspeeds was usually not enough to give the interceptor any advantage once it was chasing the target, so the interception never happened. The target aircraft simply flew away, beyond the active pursuit range, and the interception attempt was stopped. The orbiting aircraft then returned to its previous (orbit) program to wait for the next opportunity.

It was when the GNC method was switched to Proportional Navigation (PN)[16] that the results got more interesting. Unlike Simple Pursuit, PN adjusts the course of the intercepting aircraft such that the bearing angle to the target remains fixed. This adjustment occurs automatically even if either aircraft are actively maneuvering, and usually results in the interceptor "leading the target", a very common technique used by dog-fighting pilots using machine guns. Simple Pursuit was abandoned decades ago as a missile GNC method and replaced by PN, precisely for the reasons encountered in the last paragraph (Abramovitz, 1953). PN is also one of the few GNC strategies that can allow an interception when there is a large difference between target and interceptor velocities (Stallard, 1968).

---

[16] A detailed description of the Proportional Navigation Guidance method is provided in Section 5.3.3.2.

Using PN, the orbiting aircraft was able to intercept the approaching target aircraft with fair regularity, once the PN gain and maximum bank angle of the interceptor were properly adjusted. In several cases, a side-ways encounter was quickly followed by a second pursuit-style tail-on encounter. The chance of a successful encounter appeared to be associated with where the aircraft was in its orbit when the approaching aircraft was first detected. The best situations were when the interceptor was turning past the 12 or 6 o'clock positions relative to the runway direction, and with the aircraft approaching in front of the interceptor.

An alternative strategy is to provide the aircraft flying the "dog-bone" pattern with the interception GNC program, while the target assumes the orbit pattern. This resulted in even more dramatic interceptions, especially when the intruder aircraft was given a detection range of between two and three times the orbital radius of the loitering aircraft. The intruder aircraft was able to intercept the loitering aircraft once per pass and once again attempted multiple interceptions.

5.3 Avoidance Maneuvers

In this section we will discuss avoidance maneuvers. Assuming one aircraft has detected a collision threat posed by another aircraft, what should it do next? Is an avoidance maneuver possible or safe? If an avoidance maneuver is performed, what is the most effective (and safe) method?

5.3.1 Rules of the Air and Right-of-Way

Before any avoidance maneuver strategy can be proposed, it is important to consider what rules or regulations apply. The following discussion will make reference

to the Canadian Aviation Regulations (CARs). A summary of the regulations applicable to this subject material is also provided in Appendix C. Here we will concentrate on the rules which apply to the collision avoidance problem. Assuming the manned aircraft pilot is obeying these rules, it may be assumed that he/she will attempt to follow them while attempting to avoid collisions. The small UAV should try to follow these same rules in order to be a predictable and cooperative member of the air traffic.

It is the responsibility of every pilot-in-command to be aware of his surroundings (FAA AC-90-48-C, 1983), follow ATC directions, and obey the Rules of the Air in such a way as to minimize the risk of traffic conflicts. For example, by following the cruising altitude rules for VFR and IFR traffic, this should in theory guarantee at least 500 ft vertical separation by opposing traffic[17]. Note that this does not prevent the situation of two aircraft which might be on converging courses both at the same altitude, when both are headed in more or less the same direction.

The manned pilot is also responsible to remain "well clear" of other aircraft and to stay clear of clouds when flying by VFR. In this thesis a spherical distance of 500 ft has been assumed. However is must be pointed out that this is not rigorously defined in manned aviation regulations. The 500 ft value represents the notion of safe minimum separation as commonly used by GA pilots. This differs from the "well clear" notion as held by commercial pilots and military pilots who are more accustomed to ATC definitions of horizontal separation minima which are usually quoted as a minimum time separation between high-speed aircraft. The lack of agreement on what is a quantitative

---

[17] A summary of applicable Canadian Aviation Regulations (CARs) related to cruising altitudes is provided in Appendix C.

and rigorous definition of "well clear" has been the subject of a great deal of discussion amongst UAV researchers. The lack of a quantitative definition was identified very recently by an FAA Workshop as a major research requirement to allow development of effective DSA capabilities to proceed (FAA Sense and Avoid Workshop, 2013). There has been very recent consensus reached that the "well clear" definition developed at MIT Lincoln Labs may be the ideal candidate in terms of compatibility with existing manned aviation including TCAS. This candidate "well clear" definition is a cylindrical zone center on the UAV with a radius of 4000 ft and height of 700 ft (Cook, Brooks, Cole, Hackenberg, & Raska, 2014).

There are minimum altitudes that must also be followed. In Canada, these are 1000 ft above the highest obstacle while in cruise and 500 ft minimum altitude in remote uncontrolled airspace, and at least 1000 ft minimum above any built-up area (MacDonald & Peppler, pp. 114-117). Implied in the regulations is the assumption that the pilot provides a last-ditch capability if these rules fail to maintain good separation, especially with other aircraft (FAA AC-90-48-C, 1983).

The Right-of-Way rules also specify the correct course of action in the case of a potential traffic conflict. Right-of-Way must be yielded to the air vehicle of lesser maneuverability, i.e. first balloons, then airships (rare but still in the regulations), gliders, and finally powered aircraft. UAVs are generally considered as having lower priority versus equivalent powered (manned) aircraft, and must yield to manned aircraft. This last rule is not in the CARs, but has been the effective operating practice by TC Canada when granting UAV operators SFOCs.

If two aircraft find themselves on a head-on collision course, the rule is to always turn right. If an aircraft is approaching from behind and overtaking another aircraft, it should bear right and pass well to the right (at least 500 ft horizontal minimum distance) of the other aircraft. If two aircraft are on converging courses, the aircraft on the right has the Right-of-Way and should maintain its course and speed. The aircraft on the left is required to alter his course to avoid the collision. However, the rules still state the aircraft on the right must still maintain vigilance and take whatever actions are necessary to avoid a collision (MacDonald & Peppler, p. 108)

The Right-of-Way rules also state that, in general, the aircraft required to give way should never maneuver in such a way such that it passes over, under or crosses in front of the other aircraft. This last rule is important when considering how UAV collision avoidance maneuvers should be handled.

5.3.2   Manned Aircraft versus UAVs

It is a misconception when people speak of UAVs colliding with manned aircraft, especially when the small UAV is considered. The implication is that the UAV strikes the manned aircraft, akin to an interception by a missile, with no fault due to the manned aircraft motion   A similar misconception is frequently encountered during discussions of collisions between aircraft and birds, the so-called "bird strike". Perhaps the most dramatic recent event was the "miracle on the Hudson" incident in 2009, when an Airbus A320 flew through a flock of Canada Geese shortly after takeoff from La Guardia airport in New York City. This resulted in multiple bird-strikes including several being sucked into both engines – and the rare but dreaded dual-engine failure. This forced the pilot

crew to accomplish one of the few successful water landings "ditches" by an airliner (NTSB/AAR-10/03, 2010). Note that while climbing after takeoff like this A320 was, airliners are accelerating to about 250 kts while below 10,000 ft. Meanwhile Geese fly at between 30-40 MPH (26-35 kts) (Hoar, De Smet, Campbell, & Kennedy, 2010). The airliner outclasses the birds in speed by almost an order of magnitude (i.e. almost ten times). Any attempt by the birds to "dodge" such an on-coming aircraft is clearly futile.

A similar situation applies to the small UAV. A small UAV like the Aerosonde cruises at 55-60 kts. Manned aircraft will typically outclass the small UAV speed by at least two to three times. For example, GA aircraft such as a Cessna C172 cruises at 125 kts (i.e. about twice the top speed of an Aerosonde) while a Beechcraft King Air cruises at 289 kts (i.e. almost five times faster). In Chapter 4 we have estimated the theoretical minimum sighting distances and the probability that a human would spot a small UAV. Even under ideal conditions, most human pilots are unlikely to spot an Aerosonde until a range of under 500m. This leaves mere seconds for the human pilot to spot the UAV, recognize the danger and start a maneuver. As with the situation with the birds, it is more likely that the manned aircraft will be completely oblivious to the presence of the Aerosonde and will fly straight through it.

Therefore, short of the UAV using visual enhancement methods or a transponder to alert manned aircraft at long range, we must assume that the onus will be on the UAV to detect the on-coming aircraft, and attempt an avoidance maneuver. The chance of success will depend greatly on how soon the UAV is able to detect the approaching aircraft, and the relative velocities involved.

5.3.2.1 **Horizontal Avoidance Maneuvers**

In this initial analysis we will ignore altitude and assume the two aircraft are roughly at the same altitude such that the situation is essentially 2D. Consider the diagram in Figure 5-12, which shows a hypothetic situation of a UAV flying North (top of the page) as shown. We next assume threat aircraft approaching the UAV from three directions, head-on (A), side-ways (B) and back-on (C). If we impose a requirement to maneuver out of the path of the on-coming aircraft such that at least 500 ft (150 m) separation is achieved, we may now estimate the limits of what the UAV can do in each situation.

The head-on (A) is the worst case, as the closure velocity will be the sum of the threat aircraft and UAV speeds (i.e. $V_{a/c} + V_{UAV}$). The UAV must attempt to turn right and exit the 500 ft (150 m) threat area as quickly as possible. Assuming a minimum turn radius of 150 m, which is typical for an Aerosonde flying at 58 kts (~30 m/s), it will take the curved path as shown in green, or about one quarter the circumference of a 150 m radius circle. This will take about 7.8 seconds to accomplish. The futility of the manned aircraft attempting to maneuver with only a few seconds left at 500 m now becomes clear.

For the side-ways case (B), the closure velocity to the current center position of the 500' threat circle is simply the velocity of the threat aircraft (i.e. $V_{a/c}$). In this situation, the UAV should simply fly straight ahead, as this is the fastest way (5 sec) to clear the 150m radius circle. This is an example where maintaining the current course and speed is the best strategy for the UAV.
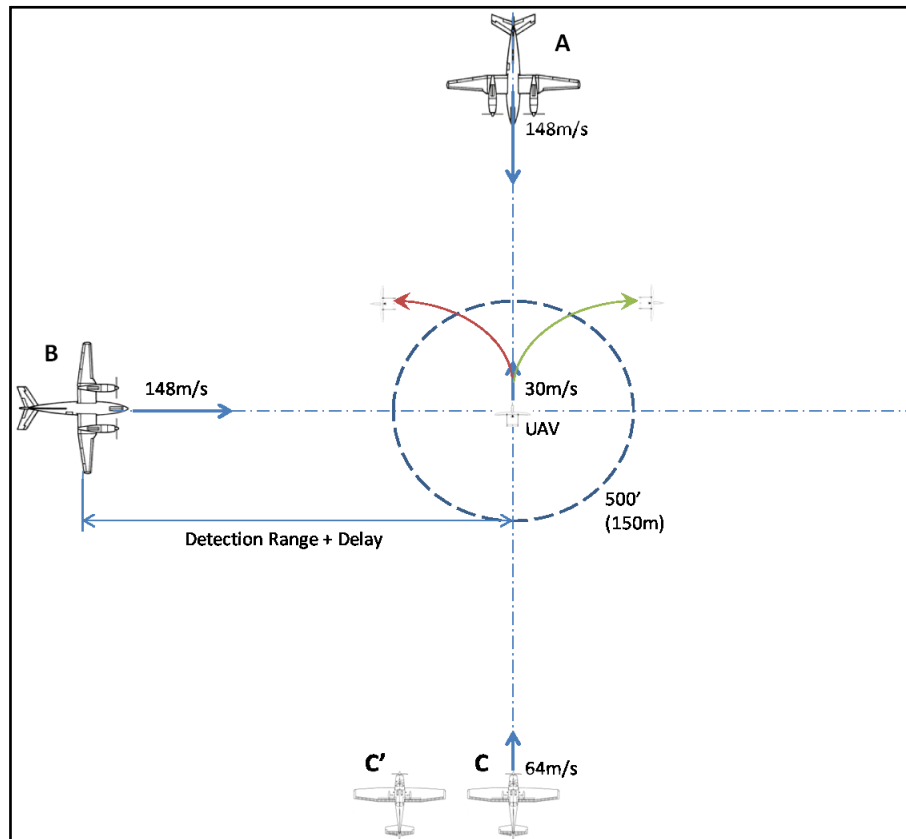
Figure 5-12: Horizontal Avoidance Maneuver Geometries

For the back-on case (C), the closure velocity will be the lowest of the three threats (i.e. $V_{a/c} - V_{UAV}$). The UAV should also turn to avoid the path of the on-coming aircraft. This is an example where the initial position of the approaching aircraft dictates which way the UAV should turn. The most straight forward maneuver is to turn left (red path), effectively giving the approaching aircraft the right-of-way, with the goal that it will past well and clear to the right. This will fulfil the requirements of the rules assuming the approaching aircraft is close to the centerline of the UAV or to the right. However, if the aircraft is left of the centerline (for example as shown by the second aircraft C'), a left turn by the UAV would cause it to cross the path of the oncoming

aircraft which violates the Air Rules. In this case the right turn (green path) would be the better choice, even though technically this violates the Right-of-Way rules.   The geometry of both turns is identical, so the UAV will take about 7.8 seconds to clear the threat zone.

We may now estimate what would have to be the minimum detection ranges by the UAV to permit the maneuvers in time to achieve 500 ft (150 m) separation. We may assume the DSA algorithm and autopilot computer to be fast (likely MHz speed or better) so this should not contribute significantly to any delays. However GPS position, which is sampled at 4-5 Hz by most AP, could be as much as 250ms off from reality. There would also be a slight delay in how fast the UAV flight controls respond. Altogether, we could account for all these delays by inflating the initial estimates of UAV maneuver time by perhaps 300ms. This adjusts the reaction times to 8.1 sec for cases A and C, and 5.3 for case B. Using the previously quoted average cruise speeds for the Aerosonde, Cessna and King Air, we can now calculate the minimum detection ranges needed by the UAV as summarized in Table 5-2.

Table 5-2: Minimum Detection Ranges for a Successful UAV Avoidance

Aircraft	$V_{a/c}$	V_{UAV} (m/s)	Encounter Geometry	$V_{CLOSURE}$ (m/s)	Minimum Detection Range (m)	Comments
Cessna C172	125 kts = 64m/s	30	A	94	761	Head-on
			B	64	339	Side
			C	34	275	Back
KingAir	289 kt = 148m/s	30	A	178	1442	7/8 mile
			B	148	784	
			C	118	956	1 km

Although the situation is not quite as bad as for the Canada Geese, it is clear that the detection requirements for the UAV are demanding. In the case of the Cessna threat, the UAV would require detection at 761 m or more to ensure enough time to avoid it by 500 ft (150 m) in the worst case head-on scenario. For the faster King Air threat, the required detection range is 1442 m or about 7/8 of a statute mile. It will be very difficult to equip the small UAV with sensors capability of reliably detecting aircraft at these ranges, although a detection range of 500 m or 1000 m may be possible using existing EO/IR methods (Kharhoff, Limb, Oravsky, & Shephard, 2006).

5.3.2.2 **Vertical Avoidance Maneuvers**

The previous section assumed only a 2D approach to the avoidance strategy, which forces the UAV detection system to have a range capability of 761 m assuming a GA aircraft head-on collision threat. However, the UAV may be able to improve the chances of avoiding a collision by using vertical maneuvers. While such an avoidance maneuver would be undesirable on a manned aircraft for obvious safety reasons, the unmanned UAV could perform a sudden "crash dive" towards the ground. This would take advantage of the natural assistance of gravity, and is a common technique used by birds to avoid predators (Hoar, De Smet, Campbell, & Kennedy, 2010).

Given the limited time available to accomplish a separation maneuver, it can be shown that the dive maneuver is the quickest method available. The UAV of course must have sufficient altitude to accomplish a drop of 500 ft (150 m) while still maintaining sufficient altitude above the ground. If we are strict about the minimum altitude rule (500 ft AGL) this implies such a dive maneuver would only be appropriate at altitudes of at

least 1000 ft AGL. However, in the interests of flight safety the UAV might be allowed to dive to very low altitudes (i.e. 100-200 ft AGL) in remote un-inhabited areas - much lower then what would be considered safe for manned aircraft. Thus, the dive might be done at as low as 600-700 ft AGL altitude.

Assuming the goal of a drop of 500 ft, we can estimate how fast the UAV can accomplish this feat. If we assume the UAV is able to dive by a very steep angle, say 60° while maintaining the same forward speed, and pull out at the bottom of the dive, the maneuver then becomes a vertical "S-curve" as shown in Figure 5-13.
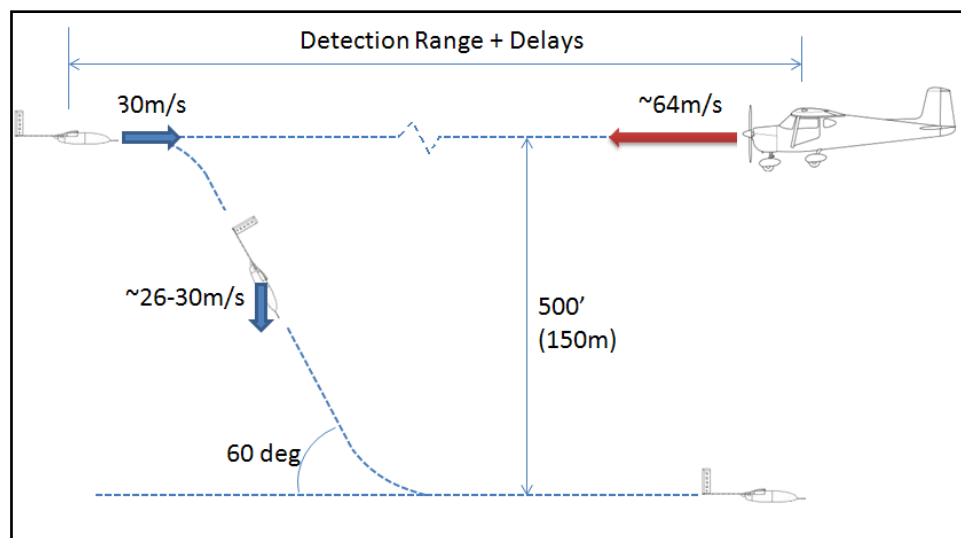
Figure 5-13: Vertical Avoidance Maneuver for UAVs

Assuming the UAV can maintain its normal airspeed, once the dive angle is established the effective vertical component of its velocity would start at about 26 m/s but would accelerate due to gravity (i.e. 9.8 m/s^2). From simple kinematics, we can calculate the time required to accomplish the 150 m drop as follows:

$$S_y = V_y t + \frac{1}{2} A_y t^2 \qquad\qquad (5\text{-}18)$$

$$150\,m = (26\,m/s)t + \frac{1}{2}(9.8\,m/s^2)t^2$$

$$\therefore t = 3.48s$$

Therefore this maneuver can be accomplished in about 3.5 seconds, for an effective descent rate of 42.8 m/s, which is over 8000 feet per minute.[18]

The equivalent detection ranges needed by the UAV to accomplish this vertical avoidance maneuver may now be estimated. Assuming similar GPS and control delays as before, approximately 3.8 sec is needed. We can now consider just the approaching aircraft velocity (equivalent to the horizontal B case), and from this find that the detection range required is 243 m for the Cessna, and 562 m for the King Air. If the dive was combined with heading change (i.e. to prevent over-flight for the head-on or tail-on cases) this would be a very effective avoidance method. The foregoing discussion assumes the UAV airframe is capable of sustaining the high accelerations implied without suffering structural failure, especially of the main wing or control surfaces. However, even if a more modest dive angle of 45° is used and the above analysis repeated, it is found that the detection ranges needed are reasonable, approximately 262 m in the case of a Cessna, and 606 m for the King Air.

---

[18] This estimate assumes the AP allows the acceleration due to gravity to occur, which is the normal case when the AP responds to a sudden step change in the commanded altitude. If it actively controls the descent (i.e. maintaining airspeed) the dive can still be accomplished in about 5.7 seconds.

5.3.2.3 **The Danger of Last-Minute Avoidance Maneuvers**

It is important to realize that an incorrect avoidance maneuver may be counter-productive and could in fact increase the risk of a collision. This includes incorrectly deciding which way to turn, as discussed in the horizontal avoidance case for scenario C in the previous section.   Care must always be taken to make sure the avoidance maneuver causes an increase in the separation range and prevents over-flights, under-flights or crossing the path of the other aircraft. Even in the straight forward case of the head-on situation, where both aircraft turn right, the evasion maneuvers must be initiated at sufficient range to prevent the cross-path situation.

The chance of a collision is also increased dramatically due to the fact that aircraft turns usually involve a bank angle.   If we consider two aircraft on a head-on (or tail-on) collision course, there is actually a relatively small cross-sectional area where a collision can occur, assuming neither aircraft turns. This is easier to explain by reference to the diagram of Figure 5-14 (Hobbs, p. 22) which shows the threat area for two high-wing aircraft of roughly the same size. If the wings are keep level as in the top case, there is a relatively small intersection area. However, if the aircraft were to bank as shown in the bottom case, the intersection area increases dramatically due to the interaction between the wings. If we consider the risk of collision to be proportional to these intersection areas, the chance of a collision has increased by as much as four times.
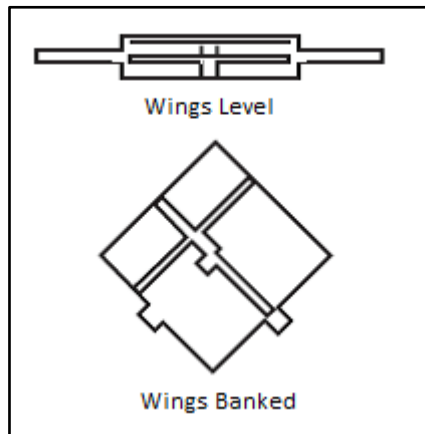
Figure 5-14: Collision Areas of two High-Wing Aircraft (Hobbs, p. 22)

The results of this simple thought exercise are validated if we examine accident reports from mid-air collision accidents. In practically all cases it was the wing of one of the aircraft which sliced into the other aircraft, due to one (or both) of the aircraft attempting a violent bank maneuver at the last moments before a collision (TSB Report A12C0053, 2012). A very common form of lethal damage is the main wing of one aircraft clipping the vertical or horizontal stabilizer of the other aircraft, rendering it un-controllable. This appears to be particularly true when there is a large size difference between the aircraft, as was the case of the Aero-Mexico crash in 1986 (NTSB/AAR-87/07, 1987).

5.3.3   UAV Avoidance Algorithms

5.3.3.1   <u>Attempts at Making a General Rule</u>

There have been attempts to make a set of general rules to define the correct avoidance maneuver to apply to the UAV, once a collision threat is recognized, similar to existing rules used in manned aviation (Sislak, Rehak, Pechoucek, Pavlicek, & Uller,

2006).   Examples are the rule to always right in the case of a head-on encounter, and to bear left for the tail-on case, such that approaching aircraft will pass to the right. However, even for these simple encounter geometries, depending on the relative positions and velocities of the two aircraft, there will always be exceptions where rule-based maneuvers might actually decrease safety.
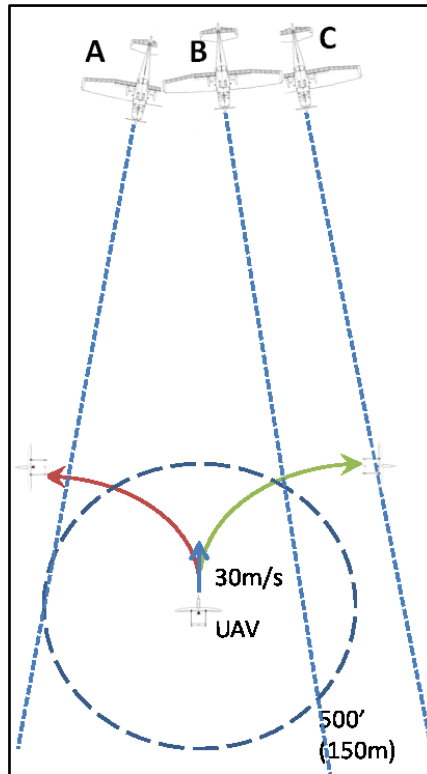
Figure 5-15: Different Head-On Encounter Trajectories

To illustrate, consider the situation shown in Figure 5-15, which shows three different head-on encounters of an aircraft and an UAV, but with slightly different off-axis velocities as shown.   In each case, the future (unmodified) course is projected, representing the situation where the manned aircraft has not detected the UAV.   For Aircraft A, the right turn strategy by the UAV (green path) makes sense and results in a

reasonable miss distance. The situation with Aircraft B is not quite as clear.   A right turn might improve the situation, but only if the aircraft is detected far enough away so that the UAV is able to clear the threatened area before the arrival of Aircraft B. The UAV will cross in front of the path of Aircraft B even if able to avoid it.   The left turn (red path) option is therefore the better avoidance response, though this violates of the "turn right" rule. For Aircraft C, the right turn is clearly not correct and might actually cause a mid-air or at least a very close call! In the case the left turn is the only safe option.

The foregoing highlights two major problems associated with rule-based avoidance algorithms. First, they tend to over-simplify the choice of maneuver based on the target bearing. Second, the velocity of the threat is usually not considered, when this could determine whether a particular course of action is safe or unsafe.

5.3.3.2 **Proportional Navigation as the Basis for an Avoidance Method**

It is clear that any UAV avoidance algorithm should take into account both the relative bearings and velocities involved with any collision threat scenario. An algorithm based on a modified form of the Proportional Navigation (PN) guidance scheme may be such a method. What has already proven to be a very effective interception guidance method can be reversed to create the so-called "Anti" Proportional Navigation (APN) method. To properly describe APN, we should first describe the PN guidance method.

Proportional Navigation is the standard GNC method used by all modern guided missiles, replacing the earlier Simple Pursuit (SP) method. PN was being pursued very early in the development of guided missiles, when the limitations of SP became clear (Abramovitz, 1953). Simple Pursuit attempts to turn the missile to match the current

216

target bearing direction (i.e. the instantaneous position of the target relative to the missile). However, it soon becomes apparent that this is a poor strategy, especially if the missile and target velocities are similar or if the missile is launched from a poor initial targeting direction (e.g. the aircraft heading towards the launcher). Such engagement scenarios usually result in the missile either missing the target entirely or the missile chasing the tail of the target. Assuming limited missile fuel, the aircraft could usually out-maneuver or out-run the missile in such cases (Stallard, 1968). Proportional Navigation uses the rate of change of the target bearing angle as the primary driver for the missile course correction. There are many good references which give the detailed mathematical and physical basis of how this GNC method works (Zarchan, 1994). The most important conclusions applicable to UAV control will be shown here.
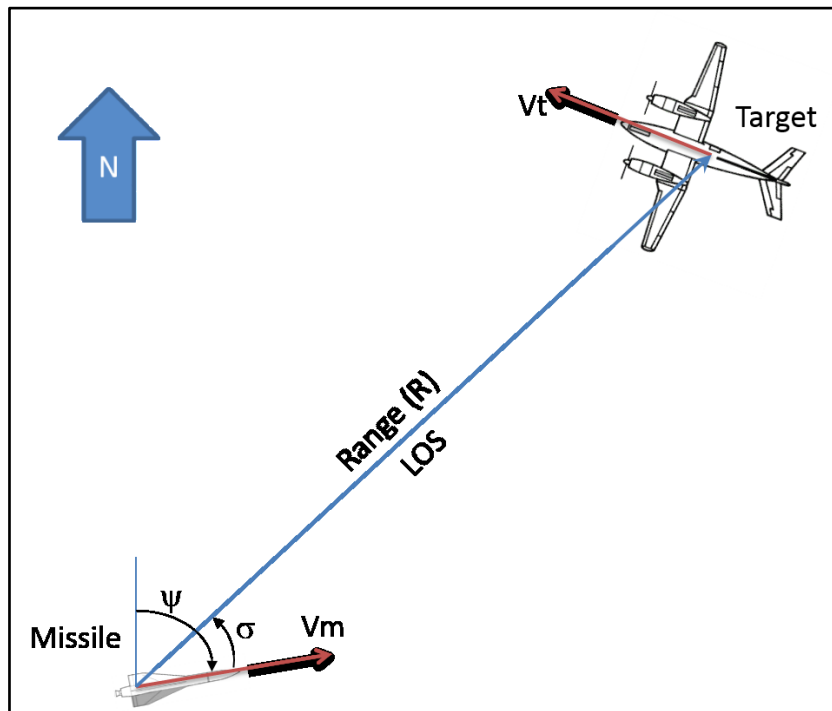
Figure 5-16: Proportional Navigation Diagram

Consider the proportional navigation situation as illustrated in Figure 5-16. The missile is assumed to have a seeker in the nose which is able to track the location of the target. At the moment depicted, the missile and target are both moving at different velocities and headings. Relative to the missile, the target will be located at a Range (R), and at a Line-of-Sight (LOS) angle (σ). Due to the relative motions of both objects, this angle will likely be changing ($\dot{\sigma}$) as shown. It may be shown that the missile should adjust its heading to counter this angle change according to the law:

$$\dot{\psi} = K * \dot{\sigma}$$

(5-19)

Where,

K = Proportional Navigation constant (Gain)

$\dot{\sigma}$ = rate of change of the LOS angle

$\dot{\psi}$ = rate of change of missile heading

This GNC law will have the effect to null-out the LOS rate until it becomes zero (i.e. $\dot{\sigma} = 0$). The choice of K depends on how aggressive a maneuver is required or desired, and the turn-rate capabilities of the missile. A value of 3-5 is typical, but 10 may be needed to accommodate head-on engagements (Stallard, 1968). This navigation method will automatically adjust to any LOS changes caused by either the target or the missile. Assuming a constantly decreasing range, this will eventually set up the situation of a fixed target bearing, with the missile "leading the target" to a common intercept/impact point as illustrated in Figure 5-17.
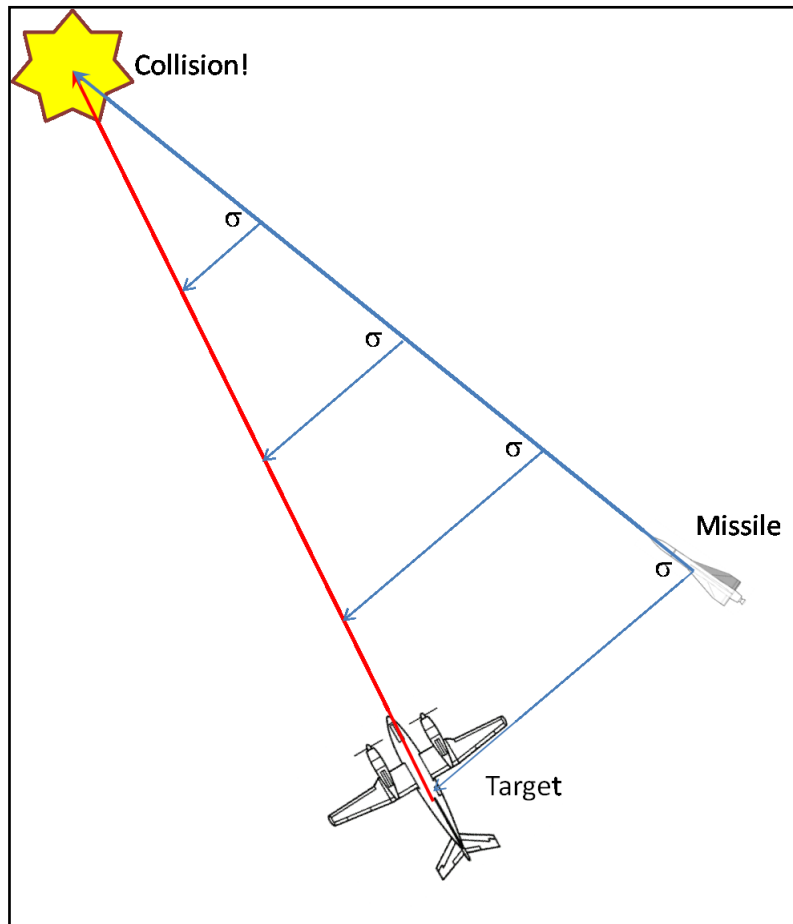
Figure 5-17: Constant-Bearing Leading to a Collision

This is the same principal known for centuries in nautical navigation as the Constant Bearing Decreasing Range situation (O'Brian, 1996). If the relative bearing angle between your vessel and another vessel is constant, and assuming the range is decreasing, you will eventually collide with the other vessel. Sailors are taught to avoid this hazardous situation by turning in such a way to change the bearing angle to the other ship. Ideally, this should also be done with the aim to increase the range between them. This forms an excellent basis for an avoidance algorithm for UAVs.

5.3.3.3 **Anti-Proportional Navigation as an Avoidance Algorithm**

The PN algorithm was first applied in the 4D DSA simulation to give the Intruder aircraft interception guidance. While setting up this PN scheme, a sign error was made in the LOS angle correction which had the effect of creating a course correction away from the Target, resulting in the Intruder engaging in an evasive maneuver. For example, if the LOS angle was decreasing to zero in a counter-clockwise direction, the aircraft would suddenly turn right of the target and miss it entirely. Likewise, if the LOS was decreasing in a clockwise direction, the intruder course veered to the left. Since the desired behaviour was to intercept, the sign error was fixed − but this was another example of an accidental discovery during this research, and hinted at a very promising avoidance method.

A literature search was conducted and confirmed that the erroneous PN algorithm initially programmed was in fact a form of the Anti-Proportional Navigation scheme as investigated by others (Ham & Bang, 2004). It is noted by several authors that even a modest APN gain of 3 appears to be sufficient to create an effective avoidance maneuvers for typical small UAVs, provided the other aircraft is detected at sufficient range (George & Ghose, 2009). A detection range of 300-500 m appears to be the minimum needed to guarantee a 500 ft miss distance. The simplest way to implement the APN is to use the same guidance law suggested by equation 5-19 but with a negative value for the gain (K).

The APN avoidance GNC algorithm has been implemented in the 4D Simulation. Preliminary results indicate this is a very effective avoidance method, and takes care of the 2-D azimuth avoidance direction automatically. It is also possible to implement APN

in the vertical direction too, but a simpler approach is to combine the APN maneuver in the horizontal plane with a simple vertical dive maneuver.

5.4 Predicted 4D Simulation Results

This section presents simulation results of the more promising 4D encounter and avoidance strategies covered previously in this chapter. The 4D simulation was setup using the PHI maneuver as described in Section 5.2.3, using the Clarenville Airstrip as the test site. Both aircraft were configured to be GiantStik aircraft, and thus of the same aerodynamic capability. In the following results the Intruder was programmed to fly the dog-bone waypoint flight plan. The Target was programmed to orbit a waypoint at the mid-point of the runway at a radius of 200 m.

5.4.1 Base PHI-Maneuvre Results (Passive Aircraft)

In these tests, the aircraft were allowed to fly their autopilot programs in a passive mode (i.e. neither using any form of active guidance). The simulation was run for one hour (3600 sec). An encounter was considered to start once the range between the vehicles was 300 m or less, and ended once the range was over 300 m. During each encounter, both instances of the 4D simulation calculated and recorded the instantaneous range and bearing to the other aircraft. These results were post-processed to yield the polar plots presented below. Figure 5-18 shows these results from the point of view of the Target aircraft. In the left image, the trajectory of each encounter is shown as a black line. The point of closest approach for each encounter is circled in red. For clarity, the right image has the trajectories removed.
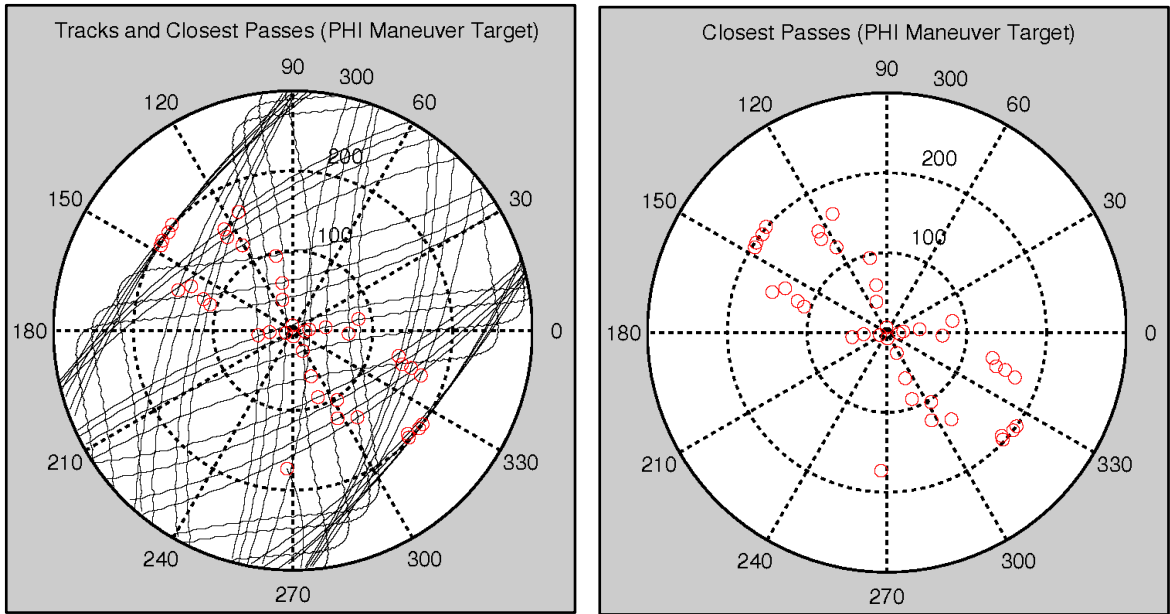
Figure 5-18: Encounters during Passive PHI Maneuvers; (left) Trajectories and Closest Approaches; and (right) Closest Approaches.

There were at total of 40 encounters during the scenario (i.e. for a rate of 40/hour). This agrees with a theoretical estimate of one encounter every 90 seconds based solely on the geometry of the dog-bone waypoint pattern used by the Intruder. The Intruder passes by the Target at a variety of ranges up to a maximum of 200 m. There were several passes when the Intruder essentially intercepted the Target (i.e. < 3 m range). The relative bearings of the closest approaches are distributed around the Target, with the furthest approaches being biased along the 155 - 335º cardinal directions, which is at a right angle to the runway heading.

5.4.2 Active Interceptions by the Intruder (Target Passive)

The Intruder aircraft was given active interception guidance using Proportional Navigation (PN). A PN constant (K) between three and five was tried. The results shown

222

here are for the K=5 case. The Intruder would now attempt an interception as soon as the range to the Target dropped below the detection range of 300 m. The Target was left passive and programmed to continue its orbit program without any reaction. To limit the number of encounters to a single attempt per pass, the PN algorithm was programmed to break off the intercept attempt when the range to the Target began to increase. This scenario was run for 3600 sec, which resulted in the encounters as shown in Figure 5-19.
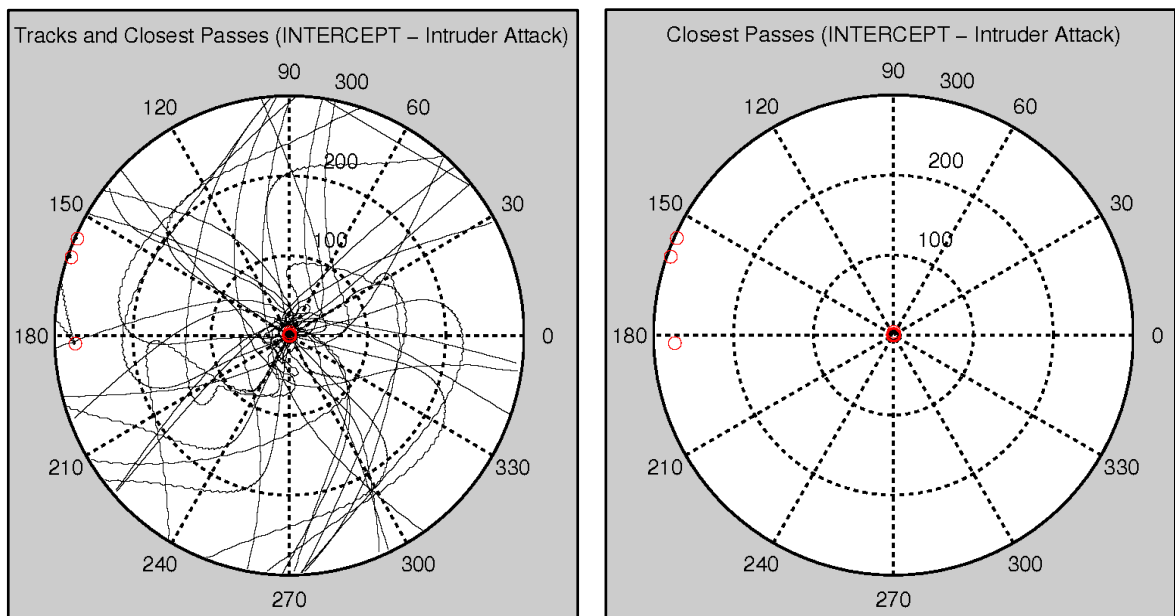
Figure 5-19: Active Intruder versus Passive Target; (left) Trajectories and Closest Approaches; and (right) Closest Approaches.

The Intruder now performs a very deliberate trajectory towards the Target, with most encounters resulting in a hit (i.e. Range < 3 m) and at a variety of encounter angles. There were three encounters where the Intruder halted the interception attempt – due to the lucky geometry of the Target orbit causing an increasing range at the start of the

encounter.   There were fewer encounters (32/hour) due to the Intruder spending more time per encounter attempting to intercept the Target.

5.4.3   Active Avoidance by the Target (Passive Intruder)

In this scenario, the Target was given active avoidance guidance in the form of Anti-Proportional Navigation (APN) as detailed in Section 5.3.3.3.   This was identical to the PN interception guidance as used by the Intruder, though with a negative value for the navigation constant.   In the results shown here a value of K = -5 was used.   In this first case, the Intruder was made passive (i.e. no interception guidance).   The same basic rules of engagement were used as before, i.e. detection range of 300 m, and deactivation of APN once the range to the intruder started to increase.   The results are shown in Figure 5-20.
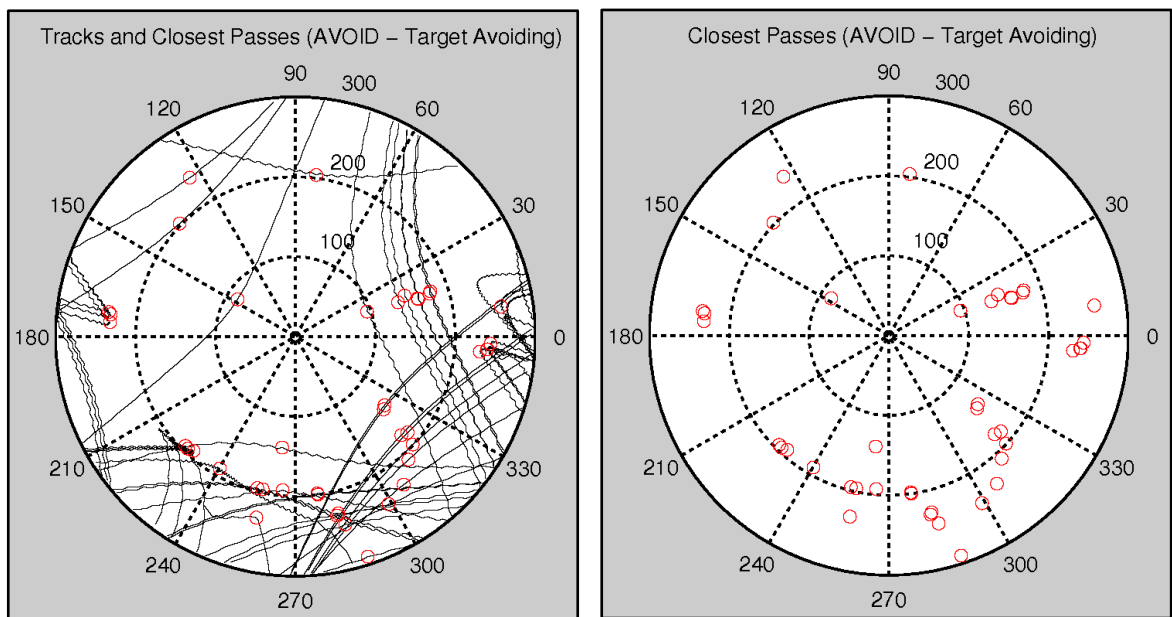
Figure 5-20: Active Target Avoidance versus Passive Intruder; (left) Trajectories and Closest Approaches; and (right) Closest Approaches.

224

The Target avoidance results show that the APN algorithm works well, at least versus a passive Intruder. With the exception of only two cases, the closest approaches were limited to a range of 130 m. The two exceptions had closest approaches of 85 m and 100 m. Since the Intruder followed its dog-bone waypoint flight plan un-interrupted there were 40 encounters during this 1 hour scenario.

5.4.4 Active Intruder and Active Target

This scenario was a combination of the previous two scenarios. The Target was given APN avoidance guidance as before (K=-5). However, this time it was versus an active Intruder using PN interception guidance with K=5. This so-called "kamakazi" scenario where an Intruder is deliberately attempting to hit, while perhaps not very realistic as far as normal aviation may be concerned, does represent a worst case scenario for an avoidance algorithm. It shows some of the strengths (and weaknesses) of using APN as an avoidance method. The results are summarized in Figure 5-21.

The Target was able to avoid the aggressive interception attempts by the Intruder during most of the encounters. However, there were several cases where APN avoidance failed and the Intruder was allowed to pass very close (i.e. less than 20 m) to the Target. In most of these events the Intruder was initially evaded, but the Intruder then "re-acquired" the Target and made a second interception attempt. There were fewer encounters (33/hour) similar to the Intruder Intercepting scenario.

225
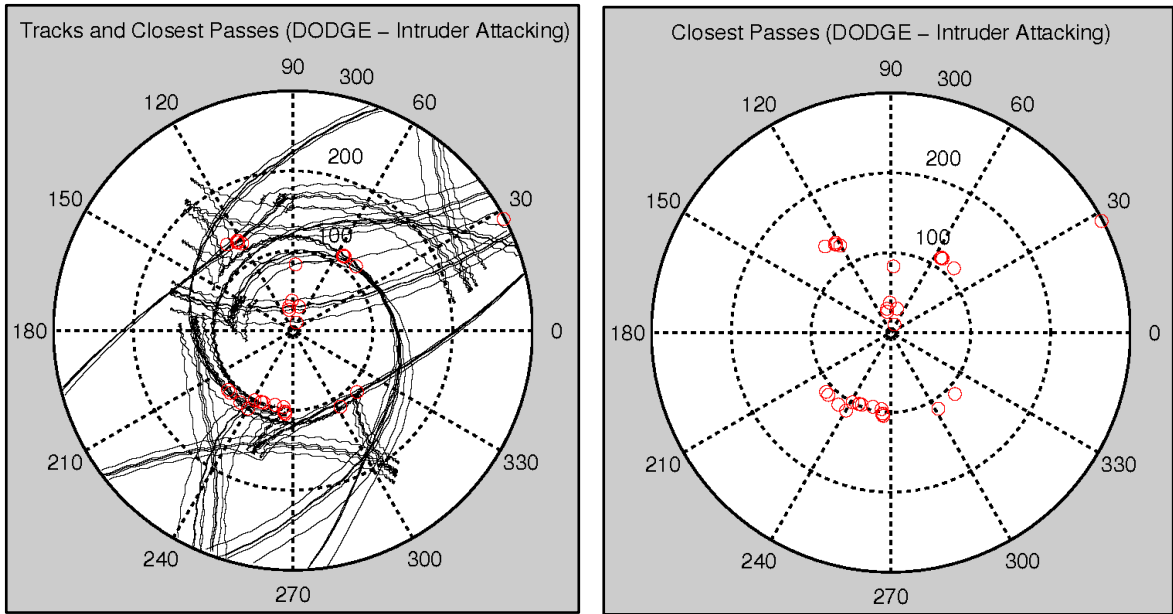
Figure 5-21: Target Avoidance versus Active Intruder; (left) Trajectories and Closest Approaches; and (right) Closest Approaches.

During initial trials of this scenario these were several cases of the creation of an "endless chase" situation. Since both aircraft are of similar speed and maneuvering abilities, repeated avoidance and re-interception attempts could result in the Intruder chasing the Target away from the airfield. Once this chase was established, the APN stopped working as an avoidance method since there was no change in bearing, and a more or less constant distance maintained between the vehicles. To prevent such an endless chase scenario from continuing, a time limit of 30 seconds was imposed to end each encounter.

5.5   **Summary**

If we assume that the UAV would not be spotted in time by manned aircraft, the onus will then be on the UAV to engage in an avoidance maneuver. Against fast threats,

the minimum detection requirements needed to ensure at least a 150 m (500 ft) horizontal separation may be quite high (1.4 km detection range worst-case). However, a vertical dive maneuver will be faster and reduce the detection range requirement to a more reasonable range of 562m.

A 4D simulation environment has been developed which may be used to develop new DSA test maneuvers and avoidance strategies. A maneuver called the PHI maneuver is proposed as a simple yet effect means to permit a high number of random DSA encounter types with a minimum amount of autopilot programming. The 4D Simulation environment has been used to estimate the predicted performance of the PHI maneuver. It has also been to test an avoidance maneuver method based on Anti-Proportional Navigation. An APN-based collision avoidance algorithm appears to be an effective promising avoidance method suitable for small UAVs, assuming it is used against a passive (non-deliberate) intruder.

It was noted in the literature search there has been a lot of theoretical work on the potential of APN as an avoidance method for UAVs, but very little practical field tests or experiments to see if it would work in reality. All papers were essentially very thorough simulation studies (Ham & Bang, 2004). Our own 4D Simulation results also look very promising, but it is important to note that these results must be validated against flight test data. Practical field testing of both the PHI maneuver and the APN method as an avoidance algorithm remains an important future research goal.

Chapter 6   Conclusions and Recommendations

In this final chapter the ELOS for small UAVs will be summarized. An attempt will be made to quantify the safety of the small UAV, in particular how it compares with manned aircraft. A suggested set of safety improvements will also be presented. These will form the main recommendations of how safety may be improved. A recommended list of requirements for a DSA system which addresses the findings of this research will also be given. The conclusions from the research documented in this thesis will be presented, followed by recommendations for future research.

6.1   The Equivalent Level of Safety of small UAVs

The ELOS of small UAVs may now be summarized based on the estimated risks and their comparison with manned aircraft. Assuming the current situation regarding small UAV operation in Canada (i.e. little or no safety equipment, use of hobby-grade components, no DSA capability) we may conclude the following:

1. The risk posed by small UAVs to property and people on the ground is equivalent to that of GA manned aircraft, but only if they are flown in remote areas with very low population density and if they have a certain minimum reliability, expressed as a mean time between failures (MTBF).

2. When flown over very sparsely populated wilderness (< 1 person/km^2) the small UAV is equivalent to GA aircraft in terms of ground impact risk, but only with a minimum reliability of 100 hours MTBF. Operation over higher population densities will require correspondingly higher reliabilities.

3. The reliability of current small UAVs is not sufficient to permit their use over densely populated areas until a demonstrated reliability of at least 50,000 hours MTBF can be achieved.

4. The Mid-Air collision risk posed by the introduction of small UAVs into non-segregated airspace depends on the type of airspace being used.

5. If flight operations are restricted to low altitude G class airspace, small UAVs pose about the same level of risk as that already present with un-cooperative GA class aircraft operating in the same areas in Canada. The ELOS of the small UAV is thus similar to the small GA aircraft in this situation, but lower than that of commercial air transportation.

6. The small UAV does represent an increased safety risk if it is flown into the control zones near airports. The lack of credible DSA technologies and general low visibility poses an increased collision risk to other aircraft in such zones when compared with equivalent manned aircraft.

6.2 Proposed Improvements to Safety

It is proposed that the estimated level of safety (ELS) of the small UAV may be improved significantly by adopting improved methods of control and operation, combined with the provision of a minimum set of safety equipment to every airframe. This is the same multi-layered approach to safety that has been used by manned aviation for decades. It is noted by ICAO analysis that aviation accident rates have been on a steady decline since the early 1980s, especially for Commercial Air Transport (ICAO, 2013). The reasons include improvements in operating procedures but must also include the improvement in aircraft system design and reliability. The addition of mandatory anti-collision technologies (i.e. TCAS) since the late 1980s has also had a beneficial impact. If the same rigor were applied to the UAV safety situation there will be benefits both on a

229

practical and political level. Less frequent accidents will reduce operational costs, especially the need to replace or repair airframes. Reduction of accident rates will also diminish or eliminate negative impressions that the UAV poses a threat to public safety (Haven, 2011).

6.2.1 **Improvements to Ground Risk Safety**

The following improvements are proposed to improve the ELS of the small UAV in terms of the risk to people and property on the ground. Where possible, the effect on the estimated ELS values calculated earlier will be noted.

1. **Automated Take-off and Landings (ATOL)** – all UAVs, especially those near maximum takeoff weight should be controlled using automatic takeoff and landing methods. On UAV systems which rely on an External Pilot to conduct takeoff or landings, the majority of accidents occur due to manual pilot error at these flight stages (Williams, 2004). Crashes also become more likely as the maximum performance limits are approached for the airframe[19], requiring super-human skills by the manual pilot. ATOL is absolutely essential if small UAVs are to be used routinely in a wide range of weather conditions. Assuming a reliable ATOL system can be equipped, the reduction in UAV mishaps will have a strong effect on the overall reliability of the UAV system, perhaps reducing the current UAV accident rate by 75-80% and thus increasing the time between failures (i.e. an estimated four times improvement in MTBF).

2. **Automated Emergency-Landing Capability** – the UAV should be equipped and programmed with a means to attempt an emergency landing on its own, especially if it encounters problems at Beyond-Line-of-Sight (BLOS) range, such as engine trouble, bird strikes, or the onset of very bad weather, that prevent it from

---

[19] For many small UAV programs, the desire to maximize the payload carried tends to push the operation towards flying near the maximum takeoff weight (MTOW) of the airframe. This author has personally experienced this on numerous occasions during RAVEN flight operations.

returning to base . Similar to manned aircraft practice, the UAV should have pre-selected alternate landing sites known to it along its flight plan (e.g. large fields, barren areas, abandoned farms, etc.) that it may divert to and attempt an automated landing. It should not simply cut its throttle and crash randomly into the ground.[20] An alternative strategy would be for the UAV to cut its engine, deploy a parachute and settle gently to the ground. Such an effective emergency recovery procedure could mitigate much of the ground-impact risk (i.e. Pmit = 0.75 or better).

3. **<u>Manual-Override Control Method at all Stages of Flight</u>** – The UAV should be equipped with equipment to allow a human pilot to take over control of the aircraft at all stages of flight. This includes close operations around the launch/recovery site and also at BLOS ranges. Even if the UAV is equipped with ATOL a manual method must be available as a back-up mode should the automatic system fail. A manual override control capability should also be available if the UAV is required to "ditch" after an equipment failure at BLOS range. In the BLOS case it will be crucial to provide the manual pilot with an FPV or equivalent real-time forward control mode. Otherwise, the safe recovery of the UAV at BLOS range will be impossible. A FPV system has been shown to improve the precision of any such landing if used by a competent pilot. During our own testing using FPV, dead stick landings could be adjusted to land precisely where we wanted (e.g. avoiding a tree at the last minute, aiming for a nice flat patch of grass, etc.). At BLOS range long-range video will be required to provide this FPV capability. We have demonstrated such a capability to 6km, and with the

---

[20] There is a trend in small UAVs to claim that incorporating a throttle "kill switch" is somehow an improvement to UAV safety. Since we are talking about the risk to the ground, this is an illogical position. As with manned aircraft, one of the worst things an aircraft can do is turn off its engine, especially at low altitudes. One of the more infamous recent UAV incidents in the U.S. involved a Predator whose engine was inadvertently killed due to a control mix-up at the GCS (Carrigan, Long, Cummings, & Duffner, 2008). The UAV lost altitude quickly and crashed into a hillside in Arizona (NTSB/CHI06MA121, 2006). Fortunately no-one was injured in this event, but it does demonstrate the danger to the ground should the UAV lose power and perform an uncontrolled ditch into the ground.

right video transmission equipment such a capability should be possible to eLOS of at least 25 km. If such a long-range FPV cannot be provided it may be possible to use a synthetic display, similar to an enhanced flight simulator but using real aircraft telemetry for position, to allow the pilot to make the best landing possible under the circumstances. This capability would effectively mitigate most of the threat posed by an otherwise random crash by the UAV. Perhaps 75% of otherwise disastrous crashes might be averted in this manner (i.e. Pmit=0.75).

4. **Improve UAV Reliability** – builders, integrators and operators of UAVs must recognize that they are aircraft, and like manned aircraft should be treated in a similar manner with respect to quality and reliability. This is particularly important if UAVs are ever to routinely operate in controlled airspace, near airports, or over dense population areas. Where possible components such as fasteners, connectors and wire harnesses should be also upgraded to aviation-grade parts. Construction materials should be chosen with the aim to maximize airframe life and environmental compatibility (e.g. weatherproof, corrosion resistance, etc.) exactly like for manned aircraft. Where possible the use of fail-safe and redundant system design must be incorporated into the UAV. It is important to re-use much of the wisdom and knowledge that has been gained, sometimes painfully and tragically, within the manned aviation realm. An immediate improvement in the MTBF should be possible given the low quality starting point of most current small UAV systems. The goal should be to achieve an MBTF improvement of at least ten times (x10) but with a stretch goal to 50,000+ hrs. Only once this level of reliability is achieved can the small UAV claim to have an equivalent level of safety as for manned aircraft.

6.2.2 Reduction of Mid-Air Collision Risk

The following improvements are proposed to improve the safety of the small UAV in terms of the mid-air collision risk. While the provision of an autonomous DSA capability remains the ultimate objective, there are existing technologies which may be

used now to improve UAV safety. Where possible, the effect on the estimated mid-air risk ELS values presented in Chapter 2 will be noted.

1. **<u>Install Anti-Collision Lights on every Airframe</u>** – it should be possible to equip a small UAV with a set of aviation-grade lights. Assuming this system fulfils the minimum requirements in the CARs (see Appendix C) this should improve the visibility of the small UAV, especially at night. The small UAV should be visible at a minimum range of 2 mi (3.2 km) assuming night VFR conditions.   Our own tests of an LED-based anti-collision light set also shows that the anti-collision strobe is visible during bright mid-day light conditions at about half this range. We may estimate this improvement by adjusting the P_{ACfail} term in the mid-air collision equation downwards by at least 0.5, giving a new value of 0.35.

2. **<u>Install a Transponder on every Airframe</u>**– it is also possible to install a small Mode-S compliant transponder on the small UAV. We conducted our own tests using a small transponder available from MicroAir, the T2000S-UAV, and installed this unit on the Aerosonde UAV during flight testing in 2006-2008 (MicroAir, June 2009). The effect of carrying a Mode-S transponder is two-fold: (1) ATC will immediately be able to see the small UAV on their search radars, at fairly long distances (i.e. estimate is at least 6 n.mi); and (2) any aircraft equipped with TCAS will also be able to detect the presence of the small UAV. During our tests using the T2000S-UAV, all commercial traffic detected the Aerosonde as a Traffic Advisory (TA) on TCAS, at a range of at least 3 n.mi   Both effects are important, and would result in improved situational awareness of the UAV. This effect may be estimated by an improvement in $P_{SepLoss}$, especially in Controlled Airspace Zones.   To be conservative we will assume that in ATC-monitored control zones 90% of traffic conflicts will be resolved in this manner (i.e. $P_{SepLoss} = 0.10$). For uncontrolled airspace we will be more pessimistic and only assume

that 90% of TCAS-equipped aircraft will be able to respond, for an adjusted $P_{SepLoss} = (1 - 0.9 \times 47/341) = 0.876$.

3. **Install TCAS (or Equivalent) on the UAV**[21] – In the absence of a complete DSA system, equipping the small UAV with the equivalent of a TCAS capability would provide a limited ability to detect other TCAS-equipped aircraft and avoid them, using the TCAS Resolution Advisory (RA) as an autopilot override command[22]. In the current aviation climate, we may expect this to work mostly in controlled airspace and against aircraft of a certain minimum size. For example, in the C class control zone around St. John's, the majority (97%) of traffic is of passenger/commercial type and these would carry TCAS. Meanwhile, in uncontrolled G-Class we must assume that only 47/341 or 13.7% of manned aircraft would have TCAS. Assuming a 90% effective use of TCAS as before, we can estimate these effects as an improvement on $P_{UAVfail}$. For Class C/D this would be $P_{UAVfail} = 0.127$. In Class G, $P_{UAVfail} = 0.876$.

4. **Provide UAV with Air Band Radio Capability** - current small UAVs do not have the ability to communicate directly with ATC or other aircraft, nor to respond to radio signals directed at them. This has contributed to a lack of acceptance, especially amongst pilots, who regard UAVs as un-responsive potentially hazard obstacles in the sky (Kirkby, 2006). It is proposed that this ability be added to allow the small UAV to provide regular status updates, especially when they enter controlled aircraft or detect either ATC or other transponder scans (e.g. TCAS inquiries). This would improve the awareness of other aircraft, and assist in traffic de-confliction. This would be very

---

[21] An equivalent capability may be possible based on ADS-B technology, which is much smaller, lighter and uses less power (Contarino, 2009). An ADS-B based solution would only work assuming all other airborne threats in the area are similarly equipped. This may not be an unreasonable assumption, as FAA rules plan to make ADS-B mandatory by 2020 (Federal Aviation Administration (FAA), 2010).

[22] It must be recognized that the UAV sense and avoid "well clear" volume must be carefully coordinated to be compatible with existing TCAS traffic advisory and resolution advisory limits (Cook, Brooks, Cole, Hackenberg, & Raska, 2014).

helpful especially in areas away from ATC. We might estimate this effect to be a slight improvement to $P_{SepLoss}$ in controlled airspace (i.e. the TCAS effect already described above would be stronger and more immediate) but greater in G class. We will estimate the effect in controlled airspace as a further 5% reduction, for an overall $P_{SepLoss} = 0.05$. The effect in uncontrolled airspace we will be estimated as a 50% improvement (i.e. assume half of traffic conflicts may be averted) giving $P_{SepLoss} = 0.376$.

The next three improvements assume the existence of a reliable DSA system that has been developed and installed on the small UAV:

5. **Enhanced Air Vehicle Operator (AVO) Display** – the GCS must be enhanced to provide the AVO with a 3D representation of the situation around the UAV. The basic 2D display used on most GCS is fine for mission planning and adjusting waypoints. However, there should always be a second display which gives the UAV's forward field of view, and an accurate and timely representation of its environment. The BLOS Synthetic/Video system proposed in Chapter 3 is an example of the type of system required. When within eLOS the system would use a video feed with HUD similar to the display used during the Aerosonde UAV/FlightGear visualization testing in Clarenville. At beyond eLOS when no video is available a synthetic display would be used. In both cases any other detected entities, especially airborne objects, should be represented using an enhanced cursor style method, similar to that used in most video games involving air-to-air combat. Such an enhanced UAV operator display would significantly eliminate the "flying blind" aspect of UAV operations and permit traffic de-confliction in the event of a collision threat. The effect would be the $P_{UAVfail}$ probability would no longer be 100%. Even if only half of the situations could be avoided this would mean $P_{UAVfail} = 0.5$, effectively cutting all mid-air collision risks in half.

6. **Detection System with full 360º FOR** – the UAV must be provided with a system capable of detecting other airborne entities at a range of at least 500m,

and if possible 1 mi (1609m). The minimum FOR proposed for such a system has been suggested to be +/-110º in azimuth and +/-15º in elevation (NATO Naval Armaments Group, 2007). Such a system would be a compromise and would simply mimic manned aviation. Given the recognized limitations of the see-and-avoid principle (Hobbs, 1991) which raises doubts about the existing safety level of manned aviation (Contarino, 2009), the goal for the UAV should be to exceed these limitations. It is proposed that any detection system should provide the UAV with a full 360º FOR in the horizontal plane. It would be ideal if the UAV also had 180º in the vertical plane, but +/-30º (i.e. 60º FOR) would be sufficient to guard against normal fixed-wing aircraft threats. The detection system might include a machine vision system (i.e. based on EO/IR sensors) which would function in VMC conditions. However, this should be complemented by an equivalent IFR method (based on TCAS or ADS-B) capable of detecting other IFR-equipped aircraft in non-VMC conditions.   This system would of course be the core of the DSA system for the small UAV, and represents the ultimate objective of small UAV DSA research. If such a system could be developed which was only 75% effective, this would reduce the mid-air collision threat powerfully. In terms of the ELS calculation, $P_{uavfail}$ would be reduced to 0.25.

7. **Improved Collision Avoidance Maneuver Capability** – Once the UAV has the ability to detect an on-coming collision threat, it must have an effective avoidance algorithm to reduce the chances of a mid-air collision.   A very promising avoidance algorithm based on Anti-Proportional Navigation (APN) could be a very effect way for the UAV to automatically avoid an on-coming aircraft from any direction, without the need for complicated rules-based decision making.   This would handle the avoidance maneuver in a 2D horizontal direction (i.e. azimuth). To improve chances, a vertical crash-dive maneuver of up to 500ft (150m) should be considered if the UAV has sufficient maneuverability and altitude to do so. The combination of APN and this crash-dive should allow the UAV to dodge aircraft even if detection range

is reduced to 500m. The effect of such an effective avoidance maneuver would be another reduction of $P_{uavfail}$. Assuming a similar 75% effectiveness for the avoidance maneuver, the overall $P_{uavfail}$ would be 0.25 x 0.25 = 0.0625.

6.2.3 Impact of Mitigation Strategies on Ground Impact Safety

The effect of implementing the recommendations for ground impact safety has been estimated, using modifications to the values used in Equation 2-1, as summarized in Table 6-1. The Green highlights denote ELS which match or exceed the target ELS goal of 1e-7. Yellow are borderline values, with values in the same magnitude order as the stated goal safety level, but worse than current Canadian aviation statistics. Increasing UAV reliability will expand the areas where it could operate and claim to have an equivalent level of safety as manned aircraft. Achieving a MTBF level of 50,000 hours should permit the small UAV to operate in most areas of Canada and claim the same safety level as manned aircraft.

The effect of implementing the mid-air collision risk reduction suggestions are also summarized in the following tables. All improvements are in reference to the current estimated safety levels as presented in Chapter 2. Table 6-2 summarizes the estimated improvement in safety if the small UAV was equipped with the recommended safety equipment used by prudent manned aircraft, namely anti-collision lights, a transponder, and an air-band radio. The green and yellow highlights indicate that the improved ELS is better than the Canadian MAC rate but not quite as good as the equivalent Canadian NMAC rate for operations in Class G airspace.

Table 6-1: Improvements to Ground Risk Estimated Level of Safety

Improvements	MTBF	Pmit	LAB	NFLD	St.John's	Toronto	Comments
None	100	0	7.37E-08	2.15E-06	5.89E-05	1.03E-03	Only Labrador
ATOL	400	0	1.84E-08	5.37E-07	1.47E-05	2.57E-04	Nfld borderline
Emerg. Manual Landing	100	0.75	1.84E-08	5.37E-07	1.47E-05	2.57E-04	
ATOL +Emerg. Landing	400	0.75	4.61E-09	1.34E-07	3.68E-06	6.42E-05	Nfld OK
x10MTBF	1000	0	7.37E-09	2.15E-07	5.89E-06	1.03E-04	No cities
All Above	1000	0.75	1.84E-09	5.37E-08	1.47E-06	2.57E-05	No cities
50000 MTBF	50000	0.75	3.69E-11	1.07E-09	2.95E-08	5.14E-07	Everywhere except Toronto

Table 6-2: Improvement to Mid-Air ELS Possible without DSA

Air Space	P_{enc} (MAC)	P_{enc} (NMAC)	$P_{sepLoss}$	P_{ACfail}	$P_{UAVfail}$	P_{MAC}	P_{NMAC}	Canadian MAC Rate (2012)	Canadian NMAC Rate (2012)
C Class	2.65E-07	7.37E-05	0.05	0.35	0.127	5.89E-10	1.64E-07	1.17E-06	2.36E-05
D Class	1.03E-07	2.86E-05	0.05	0.35	0.127	2.29E-10	6.37E-08		
G Class	3.76E-07	1.04E-04	0.376	0.35	0.876	4.34E-08	1.20E-05		

If a viable DSA system can be installed such that the last three recommendations can also be implemented, the added effect of these improvements can be seen in Table

238

6-3. The green highlights indicate that the ELS in all areas exceeds the MAC an NMAC rates for manned aircraft in Canada, and also approaches the target goal rate quoted by FAA of 1×10^{-7} (FAA, 14 CFR Part 23). The small UAV could then claim to have better safety than equivalent manned aircraft.

Table 6-3: Total Improvement to Mid-Air ELS Possible with DSA

Air Space	P_{enc} (MAC)	P_{enc} (NMAC)	$P_{sepLoss}$	P_{ACfail}	$P_{UAVfail}$	P_{MAC}	P_{NMAC}	Canadian MAC Rate(2012)	Canadian NMAC Rate (2012)
C Class	2.65E-07	7.37E-05	0.05	0.35	0.0625	2.90E-10	8.06E-08	1.17E-06	2.36E-05
D Class	1.03E-07	2.86E-05	0.05	0.35	0.0625	1.13E-10	3.13E-08		
G Class	3.76E-07	1.04E-04	0.376	0.35	0.0625	3.09E-09	8.59E-07		

6.3   Proposed DSA Requirements for small UAVs

Based on the analysis of the current equivalent level of safety of small UAVs, it is clear that a credible detect, sense and avoid (DSA) capability is required if we are to claim that the small UAV is as safe as equivalent manned aircraft operating in both controlled and un-controlled airspace. The following list is offered as the minimum requirements for a DSA system for small UAVs:

1. The DSA system shall perform three core functions:
   a. Maintain self-separation between aircraft and UAV[23];
   b. Detect any potential collision threats; and,
   c. Perform an avoidance maneuver if necessary.

---

[23] It should be noted that there will likely be a distinction made between the self-separation and collision avoidance requirements which are applicable to the UAV. Until very recently, even the definition of what constitutes an acceptable "well clear" distance for UAVs has been the subject of much discussion (Cook, Brooks, Cole, Hackenberg, & Raska, 2014). It appears likely that a much larger self-separation volume, of the order of 4000 ft x 700 ft, will be used to define the UAV "well clear" volume. This will encompass the collision avoidance volume which will be similar to the 500 ft minimum distance used in point 10.

2. The DSA System shall provide the UAV with an estimated level of safety versus the mid-air collision threat of 1×10^{-7} (i.e. one fatality per 10^7 hours of flight).

3. The DSA system shall have the capability to detect other airborne threats ideally at a minimum range of 1609 m.

4. The detection system shall be able to detect both co-operative (transponder-equipped) and non-cooperative aircraft.

5. The DSA system should be autonomous, not requiring intervention from the AVO or ATC to perform the core functions described above.

6. The DSA system shall alert the GCS/AVO when it is engaging in a DSA maneuver, and permit a manual override if necessary.

7. The detection system should have a minimum FOR of +/-110º horizontally and +/-15º vertically. However, it is strongly recommended to extend the FOR to 360º horizontally and +/-90º vertically.

8. The DSA system shall be designed to give the above detection capabilities in VMC conditions but should also have the capability to permit detection of other similarly-equipped IFR aircraft in non-VMC conditions. The minimum IFR detection range should be 1 mile (1609 m).

9. The DSA system shall be integrated into the GCS, and used to give the AVO an enhanced situational awareness display, especially when the UAV is operated at BLOS range.

10. The DSA system shall provide the UAV with an avoidance maneuver capability that will ensure at least 500 ft separation, both in the horizontal and vertical directions (i.e. a 500 ft sphere centered on the UAV).

11. Where possible, the DSA shall follow current rules of the air with regards to maintaining good separation. However, if a collision threat is imminent, the UAV will have the means to perform an acrobatic style avoidance maneuver,

in particular a combined crash-dive and heading change, to avoid the on-coming aircraft.

12. The DSA system shall have a demonstrated reliability of 50,000 hrs MTBF or better.

13. The DSA system shall have a means to monitor its "health" and advise the AVO of its status, in particular if a failure has been detected.

These next recommendations are not part of the DSA system per se but should be considered as the "minimum equipment" that the small UAV should carry to be considered equivalent to manned aircraft in terms of safety and co-operative use of the airspace:

14. The UAV should be equipped with a set of aviation-grade anti-collision lights, with a minimum visibility range of 2 miles (3.2 km). The anti-collision strobe should be used at all times (day or night). The navigation/position lights are also recommended to be used at all times.

15. The UAV should be equipped with a Mode S Transponder. The transponder should be used at all times, whether in controlled or un-controlled airspace. A transponder is recommended even if ADS-B is used, until such time that ADS-B becomes the new standard for manned aircraft, to ensure compatibility with existing TCAS installations.

16. The UAV should be equipped with an air-band radio, to allow it to communicate with other aircraft or ATC. This should include the ability to perform standard radio status messages (i.e. alerting other nearby users of intent), the ability to respond to inquiries, and also the ability to respond to ATC directions.

6.4 **Conclusions**

There has been a tremendous growth in the civilian use of UAVs in only the last few years. This recent surge in the popularity of the small or mini UAV, especially non-professional recreational use of the camera-equipped "drone" has resulted in a heightened public awareness and media coverage of the potential safety risks, including risks to personal property and privacy (Brown, 2014). Several high-profile near misses involving commercial airliners including one near Vancouver Airport (CBC News, 2014) have also served to highlight the risk to aviation presented by the un-regulated use of these UAVs. These incidents are increasing the pressure on aviation regulators to create regulations which threaten to pose ever-increasing restrictions on civilian UAV use (Pilkington, 2014). So far in Canada the approach adopted by TC balances public and aviation safety against the size of the UAV and needs of the industry (TC TP15263, 2014). However, we are only one disaster away from the entire industry being effectively shut down in the current political climate (Haven, 2011). The research described in this thesis, and the recommendations for improvements to small UAV safety have become very topical to the current situation.

It must be recognized that small UAVs do indeed represent an increased risk to the general public, due to the risk of uncontrolled ground impacts, especially if flown over high-density population areas. Our own quantitative estimates suggest that given the low reliability of most small UAV airframes, we cannot fly over even rural populated areas and claim to be at least as safe as equivalent manned aircraft. A major improvement in small UAV reliability, through the adoption of aviation-grade components and operational practice, is required to permit safe small UAV operations over populated

areas. A clear distinction also needs to be made between professional uses of small UAVs versus the recreational use of the "drone" by hobbyists (TC SI-623-001, 2014).

The low visibility of the small UAV and the absence of standard safety equipment (lights, transponders) also creates an increased mid-air collision risk, especially if these UAVs are flown in controlled airspace such as near busy airports which are typically located near major urban centers. The mid-air collision risk in uncontrolled G class airspace is roughly equivalent (or better) to that of GA aviation, although the risk of a near-miss loss of separation even is about four times greater. These conclusions assume a comparison with recent Canadian aviation statistics, but these are worse than the desired world-wide safety ELS goal of 1×10^{-7}. The absence of a credible Detect, Sense and Avoid capability remains a limiting factor allowing the general use of the small UAV in non-segregated airspace and at BLOS ranges. However, a DSA system that satisfies the requirements presented in Section 6.3 and the requirements determined in a recent assessment at NRC (Ellis, 2014) could eliminate this operational restriction.

The conclusion that the small UAV does not represent a significantly increased risk to the ground or other aircraft assuming it is flown in remote areas, has been partially validated by the recent granting of an exception to sections 602.41 and 603.66 of the Canadian Aviation Regulations (CARs) by Transport Canada (TC CAR Exempt., 2014). Operators of small UAVs between 2 kg and 25 kg are exempt from the need to file an SFOC assuming certain operational restrictions are met. The language in this exception, along with the recent update to the TC staff instruction for SFOC reviews (TC SI-623-001, 2014) suggests that TC has decided that, provided the small UAV is operated away from populated areas and controlled airspace, they do not represent a significant risk to

aviation. But this exception is quite restrictive, and applies only to small UAVs operated within unaided visual line of sight and below 500 feet AGL. Autonomous UAVs are forbidden as well as the use of FPV technologies, such as those presented in Chapter 3 of this thesis. These recent developments are definitely a step in the right direction; but we are still far from the state where routine BLOS operations by a small UAV might be conducted. However, this does provide an opportunity to conduct routine DSA research at a properly designated test site, similar to flight activities as done by Project RAVEN at Argentia, without the SFOC restrictions which ultimately grounded the Aerosonde UAV operations.

The risk the small UAV presents to the general public (i.e. ground impact risk) and the mid-air collision risks can be reduced significantly through adoption of a layered approach to safety, similar to manned aviation practice. The quality of the UAV airframe, avionics and propulsion systems must be upgraded by adopting aviation design practice, components, testing and maintenance procedures. Improved control methods for the UAV must be adopted to improve the operational reliability of the UAV. These improvements must include increased automation for landings and takeoffs (ATOL), improved manual control methods (e.g. using FPV as the manual control method) and better systems to allow emergency landings at all operational ranges. Operations beyond eLOS will require the development and use of a hybrid synthetic flight simulator and FPV display as detailed in Chapter 3.

While providing an effective autonomous DSA capability remains the ultimate goal for the small UAV, it is possible to reduce the mid-air collision risk by equipping the small UAV with a minimum set of safety equipment, including anti-collision lights, a

mode-S transponder and an air-band radio. These will enhance the detectability of the small UAV by other airspace users and contribute to the multi-layered approach to mid-air collision avoidance (i.e. improving the "can we be seen" chance). DSA would provide the small UAV with an additional final layer of defense (i.e. improving the "can we see other aircraft and avoid them?" chance).

A minimum set of DSA capability standards have been presented in Section 6.3. Development of such a DSA system, and effectively certifying it will require a rigorous set of flight tests involving the repeatable performance of a rich set of 4D encounter scenarios. Practical field tests and theoretical simulation work has shown that the development of such a set of 4D scenarios is not a trivial task. To this end, a novel "PHI maneuver" has been developed which should provide a simple, yet powerful way to develop a random set of 4D encounter geometries assuming the use of two small UAVs both equipped with tuned autopilots. This PHI maneuver should provide a means to gather valuable 4D encounter data, permitting the development of DSA sensor technologies and avoidance algorithms. It may also be used later during field testing of proposed DSA technologies.

A dual-aircraft 4D simulation environment has been developed to support this activity. This environment allows the accurate simulation and development of plausible DSA detection and avoidance strategies, before committing to a particular set of hardware or field tests. Preliminary simulation results indicate that an avoidance strategy using Anti-Proportion Navigation (APN) in the horizontal sense, combined with a vertical dive maneuver provides a simple yet effective avoidance strategy that shows great promise for whatever DSA scheme is used for the small UAV.

6.5 Recommendations for Future Research

During the research presented in this thesis, progress has been made to quantify the ELS of the small UAV. Several recommended safety improvements have been defined which should allow the small UAV to achieve an ELOS as manned aircraft. However, there is still much work to be done to establish the small UAV as a safe and reliable vehicle for practical commercial, government or research work. The following are recommendations for future research and development activities:

1. **Develop an enhanced AVO Situation Display** - the hybrid FPV/synthetic view display system described in Chapter 3 should be developed as an enhancement to the existing GCS currently used for small UAVs. This display system is crucial to allow improved AVO situational awareness and manual control at BLOS ranges.

2. **Develop a Spherical FOR Visual Detection System** - It is proposed that the small UAV should be given 360º vision in the horizontal plane, combined with a 180º vertical view that is swept about the 360º horizontal view. This would give the UAV a complete spherical FOR that surpasses anything done in manned aviation.

3. **Field Test the PHI Maneuver** – the 2013 flying season ended before the PHI maneuver could be field testing using a live dual-aircraft 4D mission. This mission should be conducted as the initial step in any future DSA development program. Both aircraft should be fitted with video camera systems in a variety of resolutions (e.g. high-definition and NTSC) to collect video footage of each encounter created. This should generate a rich set of typical air-to-air footage which will be vital for the development of the machine vision system envisioned in point 2 above.

4. **Test APN-based Avoidance Methods** - the improved avoidance algorithm described in Chapter 5 should be implemented into one of the autopilot

systems, and the ADS-B based 4D testing done in 2012 repeated using this new method.   This would test the Anti-Proportional Navigation law in the horizontal plane (i.e. 2D avoidance).

5. **Test Vertical Dive Avoidance Maneuvre** - A second series of field tests could be conducted to test vertical avoidance strategies including the idea of a "crash-dive" strategy as discussed in Chapter 5.

6. **Use PHI Maneuver to automate DSA System Testing** –The PHI maneuver is proposed as a simple way to create a large number of encounters of a random nature, over the space of several hours, especially if used with LALE UAVs with high endurance capabilities (i.e. the Aerosonde UAV).   This level of testing will be needed if the DSA system is to be certified to aviation standards.

References

3D Robotics. (2014). *The GCS Flight Data Screen*. Retrieved August 5, 2014, from APM

    Copter - 3D Robotics: http://copter.ardupilot.com/wiki/common-mission-planner-

    ground-control-station/

3DRobotics. (2013, July 15). *APM: Plane, Open Source Autopilot, Version 2.74*.

    Retrieved from APM Multi-Platform Autopilot, 3DRobotics: www.ardupilot.com

Abramovitz, M. (1953). *Theoretical Investigation of the Performance of Proportional*

    Navigation Guidance Systems. Ames Aeronautical laboratory.

Aerosonde AAI. (2006). *Aerosonde UAV System Product Description, Aerosonde Mk4.*

    Notting Hill, Australia: Aerosonde Pty Ltd.

AMA. (2014, January 12). *Radio Controlled Model Aircraft Operation Using "First*

    Person View" Systems. Retrieved August 4, 2014, from Academy of Model

    Aeronautics, AMA Document #550: http://www.modelaircraft.org/files/550.pdf

AOA. (2014). *The Eye and Night Vision - Cockpit Illumination*. Retrieved Oct 10, 2014,

    from American Optometric Association: http://www.aoa.org/optometrists/tools-

    and-resources/clinical-care-publications/aviation-vision/the-eye-and-night-

    vision?sso=y

ASDNews. (2012, Sept 18). *Predator B Demos Automatic Takeoff and Landing*

    Capability. Retrieved from Aerospace and Defense News:

    http://www.asdnews.com/news-

    45001/Predator_B_Demos_Automatic_Takeoff_and_Landing_Capability.htm

Aveo Engineering. (2013). *AveoFlashLP LSA - Installation.* Retrieved July 31, 2014,

    from Aveo Engineering Group S.R.O. :

    http://www.aveoengineering.com/index.php/installation-aveoflashlp-lsa

Barfield, A. F. (2000). Autonomous Collision Avoidance: The Technical Requirements .

    National Aerospace and Electronics Conference (NAECON) 2000 (pp. 808-813).

    Dayton, Ohio, USA: Proceedings of the IEEE.

Barnard, J. (2007). *Small UAV Command, Control and Communication Issues.* Retrieved

    from Barnard Microsystems Limited:

    http://www.barnardmicrosystems.com/media/presentations/IET_UAV_C2_Barnar

    d_DEC_2007.pdf

Bento, M. d. (2008, Jan/Feb). Unmanned Aerial Vehicles: An Overview. *InsideGNSS.*

Bergen, P., & Tiedemann, K. (2009, June 3). The Drone War. *New America Foundation.*

Biberman, L. (2001). "Weather, Season, Geography, and Imaging System Performance", .

    Electro-Optical Imaging System Performance and Modeling, SPIE Press , 29-33

    to 29-37.

Botzum, R. A. (1985). *50 Years of Target Drone Aircraft.* Northrup.

Brown, C. (2014, May 19). *Drone have Regulators, Hobbyists on collision course.*

    Retrieved from CBC News: http://www.cbc.ca/news/technology/drones-have-

    regulators-hobbyists-on-collision-course-1.2644232

Carrigan, G., Long, D., Cummings, M., & Duffner, J. (2008). Human Factors Analysis of Predator B Crash. *Proceedings of AUVSI 2008.* San Diego, CA: Unmanned Systems North America,.

CBC News. (2014, July 1). *Drone seen flying in path of landing planes at Vancouver airport.* Retrieved from CBC News: http://www.cbc.ca/news/canada/british-columbia/drone-seen-flying-in-path-of-landing-planes-at-vancouver-airport-1.2693601

CH Robotics. (2013). *Understanding Euler Angles.* Retrieved from CH Robotics LLC.: http://www.chrobotics.com/library/understanding-euler-angles

Chapanis, A. (1996). *Human Factors in System Engineering .* New York & Toronto: John Wiley & Sons, Inc. .

City of St. John's. (2013). *Statistical Profile, St. John's Metro.* Office of Strategy and Engagement.

Clark, R. N. (2009, November 25). *Notes on the Resolution and Other Details of the Human Eye.* Retrieved from Clarkvision: http://www.clarkvision.com/articles/human-eye/

CloudCap Technologies. (2006). *Piccolo System User's Guide, Version 1.3.2.* Hood River, OR: CloudCap Technologies.

Clough, B. T. (2005). Unmanned Aerial Vehicles: Autonomous Control Challenges, a Researcher's Perspective. *Journal of Aerospace Computing, Information and Communication, Volume 2, Issue 8*, pp. 327-347.

Conover, D. (1981). *Finding Marilyn: A Romance, 1st edition* . Grosset & Dunlap.

Contarino, M. (2009). *All Weather Sense and Avoid System for UASs.* Report to Office of
      Naval Research, R3 Engineering, Scire Consultants.

Cook, M. V. (2007). *Flight Dynamics Principles* . Amsterdam: Elsevier Publishing Ltd.

Cook, S., Brooks, D., Cole, R., Hackenberg, D., & Raska, V. (2014). Defining Well Clear
      for Unmanned Aircraft Systems. *AIAA SARP*, 2014-1114.

Davis, D. (2006). Unmanned Aircraft Systems in the US National Airspace System. *UVS
      Canada 4th Annual Conference.* Montebello, Quebec: UVS Canada.

Eagle Tree Systems. (2013). *Guardian and OSD FPV* . Retrieved from Eagle Tree
      Systems, LLC, Bellevue, WA: https://www.eagletreesystems.com

Ellis, K. (2006). *Investigation of Emerging Technologies and Regulations for UAV 'Sense
      and Avoid' Capability.* National Research Council Institute for Aerospace
      Research, Report LTR-FR-258.

Ellis, K. (2014). Phase 2: Under 25 kg BVLOS Sense and Avoid. *UVS Canada 12th
      Annual Conference.* Montreal, Quebec: UVS Canada.

Eurocontrol. (2006). *Specifications for the Use of Military Unmanned Air Vehicles as
      Operational Air Traffic Outside Segregated Airspace.* UAV-OAT Task Force.

European Commission. (2009, October 08). *HEARING ON LIGHT UNMANNED
      AIRCRAFT SYSTEMS (UAS).* Retrieved from European Commission, Directorate
      F - Air Transport:
      http://ec.europa.eu/transport/modes/air/doc/2009_10_08_hearing_uas.pdf

Fang, S. X. (2014). *UAV 4D Synchronization.* St. John's: Project RAVEN.

Fat Shark . (2013). *Attitude V2 FPV Goggle with Trinity Head Tracking, User Manual, Revision B, 12/23/2013.* Fat Shark RC Vision Systems .

Federal Aviation Administration, 14 CFR Part 23. (n.d.). *Airworthiness Standards: Normal, Utility, Acrobatic, and Commuter Category Airplanes, Title 14 Code of Federal Regulations, 14 CFR Part 23.* Federal Aviation Administration (FAA).

Federal Aviation Administration. AC-90-48-C. (1983). *Pilots' Role in Collision Avoidance.* Federal Aviation Administration (FAA).

Federal Aviation Administration. AC-120-55-A. (1993). *Air Carrier Operational Approval and Use of TCAS II.* Federal Aviation Administration (FAA).

Federal Aviation Administration. (1997). *United States Experience Using Forward Scatterometers for Runway Visual Range, DOT-VNTSCFAA-97-1.* U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT).

Federal Aviation Administration. (2008). *Interim Operational Approval Guidance 08-01: Unmanned Aircraft Systems Operations in the U.S. National Airspace System.* Retrieved from Federal Aviation Administration: http://www.faa.gov/about/office_org/headquarters_offices/ato/service_units/systemops/aaim/organizations/uas/coa/faq/media/uas_guidance08-01.pdf

Federal Aviation Administration (FAA). (2010). *Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast (ADS–B) Out Performance Requirements to Support Air Traffic Control (ATC) Service, 14 CFR Part 91.* Department of Transportation.

Federal Aviation Administration. (2013). *Integration of Civil Unmanned.* Washington,

    DC: U.S. Department of Transportation. Retrieved July 15, 2014, from

    http://www.faa.gov/about/initiatives/uas/media/uas_roadmap_2013.pdf

FAA Sense and Avoid Workshop. (2013). Sense and Avoid for Unmanned Aircraft

    Systems. *SAA Workshop* (p. Second Caucus Final Report). Washington, DC:

    Federal Aviation Administration.

FlightGear. (2010, February 25). *The FlightGear Manual, For version 2.0.0.* Retrieved

    from FlightGear Flight Simulator:

    http://www.flightgear.org/Docs/getstart/getstart.html

Frawley, G. (1997). *The International Directory of Civil Aircraft, 1997/98 Edition.*

    Canberra: Aerospace Publications Pty. Ltd.

Friedman, E., & Miller, J. L. (2004). *Photonics Rules of Thumb, 2nd Edition* . New York :

    McGraw-Hill.

George, J., & Ghose, D. (2009). A Reactive Inverse PN Algorithm for Collision

    Avoidance among Multiple Unmanned Aerial Vehicles. *2009 American Control*

    Conference.

Gilbert, J. (2012, August 20). Tacocopter Aims To Deliver Tacos Using Unmanned

    Drone Helicopters. *Huffington Post* .

Graham, W., & Orr, R. H. (1970). Separation of Air Traffic by Visual Means: An

    Estimate of the Effectiveness of the See-and-Avoid Doctrine . *Proceedings of the*

    IEEE, Vol. 58, No. 3 .

Great Planes. (2005). *Giant Big Stik ARF Instruction Manual, Document GPMZ0197 for GPMA1224 V1.0.* Champaign, IL, USA: Great Planes Inc.

Halm, L. (1996). *Units in Photometry*. Retrieved July 31, 2014, from University of Pennsylvania: http://retina.anatomy.upenn.edu/~rob/lance/units_photometric.html

Ham, S., & Bang, H. (2004). Proportional Navigation-Based Optimal Collision Avoidance for UAVs. *2nd International Conference on Autonomous Robots and Agents.*

Handwerk, B. (2013, December). 5 Surprising Drone Uses (Besides Amazon Delivery). *National Geographic .*

Haven, K. (2011, August). Controlling the Public Perception of Unmanned Systems and Robotics. *AUVSI, Volume 29 No.8.*

Hemmerdinger, J. (2013, October 21). Lycoming to Overhaul, Improve Aerosonde Engines . *FlightGlobal, Washington DC.*

Henderson, D. (2010, May 20). *Aviation Safety Letter 4/2004.* Retrieved from Transport Canada: http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/civilaviation/publications/tp185-4-04-612-3817.htm

Hoar, T., De Smet, K., Campbell, W., & Kennedy. (2010). *Birds of Canada .* Lone Pine Publishing.

Hobbs, A. (1991). *Limitations of the See-and-Avoid Principle.* Australia: Publication Number 0-642-16089-9, Bureau of Air Safety Investigation.

Hodges, J. (2009, Sept 1). *Computer co-pilots: 'Smarter' UAVs Could Help Avoid Human Error During Landings.* Retrieved from Defense News: http://www.defensenews.com/print/article/20090901/C4ISR02/909010307/Computer-co-pilots

ICAO. (2011). *Unmanned Aircraft Systems (UAS), Circular 328, AN/190.* Montreal: International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO).

ICAO. (2012). *Operational and Safety Benefits Brought by New Airborne Collision Avoidance System (ACAS) Features, Twelfth Air Navigation Conference, AN-Conf/12IP/14.* Montreal, Canada: International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO).

ICAO. (2013). *2013 Safety Report.* Montreal: International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO). Retrieved July 22, 2014, from International Civil Aviation Organi: http://www.icao.int/safety/State%20of%20Global%20Aviation%20Safety/ICAO_SGAS_book_EN_SEPT2013_final_web.pdf

InsideGNSS . (2013, August 30). *Predator UAV Provides Surveillance in Battle Against Yosemite Fire.* Retrieved May 15, 2014, from Inside GNSS News: http://www.insidegnss.com/node/3678

Keill, J. (1739). *An introduction to the true astronomy (3rd Ed. 1739).* Retrieved July 31, 2014, from American Libraries: https://archive.org/details/anintroductiont01keilgoog

Kharhoff, B., Limb, J., Oravsky, S., & Shephard, A. (2006). Eyes in the Domestic Sky: An Assessment of Sense and Avoid Technology for the Army's Warrior

Unmanned Aerial Vehicle. *Proceedings of the 2006 Systems and Information Engineering Design Symposium* (pp. 36-42). Charlottesville, Virginia: Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE).

King, D., Bertapelle, A., & Moses, C. (2005). UAV Failure Rate Criteria for Equivalent Level of Safety. *International Helicopter Safety Symposium.* Montreal: American Helicopter Society International.

Kirkby, B. (2006). Sharing the Air from a General Aviation Perspective. *UVS Canada 4th Annual Conference, November 2006.* Montebello, Quebec: UVS Canada.

Lacher, A. R., Maroney, D. R., & Zeitlin, A. D. (2007). *UNMANNED AIRCRAFT COLLISION AVOIDANCE – TECHNOLOGY ASSESSMENT AND EVALUATION METHODS.* McLean, VA, USA: The MITRE Corporation.

Lane, D. M. (2014, August 21). *Analysis of Variance (ANOVA) - Introduction.* Retrieved from Online Statistics: http://onlinestatbook.com/2/analysis_of_variance/intro.html

Lerner, N. (1993). Brake Perception-Reaction Times of Older and Younger Drivers. *Proceedings of the Human Factors and Ergonomics Society 37th Annual Meeting*, (pp. 206-210). Santa Monica, CA.

Levy, S. (2011, August). Arlington, Texas Police Ramp Up UAS Program. *Special Report: Law Enforcement, Unmanned Systems, AUVSI*, p. Volume 29 No.8.

MAAC. (2012, March). *FPV Guidelines.* Retrieved from Model Aeronautics Association of Canada: http://www.maac.ca/docs/2012/maac_fpv_guidelines.pdf

MAAC. (2014). *"R/C Flying Field Specifications", Policy and Procedures Document MPPD 8.* Model Aeronautics Association of Canada (MAAC).

MacDonald, A. F., & Peppler, I. L. (2000). *From the Ground Up, Millennium Edition.* Ottawa, Ontario, Canada: Aviation Publishers Co. Limited.

Marr, D. (1982). *Vision* . New York: Freeman Press.

Maryland Aerospace. (2015, May 29). *Vector P*. Retrieved from Maryland Aerospace, Inc.: http://d6110363.ozt807.onezerotech.com/products/air/vectorp/

Mathworks. (2007). *Aerospace Blockset 2 User's Guide.* Natick, MA: The MathWorks, Inc.

McCalmont, J., Utt, J., Deschenes, M., Taylor, M., Sanderson, R., Montgomery, J., . . . McDermott, D. (2007). Sense and Avoid Technology for Unmanned Aircraft Systems,. *Automatic Target Recognition XVII, Proceedings of SPIE, Vol. 6566.* Orlando, FL: The International Society for Optical Engineering (SPIE).

McCormick, E. J. (1970). *Human Factors Engineering, 3rd Ed.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

MicroAir. (June 2009). *T2000UAV-S Transponder Installation and User Manual.* Queensland, Australia: Microair Avionics Pty. Ltd.

Mohammed S. Santina, A. R. (1996). Chapter 16: Sample-Rate Selection. In W. S. Levine, *The Control Handbook* (pp. 313-317). Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press LLC.

Montgomery, D. C. (2001). *Design and Analysis of Experiments (5th ed.).* New York: Wiley.

MTI Hungary. (13 May 2006). *2 Killed At Airshow. RC Plane Responsible* . Budapest,

    Hungary: Hungarian State News Agency (MTI).

Murfin, T. (2013, November 18). FAA Releases Roadmap for Unmanned Aircraft. *GPS*

    World.

Murphy Aircraft. (2008). *Murphy Rebel.* Chilliwack, BC, Canada: Murphy Aircraft

    Manufacturing Ltd.

National Imagery and Mapping Agency. (2000, January 3). *DEPARTMENT OF*

    DEFENSE WORLD GEODETIC SYSTEM 1984. Retrieved from National

    Geodetic-Intelligence Agency (NGA): http://earth-

    info.nga.mil/GandG/publications/tr8350.2/wgs84fin.pdf

NATO Naval Armaments Group. (2007). *Sense and Avoid Requirements for Unmanned*

    Aerial Vehicle Systems Operating in Non-Segregated Airspace, PFP(NNAG-

    JCGUAV)WP(2006)0002-REV2. Joint Capability Group on Unmanned Aerial

    Vehicles.

NAV Canada. (1999). *Air Traffic Control Manual of Operations (ATC MANOPS), ATS*

    Standards, Procedures and Operations. Ottawa: NAV Canada .

NOAA. (2005). *Final Report: First-Ever Successful UAS Mission into a Tropical Storm*

    (Ophelia - 2005). National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S.

    Department of Commerce.

NTSB/AAR-10/03. (2010). *Loss of Thrust in Both Engines After Encountering a Flock of*

    Birds and Subsequent Ditching on the Hudson River by US Airways Flight 1549

Airbus A320-214, N106US, Weehawken, New Jersey, January 15, 2009. National

Transport Safety Board (NTSB) Accident Report.

NTSB/AAR-87/07. (1987). *Collision of Aeronaves de Mexico, S.A. McDonnell Douglas*

DC-9-32, XA-JED and Piper PA-28-181, N489lF, Cerritos, California, 31-Aug-

1986. National Transport Safety Board (NTSB) Accident Report.

NTSB/CHI06MA121. (2006). *MQ-9 Predator-B Crash Investigation Report, Nogales,*

AZ. National Transport Safety Board (U.S.).

O'Brian, P. (1996). *Master and Commander, 40th Anniversary Ed.* UK General Books.

Osterberg, G. (1935). Topography of the Layer of Rods and Cones in the Human Retina .

Acta Ophthalmologica, Vol. 13 Suppl. 6 , 1–97.

Patterson AeroSales. (2007). *Murphy Rebel Specifications*. Retrieved from Patterson

AeroSales: http://www.pattersonaerosales.com/Aircraft/Elite/EliteSpecs.html

Pilkington, E. (2014, August 1). *Rise of the Drones has Police and Regulators*

Scrambling to Catch Up. Retrieved from The Guardian:

http://www.theguardian.com/world/2014/aug/01/drones-uav-faa-police

RC-Tech. (2010). *X11 FPV Set*. Retrieved from RC-Tech, Switzerland: http://www.rc-

tech.ch

RMC Inc. (unknown). *VFR Radio Procedures in Canada.* Ottawa, Canada: RMC Inc.,

Canada.

Rosenberg, Z. (2013, February 1). AAI Tackles Aerosonde Propulsion Fault .

FlightGlobal, Washington DC.

Rudkin, P. (2007, November 4). Endurance of the King Airs when used in ISR Missions. *Conversations with Pip Rudkin*. Clarenville, Newfoundland, Canada.

Schiefer, U., Patzold, J., Dannheim, F., Artes, P., & Hart, W. (1990). *Conventional Perimetry (translation).* International Perimetric Society.

Siegal, E. (2010, June 2). *How Well Can You See? An Astronomy Test* . Retrieved July 31, 2014, from ScienceBlogs: http://scienceblogs.com/startswithabang/2010/06/02/how-well-can-you-see-an-astron/

Sislak, D., Rehak, M., Pechoucek, M., Pavlicek, D., & Uller, M. (2006). Negotiation-based Approach to Unmanned Aerial Vehicles. *Proceedings of the IEEE Workshop on Distributed Intelligent Systems: Collective Intelligence and Its Applications (DIS'06)* (pp. 279-284). Washington, DC: IEEE Computer Society.

Smith, G. S., & Smith, G. J. (2000). A Virtual Reality Flight Trainer for the UAV Remote Pilot. *Proceedings of SPIE, Vol. 4021* (pp. 224-233). The International Society for Optical Engineering (SPIE).

Stallard, D. V. (1968). *Classical and Modern Guidance of Homing Interceptor Missiles.* Raytheon Company.

Stat-Ease. (2014, August 21). *Design-Expert V8 Software for Design of Experiments (DOE)*. Retrieved from State-Ease Inc.: http://www.legacy.statease.com/dx8descr.html

StatsCan. (2014, January 13). *Population and dwelling counts, for census metropolitan areas, 2011 and 2006 Censuses*. Retrieved from Statistics Canada: http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2011/dp-pd/hlt-fst/pd-pl/Table-Tableau.cfm?LANG=Eng&T=205&S=3&RPP=50

Stevenson, J. (2010). Assessment of UAV Manual Pilot Techniques using a Design of Experiment Approach. *UVS Canada 8th Annual Conference.* Montreal, Canada: UVS Canada.

Stevenson, J., O'Young, S., & Rolland, L. (2015). Asessment of Alternative Manual Control Methods for Small Unmanned Aerial Vehicles. *Journal of Unmanned Vehicle Systems*, JUVS_2015-0007.

Stevenson, J., O'Young, S., & Rolland, L. (2015). Estimated Levels of Safety for Small Unmanned Aerial Vehicles and Risk Mitigation Strategies. *Journal of Unmanned Vehicle Systems*, 2014-0016.

Tarantola, A. (2013, August 27, 2013 27). *The Ryan Firebee: Grandfather to the Modern UAV.* Retrieved June 6, 2014, from Monster Machines, Gizmodo Online Article: http://gizmodo.com/the-ryan-firebee-grandfather-to-the-modern-uav-1155938222

TC. (2010, May 3). *Unmanned Air Vehicle (UAV)*. Retrieved May 15, 2014, from Transport Canada (TC): http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/civilaviation/standards/general-recavi-brochures-uav-2270.htm

TC Aircraft Reg. (2014, January). *Canadian Civil Aircraft Register, January 2014*. Retrieved from Transport Canada: http://wwwapps2.tc.gc.ca/saf-sec-sur/2/ccarcs/aspscripts/en/menu.asp

TC CAR Exempt. (2014, November 27). *Exemption from Sections 602.41 and 603.66 of the Canadian Aviation Regulations.* Retrieved from Transport Canada: http://www.tc.gc.ca/civilaviation/regserv/affairs/exemptions/docs/en/2879.htm

TC CARs, Part 5, 523-VLA-1385 to 1401. (2014, August 5). *Aircraft Light Requirements, Canadian Aviation Regulations, CAR 523-VLA-1385 to 1401.* Retrieved July 22, 2014, from Transport Canada: http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/civilaviation/regserv/cars/part5-standards-523vla-1808.htm#523vla_1385

TC CARs, Part 6, Section 602.114 through 602.117. (2014, August 13). *Visual Flight Rules, Canadian Aviation Regulations.* Retrieved from Justice Laws Website, Government of Canada: http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/regulations/SOR-96-433/FullText.html#s-602.114

TC CARs, Part 6, Section 602.14 and 602.15. (2014, August 13). *Minimum Distances, Altitudes, Canadian Aviation Regulations.* Retrieved from Justice Laws Website, Government of Canada: http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/regulations/SOR-96-433/FullText.html#s-602.14

TC CARs, Part 6, Section 605.17(2). (2014, August 13). *Use of Position and Anti-Collision Lights, Canadian Aviation Regulations.* Retrieved from Justice Laws Website, Government of Canada: http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/civilaviation/regserv/cars/part5-standards-523vla-1808.htm#523vla_1385

TC CARs, Part 8, Standard 821. (2014, August 5). *Canadian Domestic Air Traffic Control Separation, Canadian Aviation Regulations*. Retrieved from Transport Canada, Government of Canada: http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/civilaviation/regserv/cars/part8-standards-standard821-2804.htm

TC SI-623-001. (2014, Nov 19). *Review and Processing of an Application for a Special Flight Operations Certificate for the Operation off an Unmanned Air Viehicle (UAV) System*. Retrieved Dec 1, 2014, from Staff Instruction (SI) No. 623-001: http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/civilaviation/opssvs/managementservices-referencecentre-documents-600-623-001-972.htm

TC TP-141. (2013, Dec). *Aircraft Movement Statistics: NAV CANADA Towers and Flight Service Stations (TP 141)*. Retrieved July 22, 2014, from Statistics Canada: http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/51-007-x/51-007-x2013012-eng.htm

TC TP15263. (2014, August). *TP15263 - Knowledge Requirements for Pilots of Unmanned Air Vehicle Systems (UAV) 25 kg or Less, Operating within Visual Line of Sight*. Retrieved from Transport Canada: http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/civilaviation/publications/page-6557.html

TC UAV Working Group. (2007). *Unmanned Air Vehicle Working Group Final Report*. Civil Aviation, Transport Canada.

Trickett, C. (2007, October 16). Discussions of External Pilot Control Lags with Aerosonde GCS. (J. Stevenson, Interviewer)

263

TSB. (2012). *Statistical Summary - Aviation Occurrences 2012.* Retrieved July 22, 2014,

    from Transport Safety Board of Canada:

    http://www.tsb.gc.ca/eng/stats/aviation/2012/ss12.asp

TSB Report A00O0057. (2000). *Aviation Investigation Report: Midair Collision Between*

    Island Air Flight School & Charters Inc. Cessna 172 C-GSAR and Cessna 337

    Skymaster C-GZYO, 13 March 2000. Transport Safety Board (TSB) of Canada.

TSB Report A12C0053. (2012). *Aviation Investigation Report: Midair Collision Piper*

    PA-28R-200 Arrow C-GLAJ and Lake La-4-200 Buccaneer C-GFCH, St.Brieux,

    Saskatchewan, 12 May 2012. Transport Safety Board of Canada.

U.S. Department of Defense. (2005). *Unmanned Aircraft Systems (UAS) Roadmap, 2005-*

    2030. USA: Office of the Secretary of Defense.

U.S. Department of Defense. (2010). Department of Defense Fiscal Year (FY) 2011 .

    President's Budget Submission", pp. 4–118.

U.S. Department of Defense. (2013). *Fiscal Year (FY) 2014 President's Budget*

    Submission. Justification Book Volume 1 of 2.

U.S.Navy. (2009, Feb 18). *P-3 Orion Long Range ASW Aircraft.* Retrieved from United

    States Navy Fact Sheets:

    http://www.navy.mil/navydata/fact_display.asp?cid=1100&tid=1400&ct=1

Unmanned Dynamics. (2006). *AeroSIM Aeronautical Simulation Blockset, Version 1.2.*

    Hood River, OR: Unmanned Dynamics Inc.

Unmanned Systems Technology. (2012, July 11). *Insitu Pacific Announces Contract for ScanEagle UAS with MHI of Japan*. Retrieved from Unmanned Systems Technology: http://www.unmannedsystemstechnology.com/2012/07/insitu-pacific-announces-contract-for-scaneagle-uas-with-mhi-of-japan/

Unmanned Systems Technology. (2012, July 18). *National Technical Systems will Showcase UAV Payload at AUVSI North America Conference*. Retrieved from Unmanned Systems Technology: http://www.unmannedsystemstechnology.com/2012/07/national-technical-systems-will-showcase-uav-payload-pod-at-auvsi-north-america-conference/

USAF. (2010, July 20). *MQ-1B Predator Fact Sheet*. Retrieved August 5, 2014, from U.S. Air Force: http://www.af.mil/AboutUs/FactSheets/Display/tabid/224/Article/104469/mq-1b-predator.aspx

VanBlyenburgh, P. (2001, October). *Overview of the Current UAV Situation with a Focus on Europe.* Retrieved May 15, 2014, from European Manned Vehicle Systems Association (EuroUVS): http://uvs-international.org/phocadownload/01_5_Presentations_by_UVSI/005_TAAC_USA_Oct-2001_Overview-of-the-current-uav-situation-with-a-focus-on-Europe.pdf

Vollmerhausen, R. (1999). Influence of Sampling on Target Recognition and Identification. *Optical Engineering 38(5)*, 763.

Wandell, B. (1995). *Foundations of Vision.* Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates, Inc.

Wegman, E. (1995). Huge Data Sets and Frontiers in Computational Feasibility. *Journal of Computer Graphics and Statistics* , 281-295.

Weibel, R. E., & Hansman, R. (2005). *Safety Considerations for Operation of Unmanned Aerial Vehicles in the National Airspace System.* Cambridge, MA: MIT International Center for Air Transportation, Report No. ICAT-2005-1.

Williams, K. (2004). *A Summary of Unmanned Aircraft Accident/Incident Data: Human Factors Implications.* Oklahoma City: Federal Aviation Administration.

Zarchan, P. (1994). *Tactical and Strategic Missile Guidance, 2nd Edition.* American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics.

Appendix A – Project RAVEN

A.1 Project Overview

Project RAVEN (Remote Aerial Vehicle for Environmental Monitoring) was a major research project at Memorial University active from 2005-2014 in the field of Unmanned Aerial Vehicles (UAVs). The primary objective of this project was to develop operational techniques and technologies to permit the use of UAVs to augment commercial ISR missions, such as the manned aerial patrols conducted by PAL aircraft off Canada's east coast. A secondary objective was to "pave the way" to allow routine commercial UAV operations within both controlled and uncontrolled airspace. Research thrusts focused on the issues of BLOS control of UAVs (see Figure A-1) and technologies to ease the operational restrictions imposed on UAVs, including:

- Effective UAV supervisory control technology to overcome operational limitations of communications with long latency inherent in BLOS satellite communications;
- Data management for near real-time vehicle telemetry, photographic images, video and other sensor data over low-bandwidth communications channels;
- Integration of commercial-off-the-shelf products into an UAV platform to enable effective operation of long endurance ISR missions under harsh weather conditions;
- Enhanced situational awareness to operators at the Ground Control System through the use of novel techniques including real time synthetic environment enhancements; and,
- Field experiments to support development of Detect, Sense and Avoid (DSA) technologies suitable for small UAVs.

267
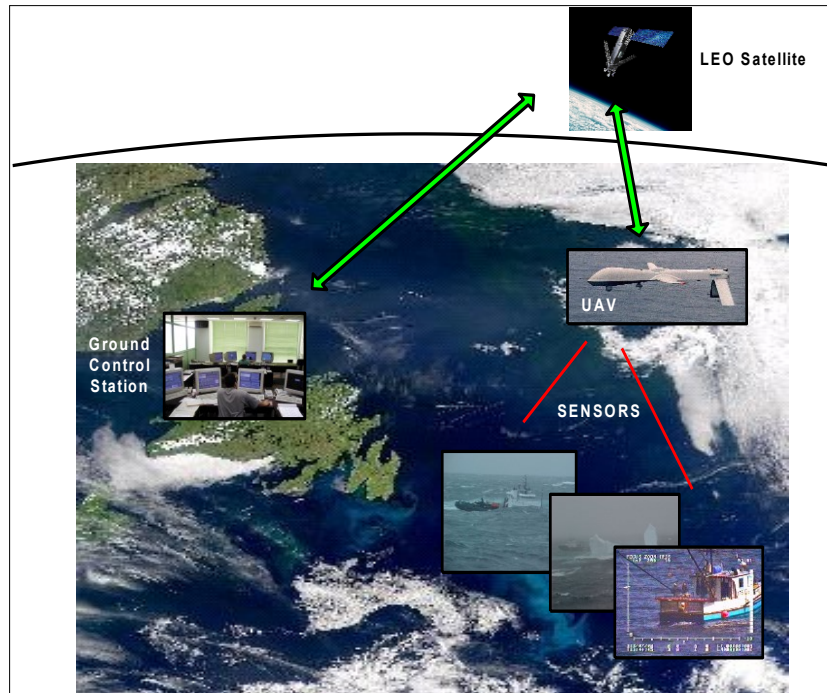
Figure A-1: LALE UAV Operating at BLOS Range

A.2 Low Altitude, Long Endurance UAV as the ISR Vehicle

For the Maritime ISR missions proposed, Low-Altitude Long-Endurance (LALE) UAVs are preferable due to the nature of maritime inspections. ISR aircraft must typically perform low altitude (i.e. less than 300m/1000 ft) and close range (<500m) inspections to permit a positive identification and assessment of a particular vessel's activity. These inspections must be performed in a wide variety of weather, including high winds and poor visibility conditions common in the maritime region where they will operate. The UAV must also be able to safely launch and land, potentially at widely separated airbases (i.e. 100-300 km apart), in similarly extreme weather conditions. As a minimum requirement, the UAV must be able to operate in the same weather conditions as currently

flown by manned aircraft, if they are to be considered as an enhancement to manned aircraft capabilities.

The LALE UAV is also a preferred platform for extended duration (i.e. over 12 hour) missions over large land areas, such as wildlife surveys and forest fire monitoring, due to their ability to maintain extended presence on station. They typically have flight endurance many times that of equivalent manned aircraft, and are able to fly lower and slower then what would be considered safe for manned aircraft. Since they are autonomous (i.e. have autopilots) they can follow a very precise "terrain hugging" altitude profile for very long durations – well beyond the endurance limit for most human pilots.

A.3 Outline of a Typical ISR Mission

The typical Maritime ISR mission to be performed by a LALE UAV may be divided into several phases:

1. Launch – lift-off of the UAV at an airstrip.
2. Cruise to patrol area (1-2 hours).
3. Loiter in patrol area (8+ hours).
4. Inspect target(s) – as needed during loiter in area, tasked from shore-based GCS or from local mobile airborne GCS. Duration of each would be a few minutes, with possibly many (5+) each hour.
5. Return cruise to base (1-2 hours).
6. Landing.

Current operational UAVs can only be operated in a Waypoint Following (WF) mode or Manual Pilot (MP) mode. In WF mode, the UAV autonomously follows a set of

GPS waypoints that are pre-programmed into the UAV before launch or dynamically uploaded from the GCS while the UAV is in flight. The UAV relies on maintaining a continuous GPS signal during this mode of navigation. Phases 2 and 5 would make extensive use of this method of navigation. Phase 3 would likely use a special form of WF available to most LALE UAVs, which allows the UAV to "orbit" a waypoint at a certain distance and for a specified duration.

WF mode may be used during Phase 4 but only in limited cases, as the accuracy of this navigation mode does not allow the precision necessary for successful close inspections of moving vessels. Severe weather conditions may impact the availability and integrity of the GPS signal. High winds could reduce the accuracy of WF course tracking to the point where small UAVs may be blown off course by as much as 50-100 m, to the point where it may pose a collision hazard to the target vessel. It was quickly realized that some form of active guidance system would be needed during Phase 4, possibly using visual or radar-based tracking similar to that used by guided missile seekers. Such a guidance system must be able to operate in conditions of low visibility and to track moving targets of interest, typically ships, to a fair level of accuracy (<30 m). It was planned to combine this feature with an active DSA system to reduce the danger of collisions with ground obstacles (including the target being inspected) and other airborne vehicles.

In Manual Pilot (MP) mode, the vehicle is under real-time control by an operator. It was noted that most operational UAVs use some form of MP during launch and landing (Phases 1 and 6). In one configuration, the operator sits at a remote console at the GCS. The operator relies on video and instrument data from the UAV, operating the

270

vehicle as if in the cockpit of the UAV. This is sometimes referred to as Virtual Piloting (VP), or by the more current term FPV flying. This method requires very high quality video camera imagery with little or no signal delay. In a more basic configuration, an External Pilot (EP) remotely controls the UAV using standard radio-control (R/C) equipment and methods, while standing at the side of the airstrip during take-off and landing operations, relying on his or her natural eyesight to control the small aircraft. This "third person view" mode is the most common method used for small LALE UAVs.

A.4 Experience with the Aerosonde UAV

A small fleet of Aerosonde UAVs were acquired in 2006 to be used to test the basic utility of using this type of LALE UAV in the proposed ISR role. Detailed specifications for the model purchased, the Mk4.2, may be found in Appendix B (Aerosonde AAI, 2006). Training and field operations were conducted from Fall 2006 until Summer 2008. It soon became clear that while the Aerosonde UAV was capable of extreme endurance (i.e. 24+ hrs) the limited payload, high cost of operation, and high attrition rate of airframes soon defeated any attempt to use it in the originally proposed ISR role. Increasingly restrictive rules being applied by TC at the time also served to curtail BLOS operations (TC, 2010; TC UAV Working Group, 2007), to the point where flight operations were restricted to basic circuit work within a kilometer of the runway.

Appendix B – Aerosonde Specifications

Table B-1: Aerosonde Technical Details **(Aerosonde AAI, 2006)**

Specification	
Weight	13 - 15 kg (28.6 to 33 lb)
Max Take-off Weight	15 kg (33 lb)
Wing span	2.9 m (9.5 ft)
Engine	24 cc, Avgas, 1kw, Single Cylinder, Fuel Injected, Premium Unleaded Gas
Fuel Consumption	180g/hr level flight
Min/Max Fuel	1.0 – 5.5 kg (1.2 – 6.5 L)
Navigation	GPS/DGPS
UHF Communication Range	200 km depending on height and terrain
On board power generation	40 Watts continuous, 75 Watts peak, 18V DC
Payload Computer	Supports Serial, Interface Input
Main Payload Bay Area (can be adapted)	100 mm Length, 120 mm Width, 180 mm Depth
Performance	
Speed	18 – 32 m/s (49 to 62 Knots)
Endurance	~ 30 Hrs (All Fuel Payload) ~ 5 Hrs (Max Payload, Min Fuel)
Max Range	~ 2000 n.mi (All Fuel Payload) ~ 300 n.mi (Max Payload, Min Fuel)
Altitude Range	100 m to 6000 m
Payload Maximum	5 kg (approx 10-hour flight)
Mk 3 Payload	Up to 4 kg (8.8 lb)
Mk 4.1 Payload	Up to 6 kg (13.2 lb)
Landing & take off distance	Less than 300 m
Take off speed	Average 90 km/hr
Launch	Vehicle Roof Rack & Catapult
Recovery	Skid
Temperature	+43ºC to -34ºC (+110ºF to -30ºF)
Operations	
Staff for Launch and Recovery	3 People (Controller, Engineer, Pilot/Maintenance)
Staff for Flight Command	1 Person for several aircraft
Ground Equipment	Proprietary Staging Box, 2 PCs, GPS
Flight	Fully autonomous, or under Base Command.
Ground & Air communications	UHF or Satellite (Iridium) to/from Aerosonde
Improvements in Mk4.1	
Payload Mass	20% payload increase to 6 kg maximum
Payload Volume	30% payload volume increase
Endurance	20% endurance increase to more than 36 hours.
Engine/Powertrain	The new power train system, based around Aerosonde's proven electronic fuel injected engine, now provides a dedicated payload supply with a 75W continuous capability. A separate 40W supply is provided for use by the guidance system.

Improvements in Mk 4.2	
Winglets	Winglets have been added to the main wing as shown in Figure B-1. The effect of these winglets is to lower the induced drag of the main wing (estimate is 3-5%) which improves the Lift/Drag ratio of the UAV.
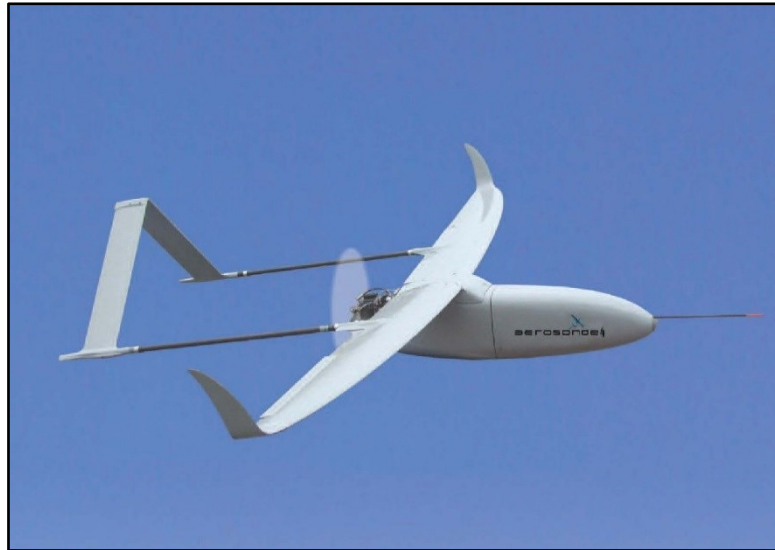
Figure B-1: Aerosonde Mk 4.2 (courtesy of Aerosonde AAI)

Appendix C – Canadian Aviation Regulations

The following sections give an overview of the Canadian Aviation Regulations (CARs), with an emphasis on the rules governing the most important aspects related to the operation of UAVs in both controlled and uncontrolled airspace. It should be noted that with minor exceptions, much of the CARs mirror a similar set of rules in other countries, especially those of the FAA in the United States.

C.1 Airspace Classifications

C.1.1 Domestic Airspace Regions

Canadian Domestic Airspace is broadly classified into two large areas: the Northern Domestic Airspace (NDA) and Southern Domestic Airspace (SDA) regions. The NDA corresponds to the region of Canada where magnetic compasses are unreliable due to the proximity of the north magnetic pole. In this region, aircraft headings, surface wind directions and runway numbers are based on true north bearings. The NDA is also where standard barometric altimeter setting (i.e. 29.92" Hg) is to be used. The NDA is divided at approximately 72° latitude into the Northern Control Area and Arctic Control Area for definition of the lower limit of controlled high altitude airspace.

The SDA is the southern area of Canada, where most of the population and civilian airfields exist. In the SDA, magnetic compasses are useful, albeit with a known declination correction between true north and magnetic north. Aircraft headings, wind directions and runway headings are given relative to magnetic north. In the SDA, below flight level FL180, altimeters are set to local barometric settings of airports during

landings and takeoffs, and updated as the aircraft passes within range of other barometric stations en-route. The UAV flight activities by the majority of UAV operators in Canada (including Project RAVEN) have been in the SDA region.

C.1.2 Controlled Airspace (Classes A-E)

The airspace classification system (i.e. Classes A through G) used in Canada follows a similar format used worldwide. A common summary is the "inverted wedding cake" diagram as shown in Figure C-1. This diagram attempts to summarize and simplify the various classes of airspace, although anecdotal comments from some pilots suggest it probably just adds to the already confusing array of rules which are contained within the CARs. An attempt will be made here to summarize the various classifications in terms important to small UAV operations.

Class A airspace is high altitude airspace where only Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) flight is allowed. It is all airspace above 18,000 ft in the Southern Domestic Airspace zone, and includes the high altitude air routes used by high speed civil transport aircraft (i.e. airliners). All aircraft are expected to be equipped with radios, transponders, and TCAS. In the Northern Domestic Airspace region, the altitude "floor" is FL230 in the Northern Control Area and FL280 in the Arctic Control Area. Visual Flight Rules (VFR) flight is prohibited in Class A airspace. Small UAV operations are unlikely in Class A airspace.

Class B airspace is high altitude controlled airspace between 12,500 and 18,000 ft ASL. To operate in Class B airspace, an aircraft must have a Mode C Transponder and must establish two-way radio communications with Air Traffic Control (ATC). VFR

aircraft may enter but must get clearance from ATC before doing so. Small UAV operations are unlikely in Class B airspace.

Class C airspace is controlled airspace under active control by an ATC unit with radar service, most commonly centered around major airports (typical radius of 7 n.mi) and up to an altitude of 3000 ft above the airport elevation. ATC provides traffic separation between all IFR traffic and VFR traffic as needed. Aircraft entering Class C airspace require a Mode C transponder and ATC clearance (two-way radio). Special permission for NORDO (No Radio Operational) aircraft may also be given through advanced notice and approval of a filed flight plan, but only during daylight VMC weather conditions. Small UAV operations may be required to enter Class C airspace if they chose to use civilian airports as a launch or recovery location.
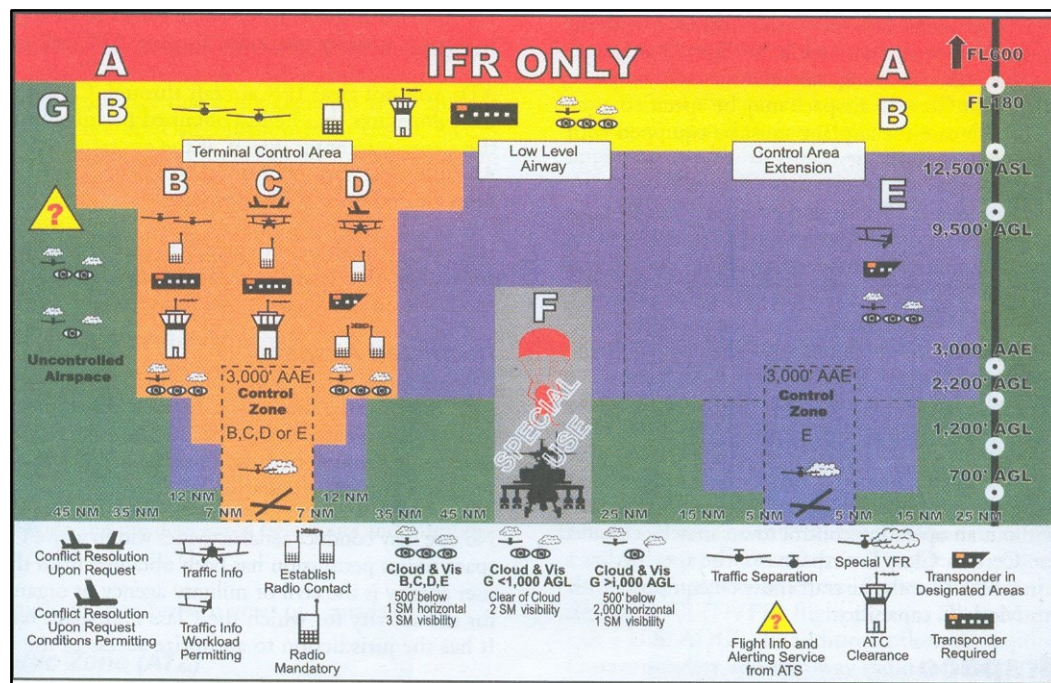
Figure C-1: Canadian Airspace Classifications
(MacDonald & Peppler, p. 103)

Class D airspace is controlled airspace around smaller airports (typical radius of 5 n.mi) and up to 3000 ft AGL. To enter, aircraft must obtain ATC clearance. A transponder may be required in some areas although most Class D control towers do not have radar services. Small UAVs may need to enter Class D airspace if they operate near or in/out of a smaller airport.

Terminal Control Areas are the "inverted wedding cake" shaped zones centered on airports with ATC facilities, as seen in Figure C-1. The intent is to provide organized IFR coverage at increasing flight altitudes at gradually increasing ranges from the airport. It should be noted that at a particular range from an airport, an aircraft may be in uncontrolled airspace, even though controlled airspace exists above some altitude. VFR traffic may operate at the lower altitude without contacting ATC, but must contact ATC and get clearance before climbing into the overlaying controlled airspace. Care must also be taken to prevent inadvertent entry into controlled airspace due to horizontal travel (i.e. moving closer to the airport).

Class E Airspace are areas where controlled airspace is needed at extended ranges and altitudes from airports. Examples include lower-level airways, airport control zones, transition areas, and extended approach paths used by commercial airline aircraft when approaching busy airports. There are no special requirements for VFR aircraft to enter, however certain areas (especially the control extension zones around some airports) will require the mandatory use of two-way radios and Mode C Transponders. Most Class C and D airspace zones revert to Class E when ATC services are shut down at a particular airport. During RAVEN UAV operations on Bell Island, we were operating underneath

and to one side of one of the Class E extensions out of St. John's International Airport. In these situations, great care is taken to limit operational altitudes so as not to inadvertently enter controlled airspace, as this could represent a risk to commercial airline traffic.

C.1.3 Restricted Airspace (Class F)

Class F Airspace is restricted airspace - areas where flight activities must be confined and where non-participating aircraft operations must be restricted, either for safety or national security reasons. Permanently established zones are marked on air navigational charts, and identified (in Canada) by the letters CY, and a letter designating the areas as either an (A)dvisory, (R)estricted, or (D)anger zone. Advisory areas are zones where non-participating aircraft are warned to avoid or else exercise extra vigilance to ensure safety. Restricted areas are (most commonly) zones used by the military for flight tests and training exercises. Danger Zones are also defined in some areas. These are restricted areas where special military testing (including live fire exercises) may occur – which pose an obvious danger to any unexpected or unauthorized aircraft. Temporary restricted airspace may also be established by being granted a SFOC which also triggers a NOTAM to warn pilots of restrictions due to unusual activities in an area.   This includes all UAV flight testing undertaken by Project RAVEN since 2006. Note that in the current regulatory environment, this is currently the only legal method by which UAVs are permitted to operate in Canada (TC, 2010).

C.1.4 Uncontrolled Airspace (Class G)

All other airspace (i.e. not Class A-F) is considered uncontrolled Class G Airspace. This encompasses a very large area, especially in the sparsely inhabited regions

common to Canada. Offshore areas are also largely uncontrolled. A LALE UAV is likely to spend most of its operational life in Uncontrolled Airspace. Neither a transponder or 2-way radio is mandatory when operating solely within Class G airspace. The possibility of encountering such NORDO aircraft, which are by their nature non-cooperative versus any transponder-based anti-collision system, represents a significant risk to routine UAV operations.

C.2 VMC Rules (sighting distances)

The visual sighting minima applicable to Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC) are summarized in the following excerpts from the flight training manual "From the Ground Up" (MacDonald & Peppler, p. 115). These excerpts summarize the visibility regulations as contained in the Canadian Aviation Regulations (TC CARs, Part 6, Section 602.114 through 602.117, 2014):

Within Controlled Airspace:

Flight and Ground Visibility: not less than 3 miles

Height above surface: 500 ft minimum (1000 ft over built-up areas)

Distance from clouds: 500 ft vertically, 1 mile horizontally

Within Uncontrolled Airspace (at or above 1000 ft AGL):

Flight Visibility by Day: Not less than 1 mile

Flight Visibility by Night: Not less than 3 miles

Distance from clouds: 500 ft vertically, 2000 ft horizontally

Within Uncontrolled Airspace (below 1000 ft AGL):

Flight Visibility by Day: Not less than 2 miles

Flight Visibility by Night: Not less than 3 miles

Height above surface: 500 ft minimum (1000 ft over built-up areas)

Distance from clouds: Clear of Clouds

C.3 Aircraft Right-of-Way Rules

The basic Right-of-Way rules for aircraft are based on their relative ability to maneuver (i.e. to avoid a collision). Therefore, priority is given in this order:

1.   Balloons
2.   Gliders
3.   Airships
4.   Aircraft towing another aircraft (i.e. glider tugs)
5.   Powered aircraft (airplanes and helicopters)

When two aircraft are travelling in the same direction but on converging paths, the aircraft to the right has priority. Similarly, any aircraft that is in the process of overtaking another aircraft should maneuver such that it passes to the right and "well clear" of the slower aircraft. A minimum distance of 500 feet is required, and fulfills the minimum distance criteria from any person, vessel, vehicle or obstacle. In the case of a head-on situation, the rule is to always turn to the right (i.e. both turn right, thus away from each other). If two aircraft happen to be approaching to land on the same runway, a situation which should be prevented with proper ATC, the aircraft at the higher altitude must give way to the lower aircraft. Similarly, powerless aircraft (gliders) have priority over powered aircraft trying to land on the same airstrip.

In any case, no matter what equipment, safety features or maneuverability that an unmanned aircraft may possess, manned aircraft will likely always be considered as having Right-of-Way over UAVs, which are generally regarded as "expendable" in the context of manned aviation safety. It is currently the rule in SFOCs issued for UAV flights in Canada that "the unmanned aerial vehicle shall give way to manned aircraft" (TC, 2010). Even amongst USAF researchers, suggestions have been made to define a specialized version of the "Robotic Laws" (after Isaac Asimov), applicable to UAVs ("Flybots"). While self-preservation is to be considered (Third Law), this is overridden by the First Law which forbids a Flybot from causing harm to another aircraft either by direct action, or inaction. Thus, the UAV would sacrifice itself should the need arise, in order to avoid harm to a manned aircraft (Barfield, 2000).

C.4 Traffic Separation Rules

C.4.1 Vertical Separation

Normal cruising altitudes for aircraft have been assigned in Canada, depending on the direction of flight and whether an aircraft is flying by VFR or IFR. Easterly IFR traffic (defined as having headings from 000º to 179º inclusive), are assigned to odd 1000 ft increments while westerly traffic is assigned to even 1000 ft increments. VFR traffic is offset from IFR traffic by 500 ft, starting at 3500 ft. These altitudes ensure a minimum of 1000 ft vertical separation between opposing IFR traffic below FL290, and 2000 ft separation above FL290. VFR traffic will likewise be separated 1000 ft from opposing VFR traffic, but 500 ft from opposing IFR sharing the same airspace (below 18000 ft). When VFR traffic is flying in Class B airspace (e.g. high altitude airways) they use the

same flight altitudes as IFR. There is no requirement for VFR below 3500 ft to adhere to these guidelines, although the prudent pilot will still follow the odd/even IFR altitude plus 500 ft offset rule.

C.4.2 Horizontal Separation

There are a host of horizontal separation standards which are defined in the CARs to ensure safe separation of traffic under ATC control (TC CARs, Part 8, Standard 821, 2014). A companion to these standards is the ATC Manual of Operations, which establishes a set of standard procedures to be used across Canada (NAV Canada, 1999). An attempt to summarize all of these standards would be outside the scope of this document. In general, these separation minima are designed around high speed civil transport aircraft (i.e. with cruise speeds in excess of Mach 0.7), and thus well over the VMC minimum sighting distances quoted earlier. Separation distances are usually given in terms of time differences versus a fixed navigation point for aircraft following one another down an airway. The shortest minimum is 5 minutes. Lateral separation is usually given in units of nautical miles, and the lowest minima here is 5 n.mi (TC CARs, Part 8, Standard 821, 2014).

An important exception is where traffic converges in terminal control zones around airports. Here, separation as low as 2.5 n.mi may be approved in some cases although 3 n.mi is more typical. A crucial element to these minima being safe is that airspeeds are limited to a maximum of 250 knots at 10,000 ft ASL and below. Another concern is the separation of departing and arriving traffic near airports, especially to avoid a trailing aircraft from flying into the wake of another. The minima applicable in these

cases are at least 2500 ft horizontal separation (approximately ½ mile) or three minutes separation, for arriving and departing aircraft using the same runway.

C.5 Minimum Altitudes (Ground Obstacles)

The regulations concerning minimum altitudes are defined in the CARS (TC CARs, Part 6, Section 602.14 and 602.15, 2014) with the following Minimum Altitudes and Distances:

(a) Over Built-up Areas: At least 1000 feet above the highest obstacle located within a horizontal distance of 2000 feet from the airplane; and,

(b) Elsewhere, a distance of at least 500 feet from any person, vessel, vehicle or structure.

It is interesting that there are exceptions to these regulations, termed "Permissible Low Level Flight". Lower altitude flight is permitted if an aircraft is performing services under the authority of several government bodies, such as police work, search and rescue, fire-fighting, administration of The Fisheries or Coastal Fisheries Protection Acts, provincial or national parks, or for the purposes of flight inspections (TC CARs, Part 6, Section 602.14 and 602.15, 2014). Note that much of the Maritime ISR functions currently executed by contracted private manned aircraft (e.g. PAL aircraft) fall into several of these categories, as would a LALE UAV doing a similar role.

In the case of extended range LALE UAV operations over land, common applications include wildlife aerial surveys, aerial mineral prospecting and aerial mapping missions, which are also noted in Section 602.15 as "Permissible Low Level Flight".

Thus, the LALE UAV, especially since it is unmanned, may legally operate at very low altitudes, provided that there is no hazard to persons or property. This is unlikely to be a difficult requirement, given the remote nature of most of these proposed land-based uses of the LALE UAV.

C.6 Aircraft Lighting Requirements

The regulations for light requirements for small UAVs are yet to be finalized. However, indications are that they may be considered to fall under the category of "very light aircraft" (VLA). This is the same category as, for example, the kit-built Murphy Elite floatplane which has a wingspan of about 30 feet and maximum gross weight of 1800 lbs (Patterson AeroSales, 2007). Assuming that the VLA requirements will apply, these may be summarized with reference to the CAR 523-VLA-1 (TC CARs, Part 5, 523-VLA-1385 to 1401, 2014). These lighting requirements are described below and summarized in Figure C-2:

C.6.1 Navigation/Position Lights

The following steady navigation (Position) lights must be carried:

a) Red Navigational Light – on left wing tip, projecting Aviation Red over an arc from 0 deg (directly ahead) to 110 deg Counter-clockwise. The light must have minimum intensity of 40 Candela (towards front) and 5 Cd when viewed from the left side.

b) Green Navigational Light – Similar to the red light, but on right wing tip, projecting Aviation Green.

c) White Position Light – On the tail, projecting backwards over a 140º arc. The light must have a minimum intensity of 20 Cd over the entire 140º arc.

The intent is for these lights to be visible at least 2 miles from the primary viewing angle. In the case of the wingtip lights, this is the aircraft viewed head-on, while for the tail lights it is when viewed from behind. This allows other aircraft to estimate the relative aircraft orientation. For example, if both the green and red lights are visible, the aircraft must be heading straight for you. If just the white lights are visible you are behind the aircraft, etc. These lights must also be visible above and below the horizontal plane, according to a factor table specified in the CARs. The requirement definition is intended to guarantee good visibility within +/-30º of the horizontal plane.

C.6.2 Anti-Collision (Strobe) Lights

If an aircraft is going to operate in IFR conditions, or anytime at night, an anti-collision light system must be used (TC CARs, Part 5, 523-VLA-1385 to 1401, 2014). There are a several possible configurations permitted, as shown in Figure C-2. Whatever configuration is used, the anti-collision light system must provide 360º coverage in the horizontal plane, as well as +/-75º coverage in the vertical plane. Some view angle obstruction (i.e. caused by the aircraft structure) is allowed, provided the total obstruction is below 0.5 Steradians. The anti-collision lights may be either aviation red or aviation white lights, with an effective flash rate of between 40 and 100 per minute. The intensity of the strobe must be at least 400 Cd over the 360º horizontal plane. The intensity in the vertical direction may be dimmer, but cannot drop below 20 Cd at +/-30 to +/-75º.
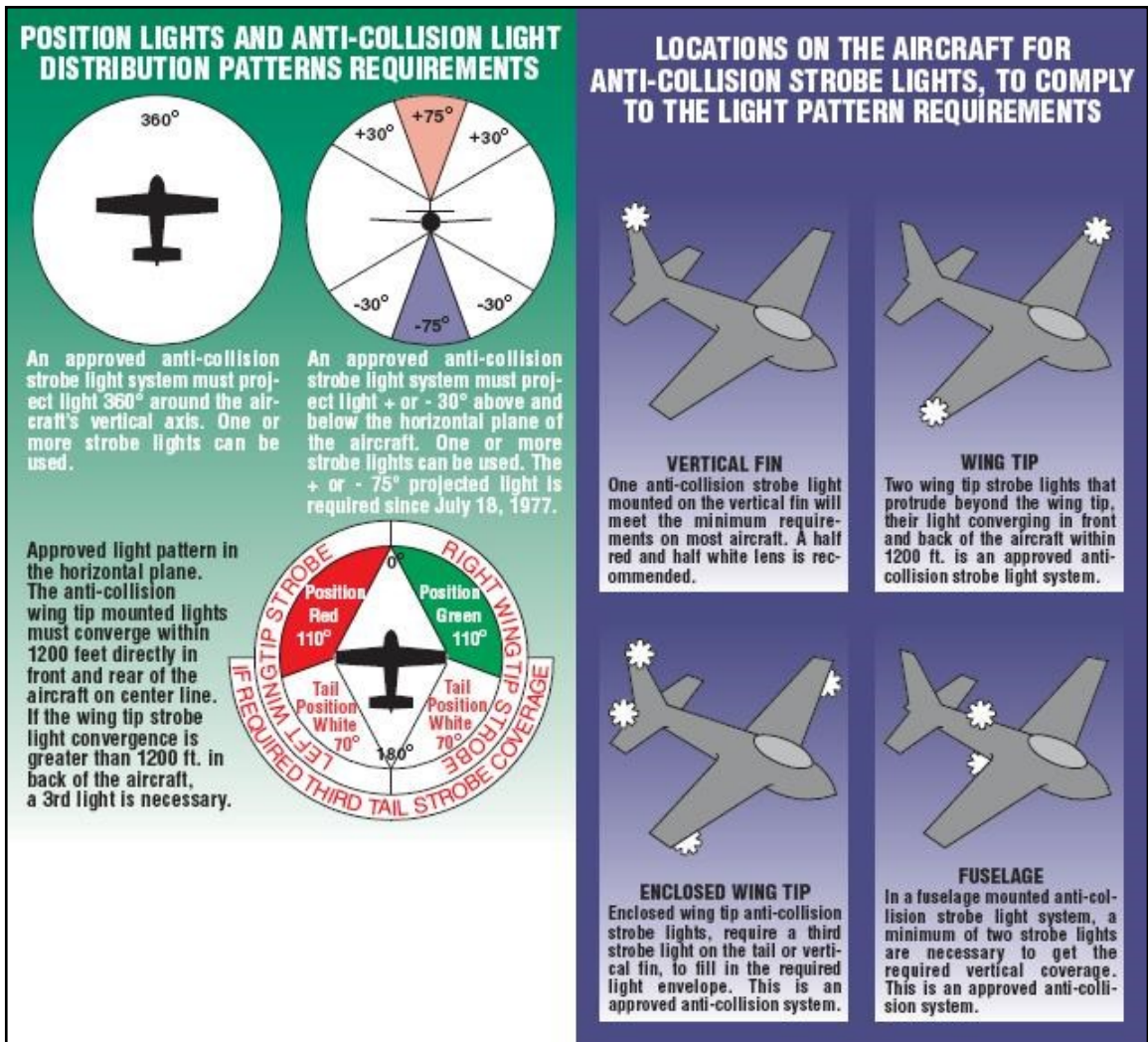
Figure C-2: Aviation Lighting Standards
(TC CARs, Part 5, 523-VLA-1385 to 1401, 2014)

C.6.3 Lights - Times for Use

Aircraft lighting systems are required on all aircraft operated at night. There are no specific requirements to switch on any lights during daylight hours, provided that VMC prevails. There are regulations requiring the activation of lights by aircraft intending to fly IFR. However, even in this case there are suggestions in the CARs to

exercise caution when using anti-collision lights (strobes) when an aircraft is in thick cloud or fog – as bright flashing lights have been known to cause problems with some pilots. The pilot-in-command has the authority to turn the light system off, "where the pilot-in-command determines that, because of operating conditions, doing so would be in the interests of aviation safety" (TC CARs, Part 6, Section 605.17(2), 2014). However, for the case of the small (and difficult to spot) LALE UAV, since there is no pilot onboard that might be confused by exterior flashing lights, it would be more prudent to leave the anti-collision strobe system on at all times.

C.7 Transponders

Transponders are required by aircraft which must fly within controlled airspace (i.e. Classes A-C). Transponders may also be required in designed areas of Class D and E airspace. According to ICAO regulations, the use of ACAS/TCAS II has been mandated since 2005 for any aircraft above 5700 kg (12,600 lbs) and/or which will carry more the 19 passengers. This mandatory use of transponders and TCAS have resulted in a significant improvement in safety, especially within the busy control zones around major airports and along major air flight routes (ICAO, 2012, p. 3).

In contrast, the LALE UAV is likely to operate mostly in uncontrolled Class G airspace, where there are no requirements for either radio communications or transponders. This is one of the main issues regarding the integration of UAVs in civilian airspace. There are also exceptions for Class D and E airspace, as well as the possibility of NORDO aircraft in low-level Class G airspace. Unless there is a universal and

mandatory requirement for all aircraft to carry transponders, one cannot guarantee safety through the use of transponder-based collision avoidance technologies.

C.8 Radio Use

The use of radio communication in aviation has become an indispensable tool, and when used properly is a major contributor to the overall safety environment (MacDonald & Peppler, p. 207). It is also a regulatory requirement that aircraft be equipped with a minimum two-way radio capability (sometimes also called an "Airband Radio") if they plan to fly using IFR. It is also a requirement for VFR aircraft when they fly in controlled airspace. These mandatory radio usage rules are noted in Figure C-1.

Radio communication is used in a two-way mode by ATC and aircraft to coordinate air traffic, and also to provide regular traffic following services, especially for high altitude commercial aircraft as they transitions from one control zone to another. Smaller aircraft also benefit from such ATC guidance when within their control zone. Local Tower radio control is used to coordinate take-offs and landings. All of this requires precise radio call procedures both to and from various aircraft, as well as during hand-offs from tower, to ATC, and to the next control zone.

Meanwhile, each pilot has the responsibility to properly respond and obey ATC/Tower radio commands and to use regular radio calls, especially when approaching airports or control zones where Mandatory Frequency (MF) rules are in place (RMC Inc., p. Section 4). The pilot is required to inform the ATC or Tower in advance of his arrival in the aerodrome area, request proper landing/circuit directions and may also request runway or weather reports. Regular calls are usually made as the pilot approaches and

enters the local traffic pattern, at regular intervals as he approaches to land, and when he has cleared the runway, for example:

"Kilo Sierra Tango 5 mile southwest three thousand five hundred feet, inbound to land", "Entering Circuit", "Established on Final", "Clear of Runway", etc.).

A similar set of calls are used when departing from an airport. It is normal to request a runway for takeoff, wait for clearance, and to inform Tower when starting the takeoff, and when the aircraft has successfully departed. The hand-off to ATC is handled in a similar manner.

All of these regular radio calls serve a dual purpose – alerting and then updating ATC on the progress of your aircraft, and also alerting other aircraft in the area of your location and intensions. This contributes greatly to the overall situational awareness of all of the nearby users of the aerodrome airspace.

The use of an Airband Radio follows a very specific standard for language and usage. The universal language, by ICAO mandate, has been to use English as the primary language when communicating with ATC. Standard phraseology and also the use of phonetics for letters (e.g. "Alpha", "Bravo", "Charlie") is used to provide the safest and most effective communication, aiming to avoid confusion and also compensate for mediocre radio reception. The use of such a radio requires that the operator hold the appropriate license - in Canada this is Restricted Radiotelephone Operator's Certificate. Due to the flight training they receive, this by definition includes people having a valid Pilot's License. By reciprocal agreement this rules applies equally in in either Canada or the U.S. (MacDonald & Peppler, p. 217)

It is noteworthy that radio usage is not mandatory if an aircraft flies in low-altitude Class G. The presence of such NORDO aircraft in the modern aviation environment is a little surprisingly. This exception is perhaps intended to allow the occasional use of small "hobby aircraft" and also agricultural "crop dusters" without requiring the apparently needless expense of equipping them with radios. However this author has personally experienced the advantage to two aircraft operating in remote G class airspace while using radios. In this situation, one of the pilots has the capability of alerting the other to his presence ("I can see you"). It allows for the coordination of landings at the many small single runway airstrips which dot the landscape across North America. The prudent pilot will always equip his aircraft with a radio, and also a transponder – to allow for the possibility that he may fly to a major airport. The small UAV should likewise be similarly equipped.

Appendix D – GiantStik Specifications (Great Planes, 2005)

GIANT BIG STIK ARF

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

Wingspan: 80.5 in [2045mm]
Wing Area: 1518 sq in [97.9 dm²]
Weight: 13-15 lb [5900–6800g]
Wing Loading: 20–23 oz/sq ft [61–70 g/dm²]
Length: 54.5 in [1385mm]
Radio: 4 or 5-channel, 7 to 8 servos
Engine: 1.2–1.6 cu in [19.5–26.0cc] two-stroke,
　　　　 1.2–1.8 cu in [19.5–29.5cc] four-stroke,
　　　　 1.5–2.1 cu in [25–35cc] gas

READ THROUGH THIS MANUAL BEFORE STARTING CONSTRUCTION. IT CONTAINS IMPORTANT INSTRUCTIONS AND WARNINGS CONCERNING THE ASSEMBLY AND USE OF THIS MODEL.
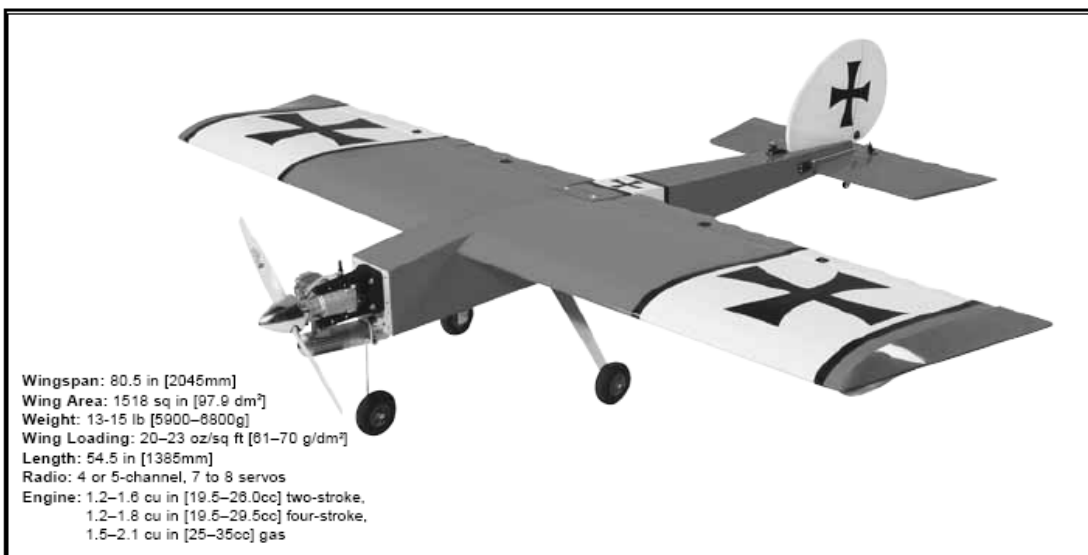
GREAT PLANES®
MODEL MANUFACTURING COMPANY

Champaign, IL
(217) 398-8970, Ext. 5
airsupport@greatplanes.com

GPMZ0197 for GPMA1224 V1.0

Appendix E – Autopilot Model

The following sections give a detailed description of the model developed to represent the Autopilot (AP) used in the 4D Simulation Environment described in Chapter 5. The intent is to provide sufficient detail to permit the reader to understand how it was implemented, and to allow replication of the methods used. Note that while the Picollo II was the autopilot specifically simulated, the simulation is sufficiently generic to permit it to represent any Proportional-Integral-Derivative (PID)-based autopilot which might be used by a small UAV. Note that the extension of the AP to include active target guidance was a novel addition by this author, as this is generally not a normal feature on any current autopilots used for small UAVs.

E.1 Basic Autopilot Structure

A model of the Picollo II autopilot was developed in MATLAB/Simulink to permit the accurate real-time simulation of typical Aerosonde UAV missions. The development of this simulation was possible through detailed information contained in the Picollo II technical documentation (CloudCap Technologies, 2006).

The basic autopilot structure may be seen in Figure E-1. The AP uses a set of Outer Loop control laws, contained in the GNC Control block, to calculate the high-level GNC commands. To keep the Simulink model neat most signals are multiplexed vectors, each containing multiple parameters grouped into logical sets. For example, in the case of GNC commands this is a triple of values representing the commanded Heading, Speed and Altitude. These GNC commands are used, along with the current instantaneous UAV state (i.e. angles, velocities, altitude) to drive a set of PID-based Inner Loops, contained in

the Flight AP Control block. The outputs from this block are the flight surfaces commanded positions (elevator, aileron, rudder and flaps) and engine throttle settings, which are sent to the Aircraft FDM.
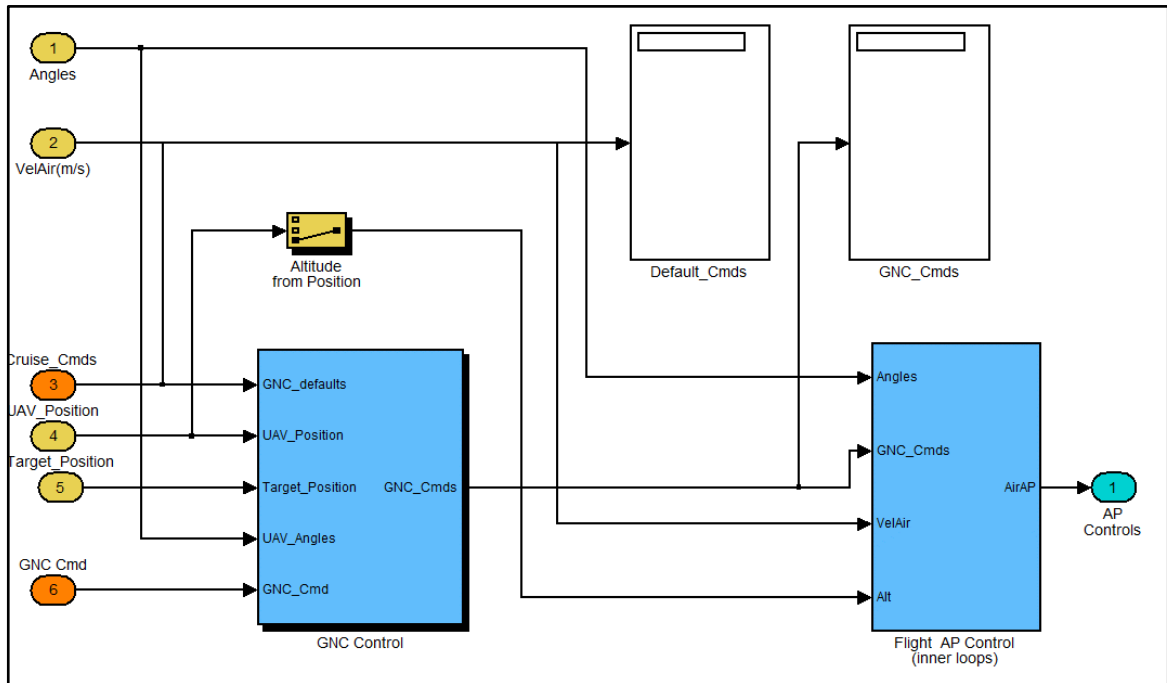
Figure E-1: Autopilot Top Level

E.2 Outer Loop Control

Three different outer loop control GNC modes are implemented in the AP model, as may be seen in Figure E-2. These include Waypoint Following, Waypoint Orbit, or active 4D target/avoidance guidance control.
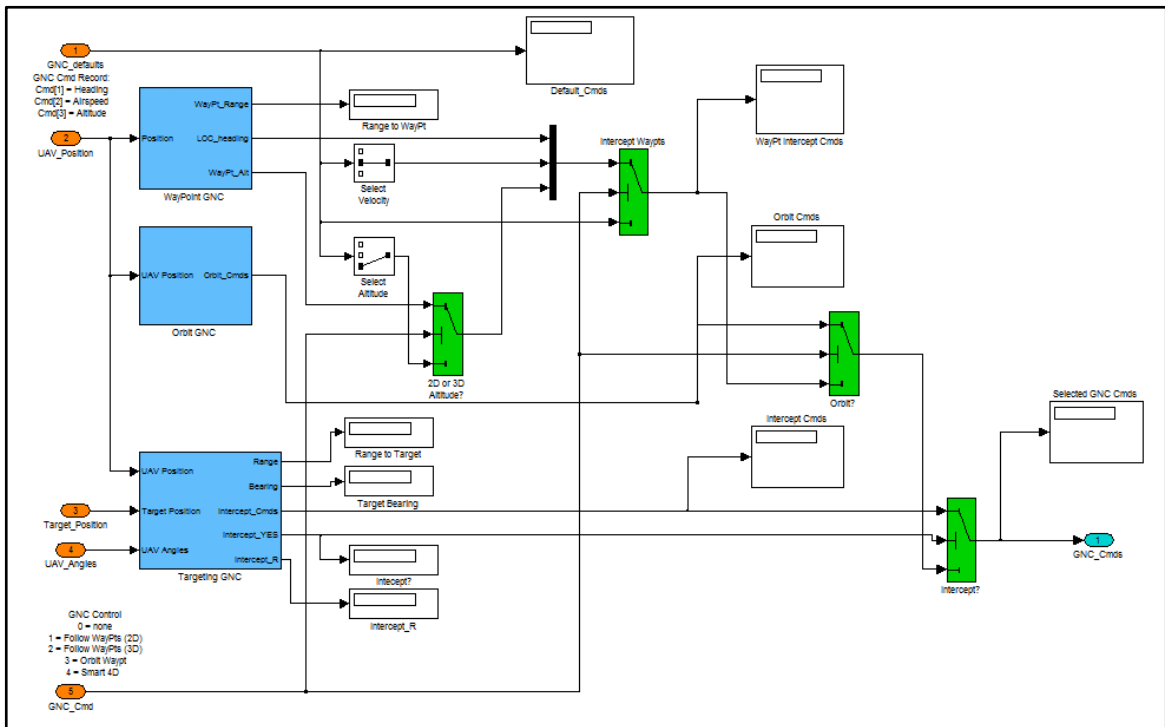
Figure E-2: GNC Control

The selection of the desired GNC mode is controlled through the GNC_Cmd input parameter, which is used as an enumerated mode index defined as follows:

0 = no GNC (use default "cruise" commands)

1 = 2D Waypoint Following (altitude fixed at cruise setting)

2 = 3D Waypoint Following (include waypoint altitude)

3 = Orbit Waypoint at defined Radius, Altitude and Speed

4 = Smart 4D GNC (targeting control using SP or PN/APN)

Details for each of these GNC control modes are given in the following sub-sections.

E.2.1 Waypoint Following

Figure E-3 shows the Waypoint Following control law which has been implemented. The algorithm calculates the range and heading from the UAV location (i.e. Position input) to the current waypoint position. All positions are defined in terms of latitude, longitude and altitude above sea level. Built-in calculation blocks included with the AeroSIM library are used to determine the distance between 3D points assuming an earth-centered reference frame, and use of the WGS84 standard earth ellipsoid model (Unmanned Dynamics, 2006). The waypoint selector block automatically cycles through a pre-defined set of waypoints which are in sequence order. The waypoint selector automatically switches from the current waypoint to the next one when the UAV position comes within a minimum range of the targeted waypoint (i.e. typically 100m). 2D range is used to define the required UAV heading (called LOC_heading) needed to intercept the waypoint in a horizontal manner (i.e. latitude and longitude only). The waypoint altitude is also set as the UAV commanded altitude if 3D waypoint following is activated.
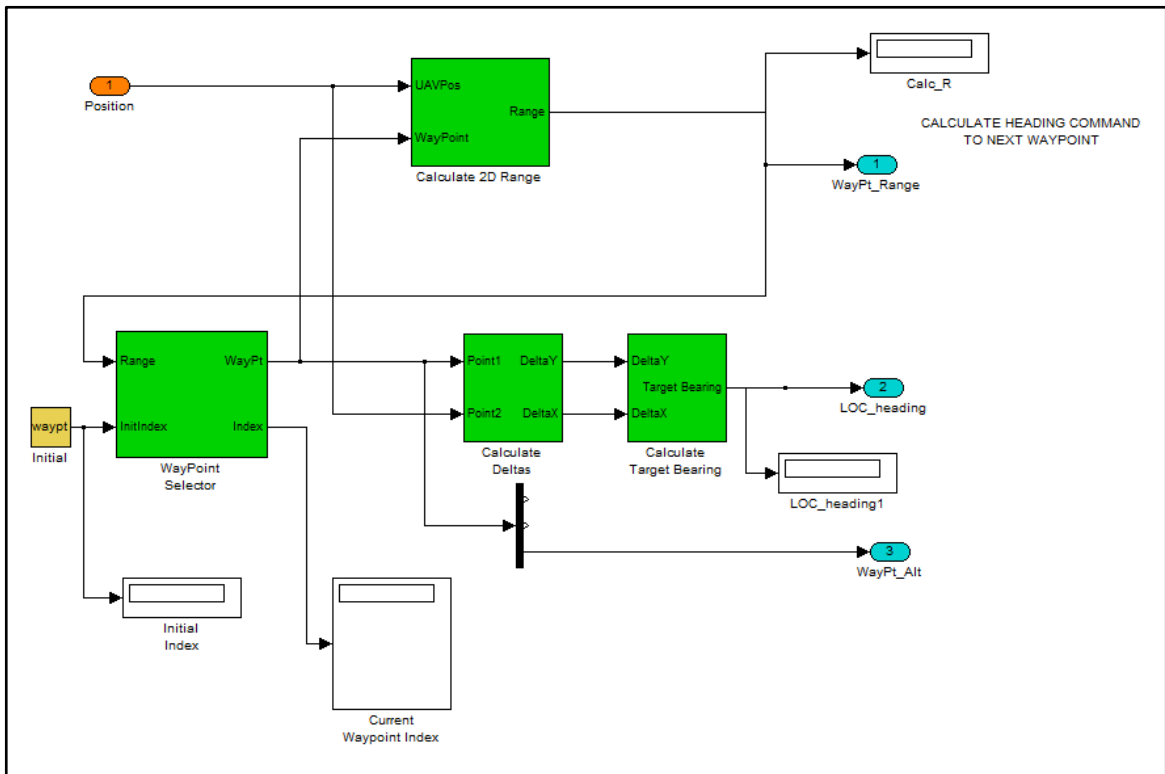
Figure E-3: Waypoint Following Control

E.2.2 Waypoint Orbit

A special waypoint orbiting GNC mode has been implemented, as shown in Figure E-4. The current UAV range to the orbit waypoint (Orbit_WayPt) is compared against the target radius (Orbit_R). From this difference, a heading command is calculated using a modified PID loop to achieve a constant radius orbit about the defined waypoint. Note that when the difference in UAV radius and Orbit_R is near zero, and relative target bearing is to the right at +90 deg a stable circular orbit in a clockwise (CW) direction has been achieved. The algorithm can also accommodate a counter-clockwise (CCW) orbit direction, where the equivalent bearing would be -90 deg. The other two GNC commands are set to a constant orbit speed (Orbit_Sp) and altitude (Orbit_Alt).

296
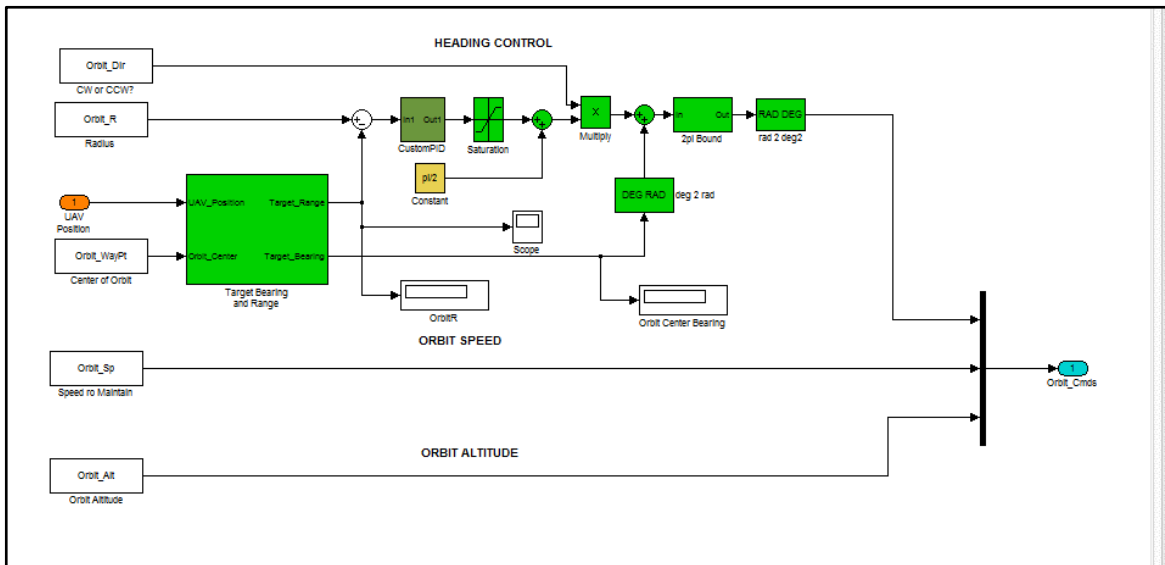
Figure E-4: Waypoint Orbit Control

E.2.4 Active Targeting Guidance

Two forms of active UAV targeting guidance have been implemented, as shown in Figure E-5. A manual selector is used within the Simulink block to select between either Simple Pursuit or Proportional Navigation. Both algorithms use the same inputs, namely UAV Position and Target Position and from these are calculated the instantaneous range and bearing from the UAV to the target. Range is calculated in 3D space, while bearing assumes a 2D horizontal solution. In the vertical direction, the commanded altitude is simply set to the same as the target altitude. A desired interception velocity (Intercept_Vel) is used as the speed command. Note that a small difference in altitude (Intercept_DZ) is used as a safety feature to prevent an actual collision, although this could be set to zero to cause a direct hit.

297
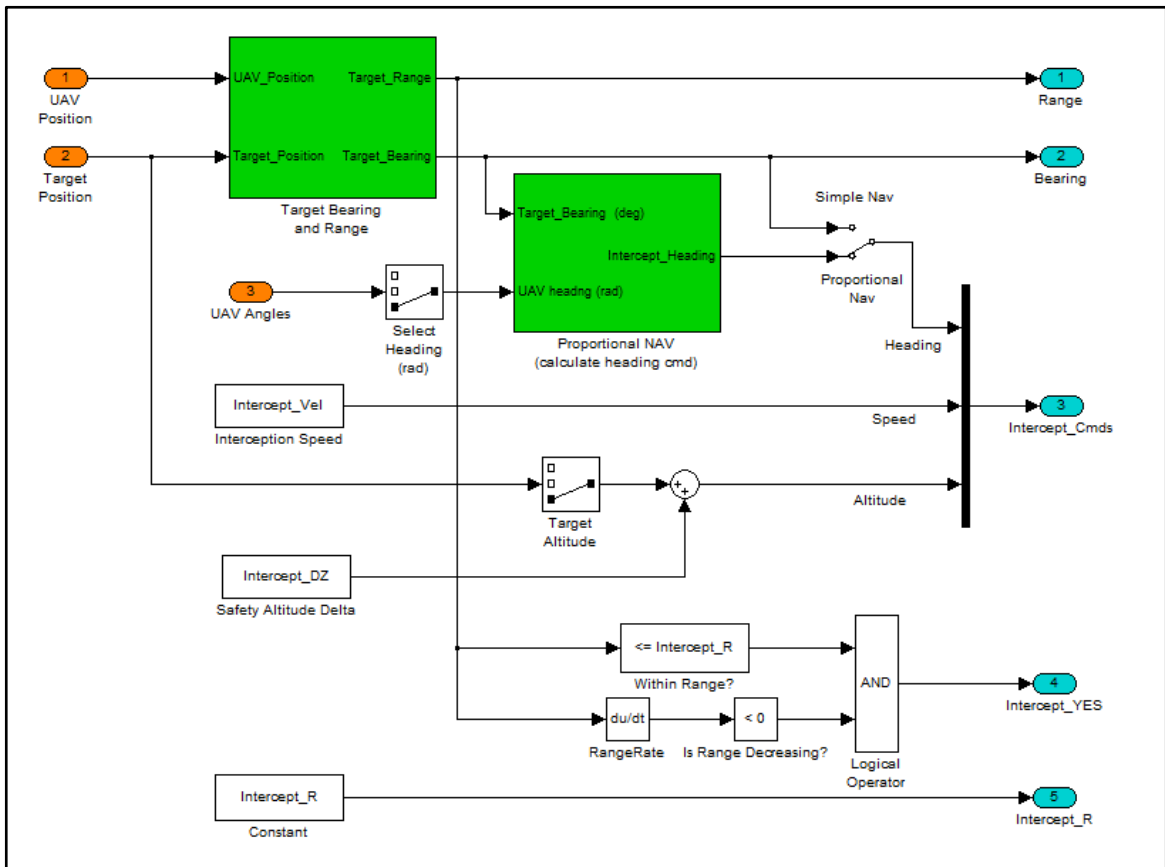
Figure E-5: Targeting Control

For both forms of guidance, the algorithm will only activate once the range to target drops below a certain value (Intercept_R) which may be interpreted here as the detection range of the UAV detect, sense and avoid system. The targeting algorithm features an "escape clause" which will only continue the interception attempt if the range between UAV and target continues to decrease and the absolute range stays below the Intercept_R. If either of these conditions become false, the algorithm assumes a failed interception attempt and will abort the engagement. An external flag (Intercept_YES) is output by the Targeting GNC module, and used in the Outer Loop as a switch to select between the interception and whatever default GNC mode is to be used.

E.2.4.1 Simple Navigation

In Simple Pursuit (SP) navigation mode, the algorithm is very simple. The UAV heading command is simply set to the current bearing to the target. Note that in a typical dynamic situation where the target continues to move, this will typically result in the pursuing aircraft chasing the target aircraft.

E.2.4.2 Proportional Navigation

For Proportional Navigation (PN) a more advanced algorithm is used to set the UAV heading command, as shown in Figure E-6.
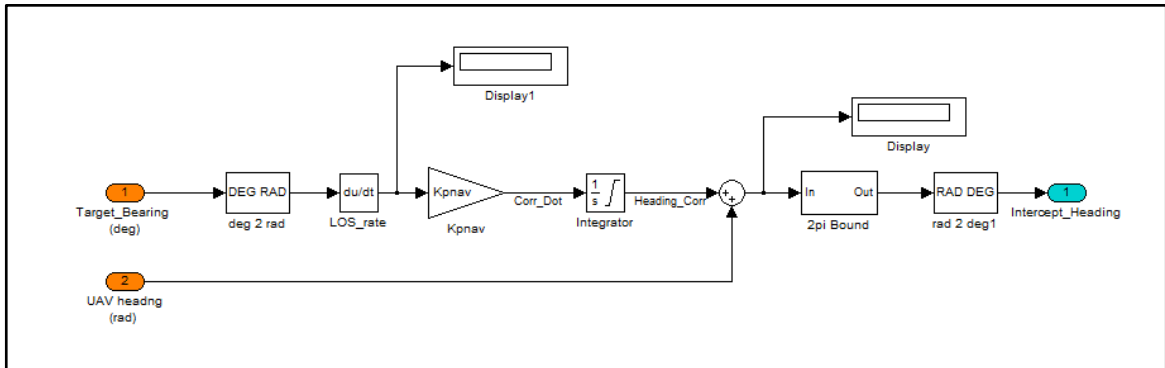
Figure E-6: Proportional Navigation Control

This is the implementation of the Proportional Navigation (PN) control law as discussed in Section 5.3.3.2, and in particular equation 5-19. The algorithm uses the rate of change of the target bearing (i.e. LOS_rate) and calculates the corresponding UAV heading command change rate (i.e. Corr_Dot), which will be proportional to the LOS rate using the Proportional Navigation gain (Kpnav). This is integrated to achieve the heading correction needed, and added to the current UAV heading to form the updated UAV heading command. Integrator limits are used to prevent integrator wind-up such as when

this algorithm should be dormant (i.e. range is outside the Intercept_R).   When LOS rate approaches zero, so will the heading correction rate. Assuming a properly tuned value of Kpnav this should create the situation where the UAV will appear to lead the target, which should result in a successful interception.

The forgoing discussion assumes a Proportional Navigation law, where the desire is to intercept the target (i.e. create a 4D encounter). If a negative value of Kpnav is used, this will have the opposite effect, and cause the aircraft to attempt to avoid the other aircraft. A negative value of Kpnav results in heading corrections which will tend to maximize the LOS rate between the interceptor and target.

E.3 Inner Loop Control

Inner loop controls are used to calculate the aircraft flight surfaces and throttle settings needed to achieve the GNC commands calculated by the Outer Loop modes as discussed previously. The overall structure may be seen in Figure E-7. In general, these inner loops are simple PID-based control laws which dynamically adjust the various flight controls in a closed-loop feedback control format to obtain these goals. The current UAV body angles (angles), airstream velocities (VelAir) and altitude are used to in conjunction with the GNC commands (GNC_Cmds) to calculate the corresponding errors in the UAV attitude, airspeed and altitude, and from these the various control surface deflections and throttle settings are determined.
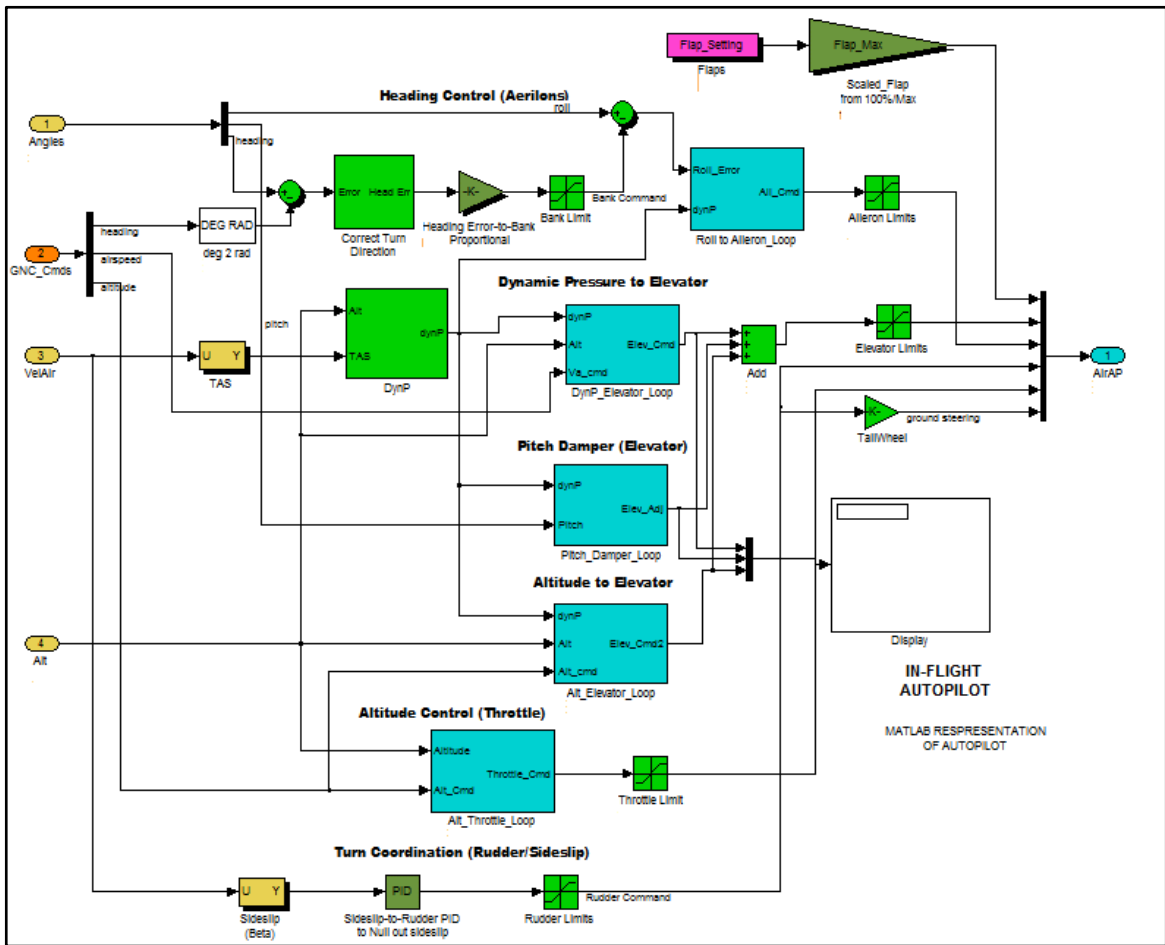
Figure E-7: Autopilot Inner Loops

The Picollo II autopilot uses the concept of scaled PID gains in most of the PID loops, to adjust the control behavior to the current flight speed of the UAV. This feature is included in the AP model and follows the description provided in the Picollo II technical manual (CloudCap Technologies, 2006). A reference dynamic pressure of 380 Pascals[24] is used, based on the technical details provided in this reference and the gain

---

[24] Dynamic pressure is Pdyn = ½ * air density * airspeed[2.] Assuming standard day and near sea level conditions, where air density is approximately 1.2 kg/m^3, a dynamic pressure of 380 Pascals corresponds to a forward airspeed of about 12.6 m/s.

definition for the Aerosonde UAV (Aerosonde AAI, 2006). Details for each of the individual Inner Loops featured in the current AP model are as follows.

E.3.1 Heading from Roll (Aileron Control)

The commanded heading and UAV heading are compared, to determine the heading error. A simple proportional gain is used to calculate the required bank angle. This bank angle is limited to the aerodynamic limits of the airframe, and compared with the UAV roll body angle to determine the roll error. Note that the inner PID control loops for each of the primary flight controls (ailerons, elevator and rudder) are essentially identical. The aileron loop is shown here as an example. Any major differences will be noted in the next sub-sections.

Roll error is the primary driver for the aileron PID control loop, which is shown in Figure E-8. As shown this is a modified PID control loop, with each of the gains scaled by the reference dynamic pressure versus the actual UAV dynamic pressure. The proportional term will be roll error multiplied by the scaled Kp. The integral term will integrate the roll error and multiply this by Ki. The derivative term will be the current first derivative of roll (i.e. roll rate) multiplied by Kd. These three terms are added together to form the overall aileron flight surface command. A limit is applied as shown in Figure E-7, which corresponds to the mechanical limits of the aileron deflection angle.
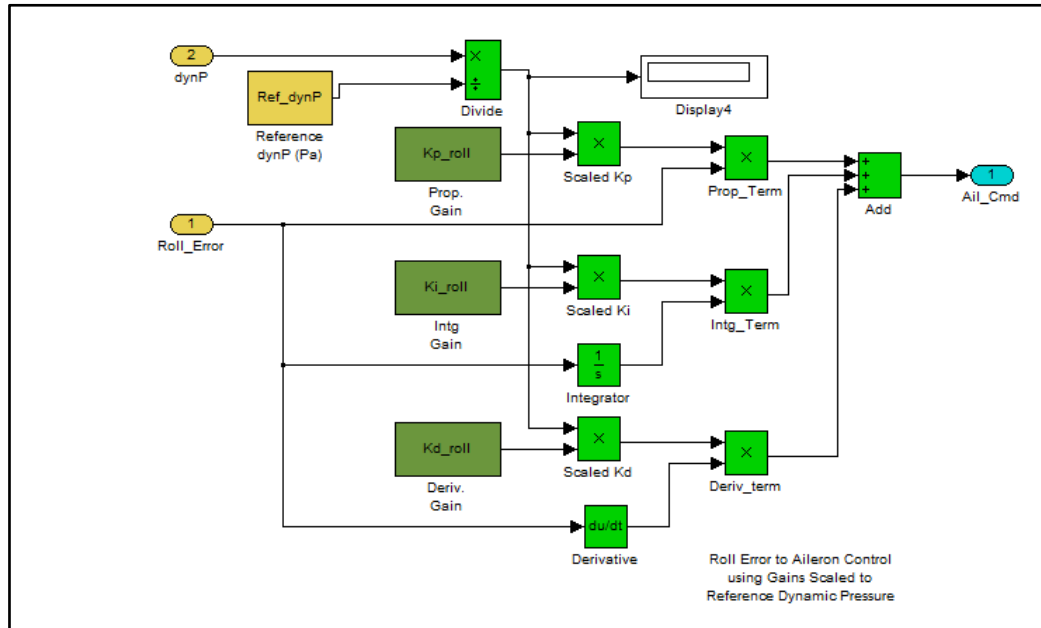
Figure E-8: Roll to Aileron PID Loop

E.3.2 Speed from Pitch (Elevator Control)

This inner loop implements airspeed from pitch control, the primary elevator control loop. The driving error term is the difference between command airspeed, and actual airspeed, both converted to dynamic pressure. This is used to drive a PID algorithm with the output interpreted as the elevator flight surface command. As with the ailerons, this elevator command is limited to the elevator mechanical deflection range.

E.3.3 Pitch Damper (Elevator Adjustment)

The AP simulation includes a feature used in the Picollo II which applies a small trim to the elevator command to reduce pitch oscillations. Small P-D gains are used, which result in small dynamic adjustments to the elevator command which will counter any violent pitch motions. The output is an elevator adjustment, which is added to the main elevator/pitch control output described in the previous sub-section.

E.3.4 Altitude from Pitch (Elevator Control)

The AP simulation includes an alternative altitude control law, using elevator to speed up the rate of climbs and descents, versus the more typical method of using throttle control. The driving error term is the difference between the altitude command and the current UAV altitude. This term generally only becomes dominant when there are large, abrupt changes in the altitude command. As with the pitch damper, this output from this inner loop is added to the total elevator position command.

E.3.5 Altitude from Throttle Control

This inner loop is the primary altitude control law. The driving error term is altitude error (i.e. commanded altitude minus current UAV altitude). In this case the PID gains are not scaled by dynamic pressure, as shown in Figure E-9. Integrator limits are used to prevent anti-windup of the integral term. The total PID command output is interpreted as the throttle setting, and subject to limits as shown in Figure E-7.
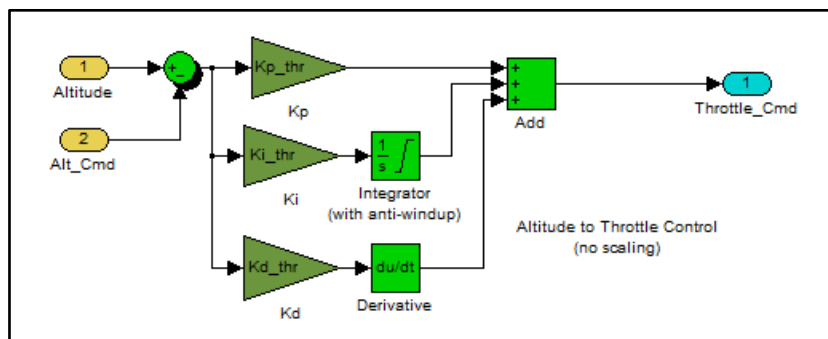
Figure E-9: Throttle to Altitude PID Loop

E.3.6 Turn Coordination (Rudder Control)

This inner loop uses the rudder to control turns, with the aim to minimize side-slip velocity. The idea is that when side-slip is reduced to zero, the turn is perfectly

coordinated. Since the goal is zero, the error term is simply the current side-slip value, assuming the use of negative PID gains. As with the throttle control loop, these PID gains are not scaled so the internal PID algorithm is similar to as shown in Figure E-9. The output of this inner loop is the rudder deflection angle command, which is limited to the mechanical deflection limits of the rudder. This also drives a tail-wheel position for the case of the GiantStik, but this has no effect on 4D simulation cases.

E.3.7 Flap Setting

This is a hold-over from when the simulation was used to develop automatic takeoff and landing (ATOL) algorithms, where flaps are typically used. There is no active flap inner loop in the 4D simulation. The flaps are simply set to a fixed scaled value (i.e. 0-100% of maximum deflection angle) which for typical 4D simulations will be zero (i.e. no flaps used).

Appendix F – Ethics Approval Materials

The Night-time VFR Light Experiment as documented in Chapter 4 was a human factors experiment which involved the recruitment of human test subjects from both within and outside the RAVEN project team. As such, the Interdisciplinary Committee on Ethics in Human Research (ICEHR) review process in place at Memorial University was followed. The ICEHR reference number assigned to this research project is **20140493-EN**. This appendix is an archive of the ICEHR review and approval paperwork applicable to this research project, as follows:

1. Ethics Review Approval Letter (September 20, 2013)

2. Signed Consent Form (Sample)

3. Renewal Request and Progress Report (September 26, 2014)

4. Application for Ethics Review (August 9, 2013)

The test procedure used during the experiment was included as an attachment in the original Application for Ethic Review form. This is already detailed in Chapter 4 and for the sake of brevity is omitted this Appendix.

As per ICEHR guidelines the originals of the Signed Consent Forms and notes and data collections forms used during the experiment will be securely retained for a minimum of five (5) years from the publication date of this thesis.

F.1 Ethics Review Approval Letter

ICEHR Number:	**20140493-EN**
Approval Period:	September 20, 2013 – September 30, 2014
Funding Source:	ACOA [title: Project RAVEN II]
Responsible Faculty:	Dr. Siu O'Young Faculty of Engineering
Title of Project:	*Assessment of Human Visual Acuity versus Night-time VFR Light Systems*

MEMORIAL
UNIVERSITY

**Interdisciplinary Committee on
Ethics in Human Research (ICEHR)**

Office of Research - IIC2010C
St. John's, NL Canada A1C 5S7
Tel: 709 864-2561 Fax: 709 864-4612
www.mun.ca/research

September 20, 2013

Mr. Jonathan Stevenson
Faculty of Engineering
Memorial University of Newfoundland

Dear Mr. Stevenson:

Thank you for your email correspondence of September 13, 2013 addressing the issues raised by the Interdisciplinary Committee on Ethics in Human Research (ICEHR) concerning the above-named research project.

The ICEHR has re-examined the proposal with the clarification and revisions submitted, and is satisfied that the concerns raised by the Committee have been adequately addressed. In accordance with the *Tri-Council Policy Statement on Ethical Conduct for Research Involving Humans (TCPS2)*, the project has been granted *full ethics clearance* to September 30, 2014.

If you intend to make changes during the course of the project which may give rise to ethical concerns, please forward an amendment request with a description of these changes to Theresa Heath at icehr@mun.ca for the Committee's consideration.

The *TCPS2* requires that you submit an annual status report on your project to the ICEHR before September 30, 2014. If you plan to continue the project, you need to request renewal of your ethics clearance, including a brief summary on the progress of your research. When the project no longer requires contact with human participants, is completed and/or terminated, you need to provide the final report with a brief summary, and your file will be closed. The annual update form is on the ICEHR website at http://www.mun.ca/research/ethics/humans/icehr/applications/.

We wish you success with your research.

Yours sincerely,

Gail Wideman
Gail Wideman, Ph.D.
Vice-Chair, Interdisciplinary Committee on
Ethics in Human Research

GW/th

copy: Supervisor – Dr. Siu O'Young, Faculty of Engineering

Director, Office of Research Services

Office of Research Services, Bruneau Centre for Research & Innovation   Page 1 of 1

F.2 Signed Consent Form (Sample)

(Page 1 of 3)

Informed Consent Form

Title: Assessment of Human Visual Acuity versus Night-time VFR Light Systems.

Researcher: Jonathan Stevenson, Ph.D. Candidate, Faculty of Engineering
Contact: (514) 465-0777 (cell) or jstevenson@mun.ca

You are invited to take part in this research project as a human test subject.

This form is part of the process of informed consent. It should give you the basic idea of what the research is about and what your participation will involve. It also describes your right to withdraw from the study at any time. In order to decide whether you wish to participate in this research study, you should understand enough about its risks and benefits to be able to make an informed decision. This is the informed consent process. Take time to read this carefully and to understand the information given to you. Please contact the researcher if you have any questions about the study or for more information not included here before you consent.

Participation in this study is entirely voluntary. If you choose not to take part in this research, there will be no negative consequences for you, now or in the future.

Introduction:
This research project is being conducted as part of my doctoral thesis, under the supervision of Dr. Siu O'Young and Dr. Luc Rolland. The general subject area is the assessment of the current level of safety of small (<12 foot wingspan) unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV). This research is being conducted and funded as part of Project RAVEN II.

Purpose of study:
This specific experiment is the "Assessment of Human Visual Acuity versus Night-time VFR Light Systems". We are planning to conduct testing of a set standard aviation lights in order to assess their applicability for use on small unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV). The basic objective is to determine if the current lighting requirements make sense for the small aircraft being considered, and/or determine what would be a more appropriate minimum standard. The results of this research should result in an improved understanding of the minimum light set that is applicable to a small UAV and may lead to recommendations of improved Visual Flight Rules (VFR) for Canadian Aviation Regulations for night-time UAV operations.

What you will do in this study:
A mock-up of a small UAV will be setup on an elevated test stand at the end of the longest runway at the abandoned U.S. Naval Air Station at Argentia. The UAV will be equipped with a set of standard aviation lights (navigation and strobe lights) which meet the current regulations for manned aviation in Canada.

As a human test subject, you will be asked how well you can see the aircraft lights during a dark moonless night, as the aircraft is rotated to a series of different viewing angles, ranging from pointing head-on to tail-on to your viewing location, which will be inside the darkened cab of a large RV, simulating the night-time conditions inside a manned aircraft cockpit. You will be asked what lights you can see, plus how you perceive the aircraft's orientation. A small visual aid in the form of a model aircraft, with light positions indicated, will be provided to assist you if required. A random series of 5-8 different positions will be tested in this manner, at each of three increasing ranges along the runway (500m, 1000m, and 2000m).

Estimated Test Date and Time Commitment:
This experiment must be run during a clear moonless night. Therefore, the timing of the experiment will depend on an acceptable weather window plus the phase of the moon. At this time the estimated date for the experiment is during one of the evenings of Oct 1-7, 2013. It is expected that approximately 5 minutes of observations will be required by each test subject at each of the test ranges. Assuming 12 test subjects, this means about an hour spent at each of three locations, for a total of 3 hours of testing. The tests will be conducted at the abandoned Argentia airfield, which is approximately 90 minutes away from St.John's by automobile. Therefore the total time commitment will likely involve an entire evening (i.e. 6pm to 12 midnight) including travel time to and from Argentia, time to setup, etc.

MEMORIAL UNIVERSITY

Night VFR Experiment Informed Consent Form

RAVEN

Withdrawal from the study:
You are free to withdraw from the study before the testing starts, for example if a scheduling conflict makes it impossible for you to be present. However, given the remote nature of the test site, and the logistics required to coordinate the gathering of the test subjects at Argentia, it will be impractical for you to withdraw from the study once we have arrived on-site and have begun testing. This is especially important given the limited number of test subjects being used, to provide a complete set of results to permit comparison between sighting locations and to allow valid statistical results. For this reason we ask that you carefully consider your participation in this study and pledge to complete your portion of the testing to completion. Also, since we aim to collect normal human factors data, and given the need to drive to/from the test site, participants must **refrain from taking any alcohol or other drugs within 8 hours** of the chosen test date and time.

Possible risks:
The test procedure itself is very low-risk, and we don't expect any risks to your well-being once at the test site. However, there is a risk due to the need to travel to/from the test site after dark. We will arrange a central local meeting place (in Donovan's Industrial near the Topsail Road overpass) so we might arrange carpooling to minimize the number of vehicles involved and proceed to/from the test site as a small convoy. A large RV will be used on the airfield, both to house the test subjects while they wait their turn in the "cockpit" and also to move everyone safety and quickly between the three test ranges.

Anonymity and Use of Data Collected:
It is necessary to collect some identifying information on this form and obtain your signature for consent to participate in this study. However, once we are on-site in Argentia, each test subject be assigned an anonymous identification (e.g. "Test Subject A"). The only identification information that will be recorded will be your age, gender, and nominal visual acuity (i.e. do you wear corrective lenses?). There will be video footage collected of the external view from the RV to the aircraft (UAV) before each set of visual acuity tests, but the human factor testing will not be videotaped. The data will be processed, analyzed and presented over the period of about one year as part the Ph.D. thesis preparation and presentation. The data will be kept for a minimum of five years, as per Memorial University policy on Integrity in Scholarly Research.

Sharing of Results with Participants:
It is expected that the results of this study will become part of my Ph.D. thesis. The results may also used in at least one journal article (paper). Participants in the study are of course invited and encouraged to attend any presentations and public lectures which may be the outcome of this study. Copies of any published results (i.e. journal articles) will also be made available if possible. The participants will be alerted to such opportunities through use of the contact information (e-mail) collected on this form.

Questions:
You are welcome to ask questions at any time during your participation in this research. If you would like more information about this study, please contact Jonathan Stevenson using the contact information in the header of this form.

Test Subject Identification and Contact Information:

Age: _____ Years

Gender: ☐ Male   ☐ Female

Visual Acuity: I have ☐ natural vision, ☐ wear eyeglasses, and/or ☐ contacts

Aviation Experience: ☐ None ☐ Some aviation experience ☐ I am (or have been) a Pilot

Telephone: (___)_____ E-mail: _____

Note: The contact information will be used to coordinate the test date/time and travel arrangements, and to allow post-test communications to test subjects as to the progress of the research.

MEMORIAL UNIVERSITY

Night VFR Experiment Informed Consent Form

RAVEN

Informed Consent Signature

ICEHR Approval Statement:
The proposal for this research has been reviewed by the Interdisciplinary Committee on Ethics in Human Research and found to be in compliance with Memorial University's ethics policy. If you have ethical concerns about the research (such as the way you have been treated or your rights as a participant), you may contact the Chairperson of the ICEHR at icehr@mun.ca or by telephone at 709-864-2861.

Your signature on this form means that:
- You have read the information about the research.
- You have been able to ask questions about this study.
- You are satisfied with the answers to all your questions.
- You understand what the study is about and what you will be doing.
- You understand that you are free to withdraw from the study, up to the time when the team has arrived at the test site. However, once at Argentia it will be impractical to withdraw from the experiment and you will be expected to complete your portion of the testing to the best of your ability.
- You understand that any data collected from you up to the point of your withdrawal will be retained by the researcher for use in the research study.

If you sign this form, you do not give up your legal rights and do not release the researchers from their professional responsibilities.

Your Signature:
I have read what this study is about and understood the risks and benefits. I have had adequate time to think about this and had the opportunity to ask questions and my questions have been answered.

☐ I agree to participate in the research project understanding the risks and contributions of my participation, that my participation is voluntary, and that I may end my participation at any time up until the point of departure for Argentia.

A copy of this Informed Consent Form has been given to me for my records.

_____   _____
Signature of participant   Date

Researcher's Signature:
I have explained this study to the best of my ability. I invited questions and gave answers. I believe that the participant fully understands what is involved in being in the study, any potential risks of the study and that he or she has freely chosen to be in the study.

_____   _____
Signature of Principal Investigator   Date

F.3 Renewal Request and Progress Report

(Page 1 of 4)

Interdisciplinary Committee on Ethics in Human Research (ICEHR)

Annual Update

Select type: ◉ **Renewal Request & Progress Report**   ○ **Closure Request & Final Report**

ICEHR Approval #: 20140493-EN   Department: Engineering

Principal Investigator: Jonathan Stevenson   Supervisor: Dr. Siu O'Young
                                               (if applicable)

Date Submitted: 26-Sept-2014   Project Start Date: 30-Sept-2013

Project Title: Assessment of human visual acuity versus night-time VFR light systems

As indicated in your approval letter, it is your responsibility as the Principal Investigator (PI) to maintain ethics clearance on your research project and to report when the project has been completed or terminated.

To avoid a lapse in ethics clearance, please ensure that all relevant sections of this form have been completed.

Requests for renewal or closure **will not** be processed until a completed annual update form is submitted.

Submit completed forms, by email, to: icehr@mun.ca.
Please quote your ICEHR Approval Number in the subject line.

If you have any questions, you can also reach us by Telephone: (709) 864-2561/2861.

ICEHR is located in the Bruneau Centre for Research and Innovation, **IIC2010C**
Memorial University of Newfoundland, St. John's, NL A1C 5S7

TCPS2 (Tri-Council Policy Statement: Ethical Conduct for Research Involving Humans, 2010):
Article 6.14 The REB shall make the final determination as to the nature and frequency of continuing research ethics review in accordance with a proportionate approach to research ethics review. At minimum, continuing research ethics review shall consist of an annual status report, and an end-of-study report.

Access to Information and Protection of Privacy
The information on this form is collected under the authority of the Memorial University Act (RSNL 1990 Chapter M-7) and will be used by the Interdisciplinary Committee on Ethics in Human Research (ICEHR) to assess your application for ethics review and to administer ethics clearance. If you have any questions about the collection and use of this information, please contact the ICEHR at icehr@mun.ca or at (709) 864-2561/2861.

ICEHR Annual Update (042014)   *Page 1*

311

Annual Update Form

1. **Project Information Update:**

Ethics clearance may be **closed** if:
- Data collection and primary analysis is complete and;
- You are confident that no further contact with participants will be needed.

Ethics clearance should **remain active** if one or both of the following apply:
- There is ongoing funding attached to this project. It is advisable to maintain active clearance until funding is concluded.
- This is a **student project**. Active ethics clearance is required until the student's final thesis/dissertation has been submitted to and approved by the School of Graduate Studies.

Project Status:

⦿ Active and on-going

◯ Completed (choose one/both of the following):
    ☐ **Students**: check this box to confirm that your thesis/dissertation has been submitted & approved;
    ☐ **Funded projects**: check this box to confirm that funding for this project has been completed.

◯ Terminated

a) When did data collection for this project begin? _October 5, 2013_

b) If project is on-going, what is the anticipated date of completion? _April 30, 2015_

c) If project is completed or was terminated, when did this occur? _____

d) If project was terminated, give a brief explanation as to why.

```
[                                                            ]
```

2. **Other Research Ethics Board (REB):**

a) Does the research involve another REB?   ◯ Yes   ⦿ No

b) Does the research involve another institution/organization (e.g. school board, band council)?   ◯ Yes   ⦿ No

c) If **yes**, has the REB and/or the institution renewed their approval?   ◯ Yes   ◯ No

   If **yes** to (c), please attach a copy of the approval letter

3. **Funding Status for ongoing projects:**

a) Is this project currently funded? ◯ Yes   ⦿ No   If **yes**, funding agency/sponsor: _____

b) If **not**, is funding being sought? ◯ Yes   ⦿ No   If **yes**, funding agency/sponsor: _____

c) Funded research title (if different than application title):

```
Project RAVEN II
```

d) PI of funded project: _Dr. Siu O'Young_

4. **Details of Recruitment of Participants:**

☐ Research participants are currently being recruited or participating
☐ Research participants have not yet been recruited
☑ Participants' involvement is finished, and data analysis, writing of thesis/reports/publications is underway
☐ Other: _____

    a) Number of participants recruited: _13____

    b) Number of participants who have completed the study: _13____

    c) Number of participants who have withdrawn: _0____

    d) Number of participants still required: _0____

5. **Changes and/or Amendments to Approved Protocol**

Have there been any changes to this project since the most recent ethics clearance?

For example: changes to the study protocol, consent process, documents, investigators/research personnel who interact with participants or have access to the data, etc...

    NOTE: Any revisions or amendments to the study must be approved by ICEHR **prior to implementation.**

○ **Yes**, ICEHR was notified and changed have been approved.

◉ **No**, there have been no amendments to the project since initial clearance was granted, or since last annual update and renewal of ethics clearance.

6. **Ethical concerns or issues**

While carrying out the research, have you encountered any ethical issues (minor or major) that were not anticipated?　　○ Yes　◉ No

7. **Adverse or unanticipated effects from participation**

Since receiving your initial clearance for this project, have any participants experienced any adverse or unanticipated effects as a result of their participation? If yes, please elaborate on these effects in #8.　　○ Yes　◉ No

8. Project progress summary or final report

In the space below, provide a **progress report** (if project is ongoing), or **final report** (if project is completed).

Include:
1. A brief description of the project's progress since being approved.
2. Any challenges that you or your research team faced during recruitment, seeking informed consent, and participant debriefing.

The portion of the VFR Experiment involving the use of human subjects was conducted on Saturday night, October 5th, 2013. The location was as planned - on the abandoned main runway at the old U.S.Naval Station at Argentia.

The recruitment of test subjects was more difficult then expected - only 13 subjects finally obtained (target was for 20+). Sufficient results were obtained to gather trends, but not enough to for detailed statistical analysis.

Start of experiment occurred a bit later then planned (i.e. 9:15PM) and thus ended later, though more or less as expected (i.e. ~4 hrs, 1:30 am completion). Morale of all involved was quite go in spite of the late start and the onset of less then ideal weather about 1/2 through the experiment (rain and drizzle for ~30-45min). The wise to make use of a self-contained RV van to house the test subjects and move them up/down the runway turned out to be the key element that made the experiment go smoothly. While the tests were underway, there was excellent camaraderie event in the back of the RV as people enjoyed some cards, tea, etc., while each test subject waiting there turn to come up into the darkened cab. So what might have been a very boring, arduous wait was actually quite pleasant.

The experimental test procedure turned out to work very well, with no-one expressing any negative effects or problems with it. The only technical problem encountered was problems trying to collect video imagery in parallel to the HF experiment - mostly due to the sensitivity of the video equipment to the poor weather conditions outside (i.e. cold, wet/drizzle). This forced a return to the test site in equivalent lighting conditions (i.e. new moon in early November) to record the video - this second set of data collection did not involve the HF test subjects, only a core 4 person crew from the RAVEN team.

While not enough test subjects were present to gather statistics (i.e. ideally want 30+ for this!) the results from the night-time VFR experiment did allow the observation of important trends, in particular it confirmed the minimum sight distances for aviation light systems, and in particular the LED-based set that was being proposed for use on small UAV. The results also confirmed that even on a very small-sized aircraft these light systems still work and provide the minimum night-time safety afforded to equivalent manned aircraft in similar lighting and weather conditions. This is an important, positive conclusion from this experiment, and a core element of my thesis on UAV Safety analysis.

Any additional comments (e.g. problems completing form, concerns about particular questions, etc.)

9. Signature(s):

Note:
- Signature(s) **not** required if submitted from PI's @mun.ca email.
- Student's must copy their supervisor on submission e-mail.
- If submitted from an non-MUN email, or filled out by hand and scanned, you (and your supervisor, if applicable) must sign below.

Principal Investigator:

Name (print)	Date:	Signature *(if required)*

Supervisor:

Name (print)	Date:	Signature *(if required)*

F.4 Application for Ethics Review

General instructions: This application form has been revised to facilitate the application and review process. It is designed to be completed and submitted electronically. Use the space inside the expandable textbox to provide the information requested. Please do not skip items. **Answer "n/a" if it does not apply to your proposed research**. **Click or double - click on the "yes/no" box to select**.

1. TITLE OF PROPOSED RESEARCH PROJECT

Assessment of Human Visual Acuity versus Night-time VFR Light Systems

b. PREVIOUS OR OTHER RESEARCH ETHICS BOARD APPROVAL(S)

Has this research project been reviewed by another institution's ethics board or another ethics board within your institution?

☐ Yes [Attach a copy of the application you submitted and the approval letter.]

☐ Pending application ☐ Animal Care ☐ BioSafety [please attach copies of approvals]

☒ No

*Note: **Research that has been reviewed and approved by another REB, please refer to Guidelines for completing the proposal.**.*

2. ORGANIZATIONAL OR COMMUNITY CONSENT

If the research is taking place within a recognized organization or community (e.g. School Boards, Band Councils, etc.) which requires that formal consent be sought prior to the involvement of individual participants, explain whether consent from that organization/community will be sought. Describe this consent process and attach a copy of the approval document. If consent will not be sought, please provide a justification and describe any alternative forms of consultation that may take place.

N/A

3. STUDENT OR POST DOCTORAL FELLOW PRINCIPAL INVESTIGATOR INFORMATION

Title: (Dr./Mr./Ms./etc)	Last Name:	First Name:	Middle Initial:
Mr	**Stevenson**	Jonathan	D
Department/Faculty/School (or Institution if not MUN): Engineering			
Mailing address for correspondence, if different from department/faculty/school: Use Faculty of Engineering	MUN email address mandatory: jstevenson@mun.ca		
	Telephone: (514) 465-0777		
	MUN Student No. 008427577		

☐ MUN Undergraduate Student   ☐ MUN Master's Student   ☒ MUN PhD Student

☐ MUN Post-Doctoral Fellow   ☐ Other (specify): Click here to enter text.

4.   PROJECT PROGRAM

☐ Undergraduate Honours Thesis   ☐ Master's Thesis   ☒ Doctoral Dissertation

☐ Other: Click here to enter text.

5.   CO-PRINCIPAL INVESTIGATOR INFORMATION (to be completed if the project is being conducted by a group of students doing a group paper or report) N/A

6.   CO-INVESTIGATOR(S): *[Do not include supervisor's information here – see item 6]*

Name	Position	Faculty/Department	Email
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Click here to enter text.	Click here to enter text.	Click here to enter text.	Click here to enter text.
Click here to enter text.	Click here to enter text.	Click here to enter text.	Click here to enter text.

7.   SUPERVISOR(S)

Name	Department/Faculty/School (or Institution if not MUN)	Email
Principal Supervisor: Dr. Siu O'Young	Engineering	oyoung@mun.ca
Co-supervisor: Dr. Luc Rolland	Engineering	lrolland@mun.ca

8.   DATA COLLECTION START AND END DATES

Beginning of formal recruitment or informed consent process normally constitutes the start date of data collection.

Estimated project start date: 05-Aug-2013

Estimated start date of data collection involving human participants: **03-Oct-2013**
Note – Please allow 4 weeks for review process, 6 weeks during peak periods.

End date of involvement of human participants is when all data has been collected from participants, no further contact with them will be made, and all data are recorded and stored in accordance with the provisions of the approved application.

Estimated end date of involvement of human participants for this project: **30-Nov-2013**

Estimated project end date 31-Dec-2013

9.   USE OF SECONDARY DATA

Does your project involve secondary use of data collected for other purposes? If it involves the use of secondary data that is not in the public domain, provide letter of approval from the data holder.

☐ Only secondary data
☐ Both human participants and secondary data
☒ Only human participants

10.   FUNDING OF PROJECT

Is this project funded?   ☐ No

☒ Yes, funding agent/sponsor: ACOA/Project RAVEN II

If **no**, is funding being sought?   ☐ No

☐ Yes, funding agent/sponsor: Click here to enter text.

Will funds be administered through MUN? ☒ Yes   ☐ No   ☐ N/A

Funded research title if different from this application:
   Project RAVEN II (ACOA funded)

Principal Investigator of above funded research: Dr. Siu O'Young

11.   CONTRACTS

Is there a MUN funding or non-funded contract/agreement associated with the research? ☒ Yes   ☐ No

If **Yes**, please include one (1) copy of the contract/agreement with this application
The full RAVEN-ACOA contract is undergoing amendment but is now available at the office of the VPR (VP Research)

Is there any aspect of the contract/agreement that could put any member of the research team in a potential conflict of interest?   ☐ Yes   ☒ No

If **Yes**, please **elaborate under Section C, item #5**.

12.   SCHOLARLY REVIEW

The ICEHR will assume that research proposals prepared for presentation to the three national granting councils (CIHR, NSERC and SSHRC), as well as other funding agencies, will be subjected to scholarly review before funding is granted. The ethics review process for research that is beyond minimal risk will incorporate a determination of the project's scholarly merit and may request the researcher to provide full documentation of such scholarly review.

Please check one:

☒ The research project has undergone scholarly review prior to this application for ethics review by (**specify review committee** – e.g. departmental research committee, peer-review committee, etc):

This experiment was presented in the Research Proposal presented at my Comprehensive Exam in Jan 2009.

☐ The research project will undergo scholarly review prior to funding by (**specify review committee** – e.g. departmental research committee, peer-review committee, etc):

SECTION B – SUMMARY OF PROPOSED RESEARCH

1.   RATIONALE AND PURPOSE/RESEARCH QUESTION

Explain in non-technical, plain and clear language the purpose and objectives of the proposed project. Include hypothesis or research question if applicable. The rationale for doing the study must be clear.

Maximum 1 page
The full experimental plan is attached to this application. The overall research project (PhD project) is attempting to assess the equivalent level of safety aspects as related to unmanned aerial vehicles (i.e. how to make them as safe or safer then manned aircraft). One of the aspects is the sense and avoid aspects which includes the use of aviation lights to enhance the visibility of an aircraft, especially at night or in adverse lighting/weather, to prevent collisions. The specific research experiment in this application is focused on assessing the visual acuity of typical human subjects at ever-increasing sight distances.

2.   PROPOSED STUDY DESIGN/METHOD

Describe in some detail all procedures and methods to be used. Explain what the participants will be doing in the study, types of information to be gathered from participants, where and how it will be obtained and analyzed. If research includes intentions to publish, please indicate publication venues.

Attach a copy of all materials (survey questionnaires, interview questions, or other non-standard test instruments) to be used in the study.

Maximum 3 pages
Please see the attached experimental plan. The basic procedure will be to have each human subject seated inside a simulated night-time cockpit environment (inside the cab of an RV). A small 10' wingspan aircraft will then be presented to the test subject some distance away, with a set of standard aviation lights attached. The aircraft will be rotated to present various angles of sight (azimuth/heading) and the human subject will be asked to describe what they see and also their estimate of the relative position of the aircraft based on the lights visible.

3.   PARTICIPANTS INVOLVED IN THE STUDY

a.   Indicate who will be recruited as potential participants in this study

☐ Undergraduate students	☒ Graduate students	☒ Faculty or staff
☒ General population	☐ Children	☐ Adolescents
☐ Senior citizens	☐ Aboriginal people	☐ Other (specify): Click here to enter text.

b.   Specify the expected number of participants and exclusion criteria. Provide justification if participation is dependent on attributes such as culture, language, religion, mental or physical disability, sexual orientation, ethnicity, gender or age.

A minimum of 12 human subjects. At least half will be obtained from the current team members of Project RAVEN, and to ensure a good mix of genders, their friends/partners.

c. If your research involves Aboriginal peoples, please describe in detail the ethical issues relevant to the proposed project and how you plan to comply with the TCPS2 guidelines Chapter 9.

N/A

d. Is there any pre-existing relationship between you (or any member of your research team) and the participants (e.g. instructor-student; manager-employee)?

☒ Yes   ☐ No   ☐ N/A

If **yes**, please explain:

As previously explained, most of the test subjects will be from the RAVEN team. This will include using my supervisor(s) as test subjects too.

e. Are you or any member of your research team in a direct position of power to the participants outside the scope of the research study?

☒ Yes   ☐ No   ☐ N/A

If **yes**, please explain:

My supervisors will be there as test subjects, but they are also a member of the research team and thus some other members of the team are their students.

f. Will you or any member of your research team be collecting research data from your/their own students?

☒ Yes   ☐ No   ☐ N/A

If **yes**, please explain: My supervisors will be there as test subjects, but they are also a member of the research team and thus some other members of the team are their students.

g. Will the targeted research population consist of any vulnerable group that will have difficulty understanding or will not be able to give free and informed consent e.g. the mentally disabled, minors (under 19), or any institutionalized individuals such as prisoners, etc?

☐ Yes   ☒ No

If **yes**, please explain:
N/A

4. RECRUITMENT PROCESS AND STUDY LOCATION

a. Describe how, by whom, and from where the potential participants will be recruited. Where participant observation is to be used, please explain the form of your (or members of your team) insertion into the research setting (e.g. living in a community, visiting, attending organized functions). Please make it explicit where it is reasonable to anticipate that all or some of the participants who will be recruited will not speak English or will speak English as a second language. Describe any translation of recruitment materials, how this will occur and whether or not those people responsible for recruitment will speak the language of the participants. **Attach a copy of any materials to be used for recruitment [e.g., emails, posters, advertisements, letters, and telephone scripts]**.

Maximum 2 pages
Please see details in the research plan attached.

b. Identify where the study will take place.

☐ On campus (e.g. university classroom, university lab, etc.) Please specify below.

☒ Off campus (e.g. aboriginal community, schools, etc.) Please specify below.

Tests will be off-site at the abandoned Argentia Airfield.

5. EXPERIENCE

For projects that involve collection of sensitive data, methods that pose greater than minimal risk to participants, or involve a vulnerable population, please provide a brief description of your (or your research team) experience with this type of research (including people who will have contact with the participants).

N/A

6. COMPENSATION

If compensation is offered, it should not impose undue influence on a participant's decision to participate in the research. Justification for the amount of compensation to be offered should be provided.

a. Will participants receive compensation for participating in the research?

☐ Yes   ☒ No

If **yes**, please provide details and justification for the amount or value of the compensation offered.

Participants will be volunteers from within the RAVEN Team and their partners.

b. If participants choose to withdraw, how will you deal with the compensation offered?

N/A

7. SHARING OF RESEARCH RESULTS WITH PARTICIPANTS

Explain what and how information/feedback will be provided to participants and/or communities after their participation in the project is complete. (e.g., report, poster presentation, pamphlet, etc.)

A scientific paper and thesis chapter is expected to be the outcome of this research project. RAVEN team members will of course we included in any invitations for lectures or presentation of such results.

SECTION C – STATEMENT OF ETHICAL ISSUES

1. BENEFITS

a. Identify and describe any known or anticipated *direct benefits* to the participants (or to the community) from their involvement in the project. Please do not list compensation as a benefit.

Within the RAVEN Team, the successful conclusion of this project may results in measurable and new standards for light systems on UAVs and clear up the current confusion on whether to equipt the UAVs with these lights, and if so, what configuration and type, etc.

b. Identify and describe any known or anticipated *benefits to the scientific/scholarly community or society* that would justify involvement of participants in the research.

The outcome of this research is expected to be an updated set of HF data applicable to UAVs, specific to night flying and UAV lighting standards. This will improve the safety of UAVs and enhance their visibility.

2. HARMS

In explaining the risks involved in participating in a project, it is important to provide potential participants with a clear understanding of the potential for harm. Research risks are those that reflect the likelihood and magnitude of harms that participants may experience as a direct result of taking part in this research (e.g., stress or anxiety during data collection, stigma, loss of job, injury, etc.).

Please indicate if the participants as individuals or as part of an identifiable group or community might experience any of the following risks by being part of this research project.   In particular, consider any factors that pose potential harm to at-risk groups.

a.	Physical risks *(including any bodily contact, administration of any substance or in dangerous location such as politically unstable countries)*?	☒ Yes	☐ No
b.	Psychological/emotional risks *(feeling uncomfortable, embarrassed, anxious or upset)*?	☒ Yes	☐ No
c.	Social risks *(including possible loss of status, privacy or reputation)*?	☐ Yes	☒ No
d.	Is there any deception involved?	☐ Yes	☒ No
e.	Will your methods induce participants to act against their wishes?	☐ Yes	☒ No
f.	Will participants be asked to disclose information of an intimate nature or otherwise sensitive nature?	☐ Yes	☒ No
g.	Financial risks to participants *(e.g. loss of job, promotion opportunities, etc.)*?	☐ Yes	☒ No
h.	Financial risks to organization/company *(decrease in demand for goods/services, loss of funding opportunities, etc.)*?	☐ Yes	☒ No

If **yes** to any of the above, please explain the risks and describe how they will be managed or minimized. In the case of an adverse event (if any), provide information on how you plan to manage the risks inherent in your research and provide information or resources to participants who might experience adverse effects stemming from participation in your research.

The main physical risk involves the potential for accidents due to the need to travel from St.John's to Argentia after dark. Also, the tests involve a number of moves up/down the main runway at Argentia, also in the dark.
The travel risk should be mitigated by organizing carpooling from St.John's to Argentia to minimize the need and number of vehicles used.
A large RV will be used both as the test "cockpit" and also as a means to house the human subjects as they await their turn. The RV will also be used to move the human subjects up/down the runway in a safe and quick manner.
The test itself is very simple and should not cause any stress, especially to anyone already familiar with basic aviation lighting practise (i.e. red on left wingtip, green on right, white tail lights, strobes, etc). A small visual aid in the form of a small model plane with the various lights indicated will be available to assist anyone nervous or unsure about their "expertise" in aviation light geometries.

3.   FREE AND INFORMED CONSENT

You are encouraged to examine our <u>informed consent form template</u> for information on the required <u>minimum</u> elements that should be included in the information letter and consent form, and follow a similar format.

a.   What process will you use to inform the potential participants about the study's details and to obtain the participants' consent for participation? If the research involves extraction or collection of personally identifiable information from a participant, please describe how consent from the individuals or authorization from the data custodian will be obtained.

An "Informed Consent Form" will be used. This will adhere to the suggested ICEHR format for such consent letters. A copy of the proposed Consent Form is included in this review submission. In addition to serving as the written/signed consent form, it will serve as the "Information Letter" for the study outlining the basic research plan, who the test

subjects will participate, what data will be collected and how it will be used. There will also be a section used to collect basic test subject identification and contact information for those who wish to participate. The only identification information collected will be gender, age, nominal visual acuity (i.e. whether they wear vision correction like glasses/contacts) and whether they have any aviation experience which might effect/bias there responses during testing. Contact information (i.e. an email address) will be used to allow coordination for the test date/time and travel arrangements, due to the unique nature of the timing of these experiments (i.e. must be a clear dark moonless night).

    b.   If you will not be obtaining written consent, please provide the rationale for oral or implied consent (e.g. discipline, cultural appropriateness, etc.) and explain how consent will be recorded. Also, explain how you will ensure that participants understand that their participation is voluntary.

It is not expected that the volunteer nature of the participation of RAVEN team members in one of their own team member's PhD research will require significant problems with regards to consent. The anonymous nature of how the human subjects will be identified shouldn't be a problem. However, a written and signed consent form will still be used for ALL test subjects, and prepared/signed in advance, given the anonymous nature of how each will be identified. This will also be helpful to explain the basic test procedure so expectations once on the airfield are clear.

    c.   If the target population is not competent by reason of age or mental ability to provide free and informed consent *(the age of legal consent in this province is 19 years of age),* describe and justify the process you will use to obtain parental or third-party consent. *[Note: If the participants are capable of understanding the objectives and consequences of the research, their assent should be obtained in addition to the consent of the parent or guardian.]*

N/A

4.   ANONYMITY OF PARTICIPANTS AND CONFIDENTIALITY OF DATA

    a.   Describe the procedures you will use to protect anonymity of participants or informants, where applicable, and the confidentiality of data during the conduct of the research and in the release of the findings.

See previous comments.

    c.   Explain how written records, video/audio recordings, photographs, artifacts and questionnaires will be securely stored, how long they will be retained, who will have access, and provide details of their storage location and final disposal. Provide a justification if you intend to store your data for an indefinite length of time. If the data may have archival value, discuss this and whether participants will be informed of this possibility during the consent process. Data security measures should be consistent with Memorial University's *Policy on Integrity on Scholarly Research* .

Written records in the form of test recording sheets, and human subject identification forms will be retained until the conclusion of the PhD research project. The intent is to have this as the "raw data" until it is properly analysed and summarized and presented in the form of statistical results (e.g. scatterplots). The results will become part of at least one chapter in my Thesis and possibly also in a scientific paper.

    d.   Describe any limitations to protecting the confidentiality of participants' data (eg. access to or disclosure of information during or at the end of the study) whether due to the law, the methods used or other reasons (e.g. duty to report).

N/A

e. If participants' anonymity is difficult or impossible to achieve (e.g. in focus groups), please explain the limits to anonymity.

N/A

5. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

If any member of the ICEHR is ineligible to review your application because of a conflict of interest, please notify the ICEHR administrative staff.

If the proposed research involves real or apparent conflict of interest (e.g., yours or your team's judgement may be influenced or appear to be influenced by private or personal interests such as remuneration, intellectual property rights, rights of employment, consultancies, board membership, stock options, etc.), please identify and explain how you will inform research participants of these conflicts.

N/A

6. PARTICIPANT WITHDRAWAL

a. Please describe how participants will be informed of their right to withdraw from the project. Outline the procedures which will be followed to allow them to exercise this right.

Participation in the experiment will be solely voluntary – drawing from individuals from the team members and their friends/partners. A written consent form will be used. The form will clearly state that given the logistics of gathering everyone at the remote test site, it may not be practical (or safe) for test subjects to leave prematurely, once the test procedure has started. The consent form will include a description of the test procedure and the expected time commitment for each test subject so they can make an informed decision to participate.

c. Indicate what will be done with the participant's data and any consequences that withdrawal may have on the participant.

N/A

d. If participants will not have the right to withdraw from the project at all, or beyond a certain point, please explain.

Once the experiment is started, each test subject will be required to "see it through" and complete each of their test points to completion. This will involve three sets of 5min observations each, for a total of about 1 hour spent at each range location. This is to ensure a valid set of data, especially for comparisons between the three sighting distances, and to permit some statistical analysis. With the reduced number of human subjects (12) this is especially important.

7. DECEPTION

a. Describe and justify the use of deception or intentional non-disclosure in this study.

N/A

b. Explain and justify if information will be withheld from participants that might reasonably lead them to decline to participate in the study.

N/A

c. Explain and justify if participants will be photographed or video- or audio-taped without their knowledge or consent.

N/A

d. Debriefing (*Attach a copy of written debriefing sheet or script)*

Outline the process to be used to debrief participants. Explain and justify whether participants will be given the option of withdrawing their data following the debriefing.

No debriefing planned.

Recruitment Documents and Consent Forms

A template of an Informed Consent Form is available on the ICEHR Website. The Committee encourages you to examine the template and follow a similar format. Note that the template outlines only the minimum information that should be included in an informed consent form. Please consult the **ICEHR guidelines** for additional information that may be required.

Note:

- **The ICEHR approval statement must be included on all recruiting information and consent forms given to participants, and should be in a paragraph separated from all other text or contact information**.

- **A *consent form checklist* is provided to assist you to ensure you that you have covered everything necessary for your project.**

Application Checklist (This checklist must be completed and included with your electronic application)

☐ New application
☐ HREA Notification Form (only for health related research) N/A
☒ Resubmission as requested
☒ **Forwarded e-copy** of electronic application and attachments to icehr@mun.ca
☒ Answered all questions on the application form
☒ **Section D of Form 1B completed and signed by PI and supervisor and forwarded to ICEHR**
☒ The ICEHR Approval Statement included on Informed Consent Form and Recruitment Documents

Where Applicable, Attachments Included with Application:

☒ Proposed Recruitment letter, Advertisement, Poster (include in Consent Form)
☐ Proposed Questionnaire, Survey, or Other Instrument
☐ Proposed Interview Questions
☐ Proposed Oral Script for Recruitment (e.g., in-class and telephone invitation/information script)
☒ Proposed Information Letter for Participants (include in Consent Form)
☒ Proposed Informed Consent Form for Participants
☐ Proposed Information Letter for Parents, Guardians, Proxy
☐ Proposed Consent Form for Parents, Guardians, Proxy
☐ Proposed Debriefing Statement (if using deception)
☒ Other, please specify: **Detailed TEST PLAN for experiment**

TITLE OF PROPOSED RESEARCH PROJECT

Assessment of Human Visual Acuity versus Night-time VFR Light Systems

PRINCIPAL INVESTIGATOR:

As the **Principal Investigator** on this project, my signature confirms that I have read *Memorial University's Policy on Ethics of Research Involving Human Participants* and the *Tri-Council Policy Statement on Ethical Conduct for Research Involving Humans (TCPS2)*. I will ensure that all procedures performed under the project will be conducted in accordance with the TCPS2 and all relevant university, provincial, national and international policies and regulations that govern the collection and use of personally identifiable information in research involving human participants. I agree to conduct the research subject to Section 3 (Guiding Ethical Principles) and accept the responsibilities as outlined in Section 18 (Responsibilities of Researchers) of Memorial University's *Policy on Ethics of Research Involving Human Participants*.

Any deviation from the project as originally approved will be submitted to ICEHR for approval prior to its implementation. I understand that deviations from the project that alter the risks to participants and that are implemented without ethics approval constitute a violation of the TCPS2 and Memorial University's policy.

If there is any occurrence of an adverse event(s), I will complete and submit *Form 5 – Adverse Event(s) Report* to the Chair of ICEHR immediately.

My signature confirms that my project has been reviewed and approved by my supervisor(s) and advisory committee (where applicable). If my status as a post-doctoral fellow/student changes, I will inform the ICEHR.

Click here to enter text.   Click here to enter text.
_____   _____
Name and Signature of Principal Investigator   Date
Jonathan Stevenson

PRINCIPAL SUPERVISOR:

As the **Principal Supervisor** of this project, my signature confirms that I have reviewed and approved the scholarly and/or scientific merit of the research project and this ethics protocol submission.

I understand that as the Principal Supervisor, I have ultimate responsibility for the conduct of the study, the ethical performance of the project and the protection of the rights and welfare of human participants. I will provide the necessary training and supervision to the researcher throughout the project to ensure that all procedures performed under the research project will be conducted in accordance with the TCPS2 and all relevant University, provincial, national or international policies and regulations that govern research involving human participants.

I will ensure that any deviation from the project as originally approved will be submitted to the ICEHR for approval prior to its implementation, and any occurrence of adverse event(s) will be reported to the ICEHR immediately.

Click here to enter text.
_____   _____
Name and Signature of Principal Supervisor   Date
Dr. Siu O'Young
Dr. Luc Rolland